



MPLAB Harmony USB Stack

MPLAB Harmony USB Stack Help Document

USB Demonstrations Help

This section provides descriptions of the USB demonstrations.

Introduction

[USB Library Demonstration Applications Help](#)

Description

This distribution package contains a variety of USB-related firmware projects that demonstrate the capabilities of the MPLAB Harmony USB stack. This section describes the hardware requirement and procedures to run these firmware projects on Microchip demonstration and development boards.

To know more about the MPLAB Harmony USB stack, USB Stack Configuration and the USB Stack APIs, refer to the [USB Library Help Section](#).

USB MSD Host USB Pen Drive Tests

Provides pen drive test specifications.

Description

USB MSD Host USB Pen Drive Tests

The following table lists the commercially available USB pen drives, which have been tested to successfully enumerate with the MSD Host Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack. Note that if the USB pen drive you are using is not included in the table, this indicates that this USB pen drive has not been tested with the MSD Host Driver. However, the USB pen drive could still potentially work with MSD Host Driver. Some USB pen drives in this table did not have their manufacturer or model data available. The USB Pen drives were tested with the `msd_basic` USB Host demonstration in the latest version of the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack.

| Manufacturer | Capacity | VID | PID |
|-----------------------------|----------|--------|--------|
| Verico Tseres | 16GB | 0x8644 | 0x8003 |
| Hewlett Packard | 16GB | 0x03F0 | 0x5A07 |
| Freescale | 1GB | 0x2008 | 0x2018 |
| Imation Corp | 16GB | 0x0718 | 0x0704 |
| ITE Tech Inc. | 16GB | 0x048D | 0x0100 |
| Silicon Motion Inc - Taiwan | 8GB | 0x090C | 0x1000 |
| Kingston Technology (Dell) | 16GB | 0x0951 | 0x16A7 |
| Verbatim Americas LLC | 8GB | 0x18A5 | 0x0245 |
| Apacer Technology | 8GB | 0x1005 | 0x0100 |
| Sony Corporation | 8GB | 0x054C | 0x06B0 |
| Sony Coporation | 8GB | 0x054C | 0x0862 |
| Silicon Motion Inc. | 4GB | 0x090C | 0x1000 |
| SanDisk Corporation | 16GB | 0x0781 | 0x0127 |
| Etron Technology Inc | 16GB | 0x1E4E | 0x3257 |
| Verbatim Americas LLC | 4GB | 0x18A5 | 0x0100 |
| Appotech Limited | 4GB | 0x1908 | 0x1320 |
| Decorative Pen Drive | 4GB | 0xABCD | 0x1234 |
| Moser Baer India Ltd. | 16GB | 0x1EC9 | 0x0101 |
| Lexar Media Inc | 4GB | 0x05DC | 0x1100 |
| Realtek Semiconductor Corp. | 16GB | 0x0BDA | 0x0109 |
| Silicon Motion Inc. Taiwan | 4/8/16GB | 0x090C | 0x1000 |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|------|--------|--------|
| Kingston Technology Company | 16GB | 0x0951 | 0x1665 |
| Kingston Data Traveller | 4GB | 0x0951 | 0x1643 |
| Lexar Media Inc | 32GB | 0x05DC | 0xA838 |
| SanDisk Corporation | 16GB | 0x0781 | 0x5583 |
| SanDisk Corporation | 8GB | 0x0781 | 0x5571 |
| Toshiba Corporation | 32GB | 0x0930 | 0x6544 |
| Strontium | 8GB | 0x090C | 0x1000 |
| Kingston Technology Company | 16GB | 0x0951 | 0x1666 |
| Phison Electronics Corp | 32GB | 0x13FE | 0x6300 |
| Kingston Technology Company | 32GB | 0x0951 | 0x16A3 |
| SSP | 4GB | 0x8644 | 0x800B |
| Toshiba Corporation | 2GB | 0x0930 | 0x6544 |

Device Demonstrations

This section describes the USB Device demonstrations.

Description

The section provides a description of all of the USB Device Stack Demonstration Applications contained in this package. The description of each demonstration application contains instructions for compiling the application project, hardware configuration and interaction guidelines and running the demonstration application. Note that a demonstration application may contain more than one MPLAB X project. All projects demonstrate the same application functionality on different hardware platforms and different application configuration.

cdc_com_port_dual

Demonstrates a USB CDC device, emulating dual serial COM ports - one looping back into the other.

Description

This demonstration application creates a USB CDC Device that enumerates as two serial ports on the USB Host PC. This application demonstrates the ability of the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack to support multiple instances of the same device class.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/cdc_com_port_dual/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |

| | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_v71_xult_freertos.x | ATSAMV71Q21B | SAMV71 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application on a ATSAMV71Q21B device. |
| sam_v71_xult.x | ATSAMV71Q21B | SAMV71 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application with freeRTOS on a ATSAMV71Q21B device |
| sam_d21_xpro.x | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.x | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application on a ATSAME54P20A device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMV71 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper titled "USB VBUS" must be shorted between PC09 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3)
- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the CDC Dual COM Port demonstration.

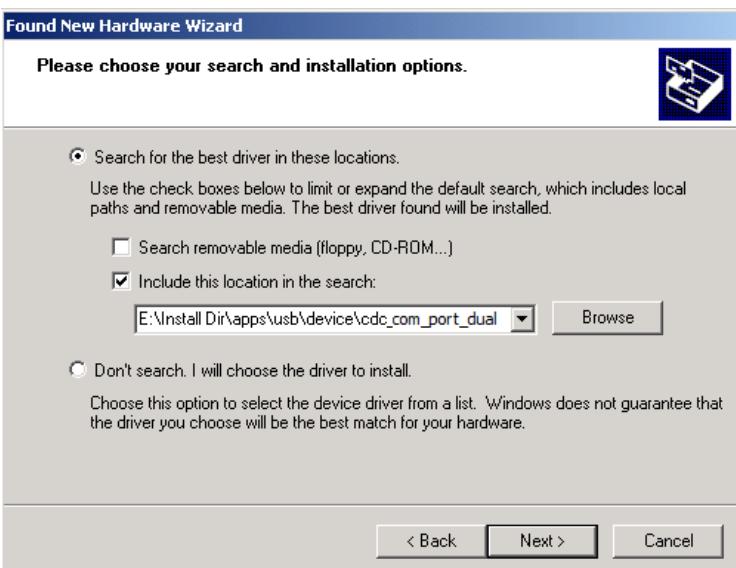
Description

This demonstration allows the device to appear like two serial (COM) ports to the host. Do the following to run this demonstration:

1. First compile and program the target device. While compiling, select the appropriate MPLAB X IDE project based on the demonstration board. Refer to [Building the Application](#) for details.
2. Attach the device to the host. If the host is a personal computer and this is the first time you have plugged this device into the computer you may be prompted for a .inf file.

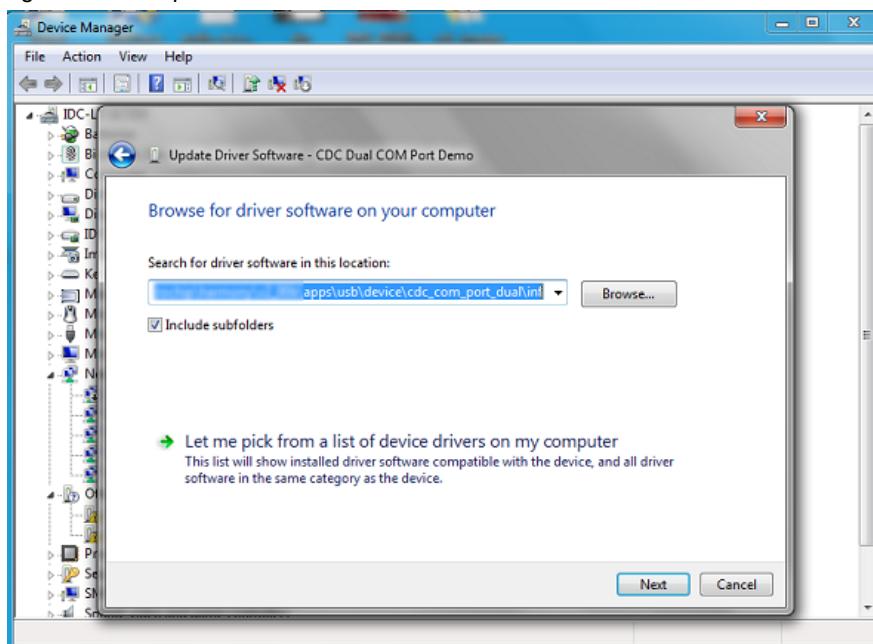


3. Select the "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option. Specify the <install-dir>usb/apps/device/cdc_com_port_dual/inf directory.

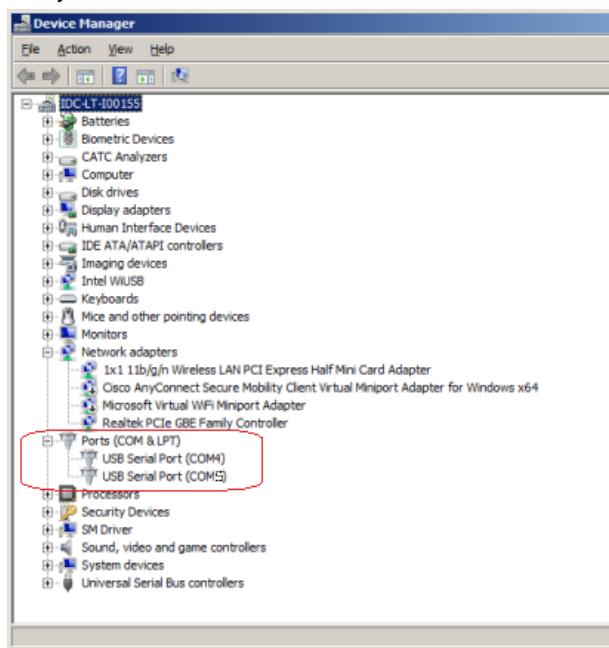




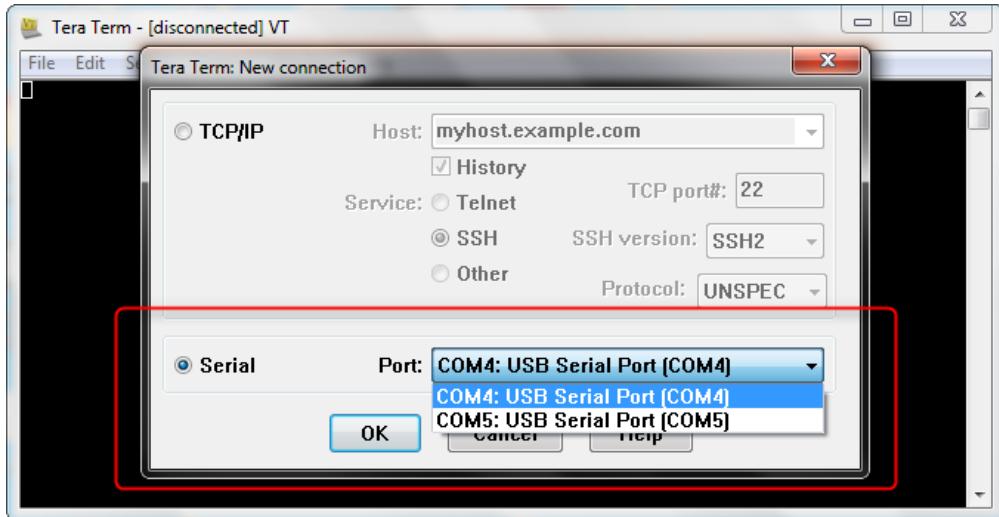
Note: As an option, to specify the driver, you may open the device manager and expand the Ports (COM & LPT) tab, and right click on "Update Driver Software..."



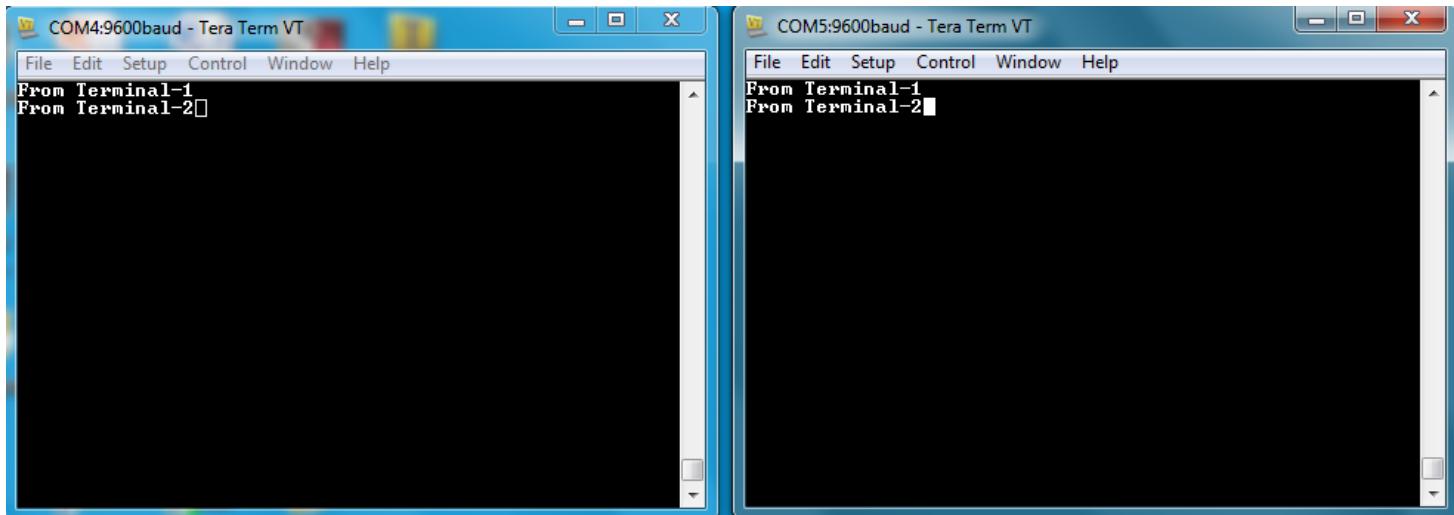
Verify that the enumerated USB device is seen as a virtual USB serial comport in Device Manager.



- Once the device is successfully installed, open up two instances of a terminal program, such as HyperTerminal. Select the appropriate COM port for each of these terminal instances. The following screen shot shows the COM port selection for the Tera Term terminal program.



5. The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for the selected board for more details.
6. To run the demonstration, turn on local echo on both the terminals. For Tera Term terminal application, navigate to Setup->Terminal to turn on local echo. Type a character or string in one terminal window. The same character or string appears on the second terminal window. Similarly, any character typed in the second window appears in the first window. The following screen shot shows two instances of Tera Term.



Note: Some terminal programs, like HyperTerminal, require users to click the disconnect button before removing the device from the computer. Failing to do so may result in having to close and open the program again to reconnect to the device.

cdc_com_port_single

Demonstrates a USB CDC device, emulating a serial COM port.

Description

This demonstration application creates a USB CDC Device that enumerates as a single COM port on the USB host PC. The application demonstrates two-way communication between the USB device and the USB Host PC.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in `<install-dir>/usb/apps/device/cdc_com_port_single/firmware` folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a Single COM Port CDC USB Device application with freeRTOS on ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.X | ATSAMD21J18A | SAMD1 Xplained PRO | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.X | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal (non RTOS) Dual COM Port CDC USB Device application on a ATSAME54P20A device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ EF Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk_freertos.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a Single COM Port CDC USB Device application with freeRTOS on PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |
| pic32mz_das_sk.X | PIC32MZ2064DAS169 | PIC32MZ Embedded Graphics with Stacked DRAM (DA) Starter Kit (Crypto) | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the PIC32MZ2064DAS169 device. |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pic32mk_sk.x | PIC32MK1024GPE100 | PIC32MK General Purpose (GP) Development Board | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the PIC32MK1024GPE100 device. |
| pic32mk_sk_freertos.X | PIC32MK1024GPE100 | PIC32MK General Purpose (GP) Development Board | This project implements a Single COM Port CDC USB Device application with freeRTOS on PIC32MK1024GPE100 device. |
| pic32mx470_curiosity.X | PIC32MX470F512H | PIC32MX Curiosity Development Board | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the PIC32MX470F512H device. |
| pic32mx470_curiosity_freertos.X | PIC32MX470F512H | PIC32MX Curiosity Development Board | This project implements a Single COM Port CDC USB Device application with freeRTOS on PIC32MX470F512H device. |
| sam_121_xpro.X | ATSAML21J18B | SAM L21 Xplained Pro Evaluation Kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the ATSAML21J18B device. |
| sam_122_xpro.X | ATSAML22N18A | SAM L22 Xplained Pro Evaluation Kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the ATSAML22N18A device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

IAR Embedded Workbench Projects

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_a5d2_xult.IAR | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Single COM Port CDC USB Device application on the ATSAMA5D27C device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW1 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW0 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW0 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW1 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use the micro-A/B port J4 (which is located on the bottom side of the board) to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

PIC32MZ Embedded Graphics with Stacked DRAM (DA) Starter Kit

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW1 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use the micro-A/B port J6 (which is located on the bottom side of the board) to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit

- Setup the SD card
 - Download harmony MPU bootstrap loader from this [location](#)
 - Copy the downloaded boot loader binary(boot.bin) and generated application binary (harmony.bin)into the SD card
 - Insert the SD card into the SDMMC1 slot on the board
- Short jumper JP2(DEBUG_DIS)
- Connect the Debug USB port on the board to the computer using a micro USB cable
- Use "A5-USB-A" connector(J23 - Micro A/B connector) on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host.
- RGB LED turning to Green indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).

PIC32MK General Purpose (GP) Development Board

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW1 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use the USB micro-B port J13 (which is located on the bottom side of the board) to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

PIC32MX Curiosity Development Board

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press S1 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use the USB micro-B port J12 to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAM L21 Xplained Pro Evaluation Kit

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW0 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAM L22 Xplained Pro Evaluation Kit

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press SW0 to trigger communication from the USB Device to the USB Host.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the CDC Single COM Port demonstration.

Description

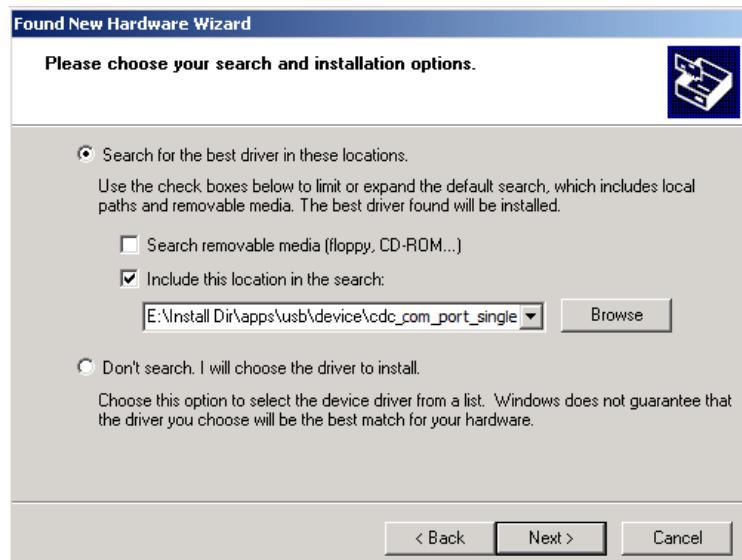
This demonstration creates a USB device that enumerates as a serial (COM) port on the host. Do the following to run this

demonstration:

1. First compile and program the target device. While compiling, select the appropriate MPLAB X IDE project based on the demonstration board. Refer to [Building the Application](#) for details.
2. Attach the device to the host. If the host is a personal computer and this is the first time you have plugged this device into the computer, you may be prompted for a .inf file.



3. Select the "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option. Specify the <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/cdc_com_port_single/inf directory.



4. Once the device is successfully installed, open up a terminal program, such as HyperTerminal and select the appropriate COM port. On most machines this will be COM5 or higher. Set the communication properties to 9600 baud, 1 Stop bit and No parity, with Flow Control set to None.
5. The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device, as described in the Configuring the Hardware section.
6. Once connected to the device, there are two ways to run this example project:
 - a) Typing a key in the terminal window will result in the attached device echoing the next letter. Therefore, if the letter 'b' is pressed, the device will echo 'c'.
 - b) If the push button is pressed, the device will echo "PUSH BUTTON PRESSED" to the terminal window. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section to identify the switch to pressed for the selected target board.



Note: Some terminal programs, like HyperTerminal, require users to click the disconnect button before removing the device from the computer. Failing to do so may result in having to close and open the program again to reconnect to the device.

cdc_msd_basic

Demonstrates a composite USB Device that enumerates as a COM port and as Flash drive simultaneously.

Description

This demonstration application creates a composite USB Device that enumerates as a COM port and as Flash drive simultaneously.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in `<install-dir>/usb/apps/device/cdc_msd_basic/firmware` folder and provides a description of each project. All projects in listed this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements the CDC + MSD Composite application with FreeRTOS on the SAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (non RTOS) CDC + MSD Composite application on the SAME70Q21B device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the `cdc_msd_basic` demonstration.

Description

This demonstration application creates a composite USB Device that works simultaneously as a CDC and as a MSD device. This application combines the functionality of the `cdc_com_port_single` and `msd_basic` demonstration applications into one device.

Refer to [Running the Demonstration](#) section of the `cdc_com_port_single` demonstration and the [Running the Demonstration](#) section of the `msd_basic` demonstration for details on exercising the CDC and MSD device features, respectively.

The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device.

cdc_serial_emulator

This application demonstrates the use of the CDC device class to implement a USB-to-Serial Convertor.

Description

This application demonstrates the use of the CDC device class to implement a USB-to-Serial Convertor. The application enumerates a COM port on the personal computer. Data received through the CDC USB interface is forwarded to a UART. Data received on the UART is forwarded to the CDC USB interface on the target board. The interface between the UART and the CDC USB Interface on the board demonstrates the USB to UART capability.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in `<install-dir>/usb/apps/device/cdc_serial_emulator/firmware` folder and provides a description of each project. All projects in listed this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements the CDC Serial Emulator application with freeRTOS on the SAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (non RTOS) CDC Serial Emulator application on the SAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.x | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal (non RTOS) CDC Serial Emulator application on the ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.x | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal (non RTOS) CDC Serial Emulator application on the ATSAME54P20A device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- The CDC USB (UART to USB) interface on this board is served by the EDBG connector J300. Connecting this to the PC will create a COM port on the PC Host.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- The CDC USB (UART to USB) interface on this board is served by the EDBG connector (DEBUG_USB). Connecting this to the PC will create a COM port on the PC Host.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- The CDC USB (UART to USB) interface on this board is served by the EDBG connector (DEBUG_USB). Connecting this to the PC will create a COM port on the PC Host.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the CDC Serial Emulator Demonstration.

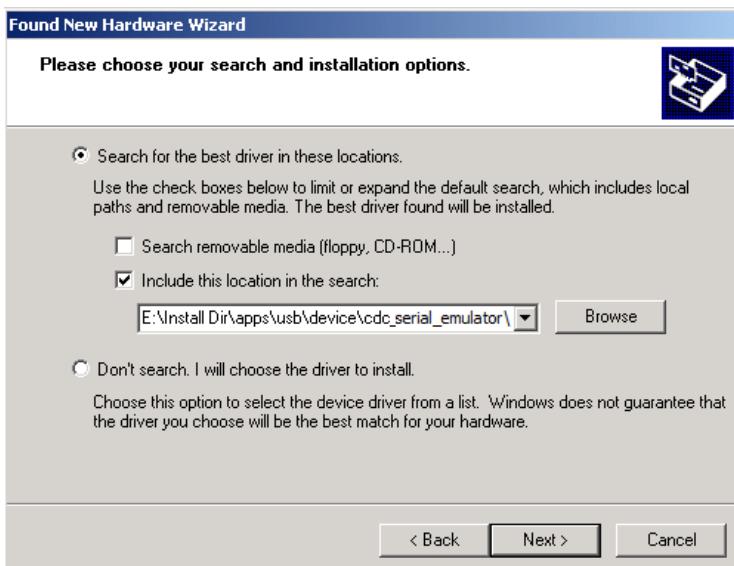
Description

This application demonstrates the use of the CDC Device class in implementing a USB-to-Serial Converter. The application enumerates a COM port on the USB Host PC. Data received through the CDC USB interface is forwarded to a UART. Data received on the UART is forwarded to the CDC USB interface. This emulates a USB-to-Serial Converter.

1. Open the project in MPLAB X IDE and select the desired configuration.
2. Build the code and program the device.
3. Attach the device to the host. If the host is a personal computer and this is the first time you have plugged this device into the computer you may be prompted for a .inf file.

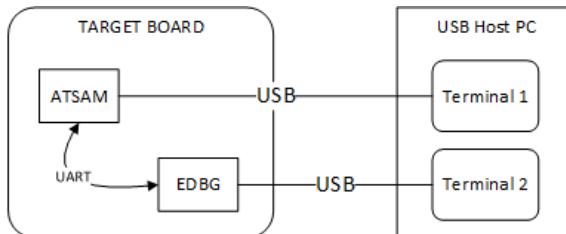


4. Select the "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option. Specify the <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/cdc_serial_emulator/inf directory.



The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for the selected target hardware.

5. Open a terminal emulation program of your choice and select the enumerated USB COM port. Set the desired serial baud and other connection related parameters. This is terminal 1.
6. Connect the CDC USB port to the Host PC and ensure that a second COM port is available on the Host PC. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for details for the selected hardware. Open a serial terminal program and select the second COM port. The serial settings of this COM port should match the setting made in step 5. This is terminal 2. The setup should resemble the below figure.



7. Text entered into the terminal 1 program will be echoed on terminal 2. Text entered in terminal 2 should be echoed in terminal 1.

hid_basic

This demonstration application creates a custom HID device that can be controlled by a PC-based utility.

Description

This application creates a custom HID device that can be controlled by a PC-based utility. The device allows the USB Host utility to control the LEDs on the board and query the status of a switch.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/hid_basic/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB HID Device application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB HID Device application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.X | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) USB HID Device application on the ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.X | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) USB HID Device application on the ATSAME54P20A device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) USB HID Device application on the PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk_freertos.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) USB HID Device application on the PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

IAR Embedded Workbench Projects

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_a5d2_xult.IAR | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) USB HID Device application on the ATSAMA5D27C device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the LED Toggle button on the USB Host PC Utility toggles LED1.
- The USB Host PC utility monitors SW1 switch press on the board.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the LED Toggle button on the USB Host PC Utility toggles LED0.
- The USB Host PC utility monitors SW0 switch press on the board.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the LED Toggle button on the USB Host PC Utility toggles LED1.

- The USB Host PC utility monitors SW0 switch press on the board.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

[PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU \(EF\) Starter Kit](#)

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the LED Toggle button on the USB Host PC Utility toggles LED1.
- The USB Host PC utility monitors SW1 switch press on the board.
- Use the micro-A/B port J4 (which is located on the bottom side of the board) to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

[SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit](#)

- Setup the SD card
 - Download harmony MPU bootstrap loader from this [location](#)
 - Copy the downloaded boot loader binary(boot.bin) and generated application binary (harmony.bin)into the SD card
 - Insert the SD card into the SDMMC1 slot on the board
- Short jumper JP2(DEBUG_DIS)
- Connect the Debug USB port on the board to the computer using a micro USB cable
- Use "A5-USB-A" connector(J23 - Micro A/B connector) on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host.
- RGB LED turning to Green indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the HID Basic demonstration.

Description

This demonstration uses the selected hardware platform as a HID class USB device, but uses the HID class for general purpose I/O operations. While compiling, select the appropriate MPLAB X IDE project based on the demonstration board. Refer to [Building the Application](#) for details.

Typically, the HID class is used to implement human interface products, such as mice and keyboards. The HID protocol, is however, quite flexible, and can be adapted and used to send/receive general purpose data to/from a USB device. Using the HID class for general purpose I/O operations is quite advantageous, in that it does not require any kind of custom driver installation process. HID class drivers are already provided by and are distributed with common operating systems. Therefore, upon plugging in a HID class device into a typical computer system, no user installation of drivers is required, the installation is fully automatic.

The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device as described in Configuring the Hardware section.

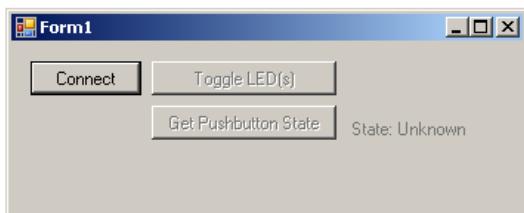
HID devices primarily communicate through one interrupt IN endpoint and one interrupt OUT endpoint. In most applications, this effectively limits the maximum achievable bandwidth for full speed HID devices to 64 kBytes/s of IN traffic, and 64 kBytes/s of OUT traffic (64 kB/s, but effectively "full duplex").

The GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe program, and the associated firmware demonstrate how to use the HID protocol for basic general purpose USB data transfer.

Before you can run the GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe executable, you will need to have the Microsoft® .NET Framework Version 2.0 Redistributable Package (later versions are probably acceptable, but have not been tested) installed on your computer. Programs that were built in the Visual Studio® .NET languages require the .NET redistributable package. The redistributable package can be freely downloaded from Microsoft's website. Users of Windows Vista® operating systems will not need to install the .NET framework, as it comes preinstalled as part of the operating system.

Launching the Application

To launch the application, simply double click the executable GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe in the <install-dir>\usb\apps\device\hid_basic\bin directory. A property sheet similar to the following should appear:





Note: If instead of this window, an error message appears while trying to launch the application, it is likely the Microsoft .NET Framework Version 2.0 Redistributable Package has not yet been installed. Please install it and try again.

Send/Receive Packets

To begin sending/receiving packets to the device, you must first find and connect to the device. As configured by default, the application is looking for HID class USB devices with VID = 0x04D8 and PID = 0x003F. The device descriptor in the firmware project meant to be used with this demonstration uses the same VID/PID. If you plug in a USB device programmed with the correct precompiled .hex file, and click **Connect**, the other push buttons should become enabled. If clicking **Connect** has no effect, it is likely the USB device is either not connected, or has not been programmed with the correct firmware.

Clicking **Toggle LED(s)** should send a single packet of general purpose generic data to the HID class USB peripheral device. The data will arrive on the interrupt OUT endpoint. The firmware has been configured to receive this generic data packet, parse the packet looking for the Toggle LED(s) command, and should respond appropriately by controlling the LED(s) on the demonstration board.

The Get Pushbutton State option will send one packet of data over the USB to the peripheral device (to the interrupt OUT endpoint) requesting the current push button state. The firmware will process the received Get Pushbutton State command, and will prepare an appropriate response packet depending upon the pushbutton state.

Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for details on the LED indication and Switch that are relevant to the selected hardware.

hid_joystick

Demonstrates a USB HID device, emulating a Joystick.

Description

This demonstration application creates a custom HID joystick. This application is only intended to demonstrate creation of Joystick HID Report descriptors and may not be a definite end solution. The end application requirements may need the report descriptor to be modified.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/hid_joystick/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB HID Mouse Device application with freeRTOS on ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) UBS HID Mouse Device application on the ATSAME70Q21B device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use Switch SW1 to stop and start the circular motion of the mouse pointer.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

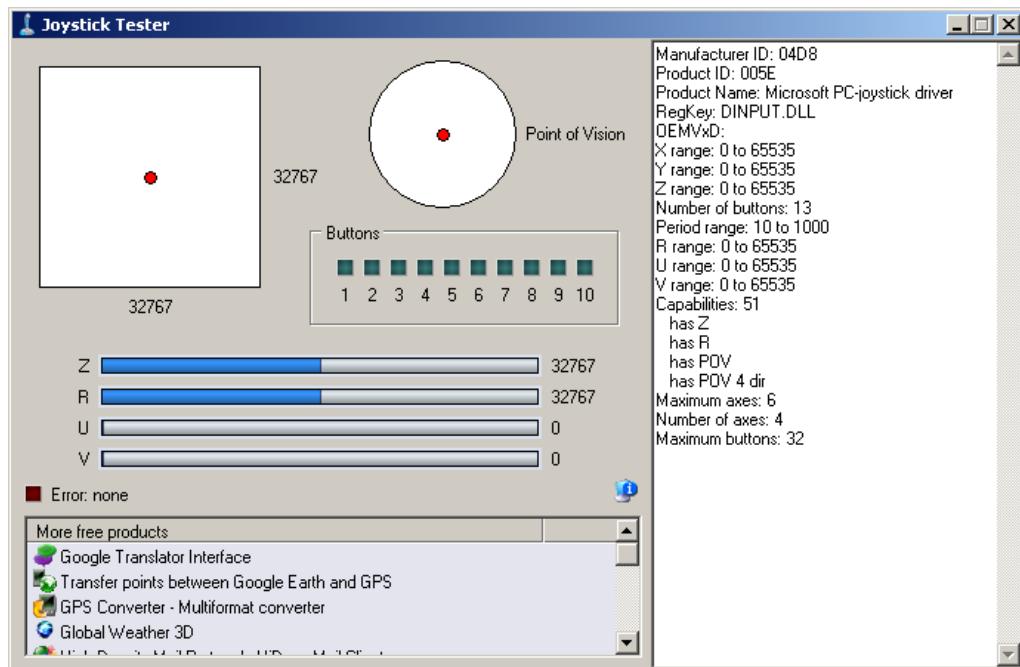
Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB HID Joystick demonstration.

Description

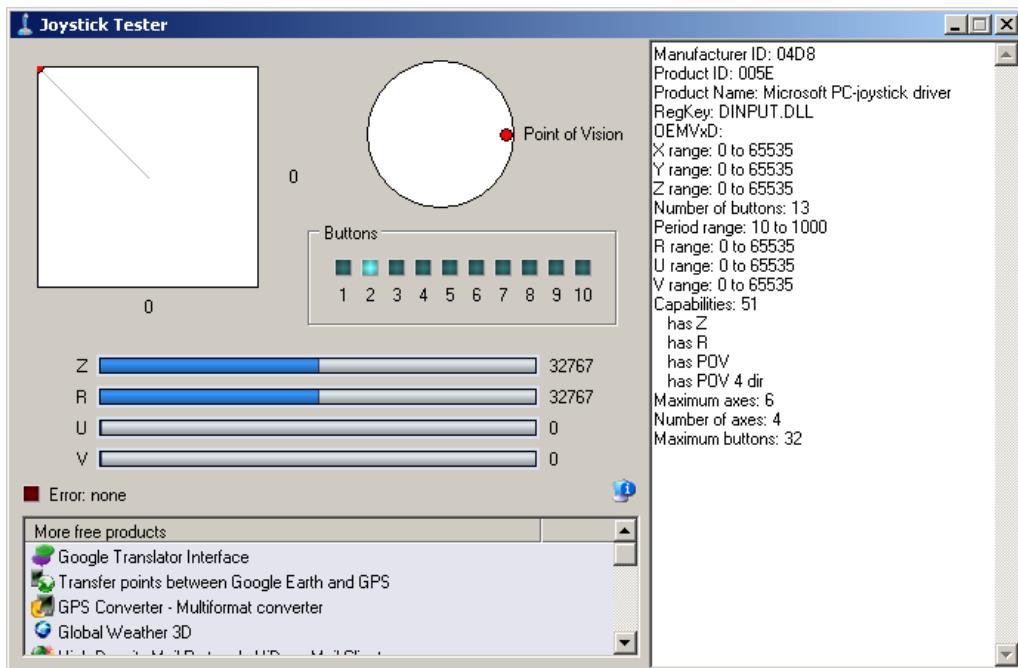
This demonstration uses the selected hardware platform as a USB Joystick. Select the appropriate MPLAB X IDE project configuration based on the demonstration board. Refer to [Building the Application](#) for details.

The LED on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device. Refer to the [Configuring the Hardware](#) Section for details.



Pressing the button will cause the device to:

- Indicate that the "x" button is pressed, but no others
- Move the hat switch to the "east" position
- Move the X and Y coordinates to their extreme values



hid_keyboard

Demonstrates a USB HID device, emulating a keyboard.

Description

This demonstration application creates a Generic HID keyboard. Pressing a switch on the target board emulates a keyboard key press.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/hid_keyboard/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB HID Keyboard Device application with freeRTOS on ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) USB HID Keyboard Device application on the ATSAME70Q21B device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Press Switch SW1 to exercise the keyboard key press function.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB HID Keyboard demonstration.

Description

This demonstration uses the selected hardware platform as a USB keyboard. While compiling, select the appropriate MPLAB X IDE project based on the demonstration board. Refer to [Building the Application](#) for details.

The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device, as described in the Configuring the Hardware section.

Before pressing the button, select a window in which it is safe to type text freely. Pressing the button on the demonstration board will cause the device to print a character on the screen.

hid_mouse

Demonstrates a USB HID device, emulating a mouse pointing device.

Description

This demonstration application creates a USB HID based two-button mouse device. When connected, the device emulates mouse operation by moving the cursor in a circular pattern.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/hid_mouse/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB HID Mouse Device application with freeRTOS on ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) UBS HID Mouse Device application on the ATSAME70Q21B device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use Switch SW1 to stop and start the circular motion of the mouse pointer.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the HID Mouse Demonstration.

Description

This demonstration uses the selected hardware platform as a USB mouse. While compiling, select the appropriate MPLAB X IDE project based on the demonstration board. Refer to [Building the Application](#) for details.

The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device. Refer to the "Configuring the Hardware" Section for details.

Before connecting the board to the computer through the USB cable please be aware that the device will begin moving the mouse cursor on the computer. There are two ways to stop the device from allowing the cursor to continue to move. The first way is to disconnect the device from the computer. The second is to press the correct button on the hardware platform. Pressing the button again will cause the mouse cursor to start moving in a circle again.

hid_msd_basic

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE project name and location and lists and describes the available configurations for the this demonstration application.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/hid_msd_basic/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) UBS HID plus MSD Device application on the ATSAME70Q21B device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the LED Toggle button on the USB Host PC Utility toggles LED1.
- The USB Host PC utility monitors SW1 switch press on the board.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the demonstration.

Description

This demonstration functions as composite USB Device that combines the features of the devices created by the hid_basic and the msd_basic demonstration applications. Refer to [Running the Demonstration](#) section of the hid_basic demonstration and [Running the Demonstration](#) section of the msd_basic demonstration for details on exercising the HID and MSD functions, respectively.

msd_basic

Demonstrates a USB MSD Device emulating a Flash Drive.

Description

This demonstration application creates a USB Pen drive using the Mass Storage Device Class.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/msd_basic/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a Mass Storage Device Basic application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Mass Storage Device basic application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_d21_xpro.x | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Mass Storage Device basic application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.x | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Mass Storage Device basic application on a ATSAME54P20A device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk.x | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Mass Storage Device basic application on a PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk_freertos.x | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a Mass Storage Device basic application with freeRTOS on PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use the micro-A/B port J4 (which is located on the bottom side of the board) to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB MSD Basic demonstration.

Description

This demonstration uses the selected hardware platform as a logical drive on the computer using the internal Flash of the device as the drive storage media. Connect the hardware platform to a computer through a USB cable. The device should appear as a new drive on the computer named "Drive Name". The drive can be used to store files.

The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for details.



Note: Reprogramming the development board will cause any stored files to be erased.

vendor

Demonstrates a custom USB Device created by using the USB Device Layer Endpoint functions.

Description

This demonstration application creates a custom USB device using the USB Device Layer Endpoint functions.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/vendor/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Projects

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Vendor USB Device application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_v71_xult.x | ATSAMV71Q21B | SAMV71 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Vendor USB Device application on a ATSAMV71Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a FreeRTOS Vendor USB Device application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.x | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Vendor USB Device application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.x | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Vendor USB Device application on a ATSAME54P20A device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk.x | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) Vendor USB Device application on a PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk_freertos.x | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a FreeRTOS Vendor USB Device application on a PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

IAR Embedded Workbench Projects

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_a5d2_xult.iar | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a bare-metal (no RTOS) Vendor USB Device Device application on the ATSAMA5D27C device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3).
- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the Toggle LED button on the PC USB Host application will cause LED1 to toggle.
- The firmware will monitor switch SW1 on the board for switch press and will report this to the PC USB Host application.
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMV71 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper titled "USB VBUS" must be shorted between PC09 and VBUS (positions 2 and 3)
- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the Toggle LED button on the PC USB Host application will cause LED0 to toggle.
- The firmware will monitor switch SW1 on the board for switch press and will report this to the PC USB Host application.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the Toggle LED button on the PC USB Host application will cause LED0 to toggle.
- The firmware will monitor switch SW0 on the board for switch press and will report this to the PC USB Host application.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the Toggle LED button on the PC USB Host application will cause LED0 to toggle.
- The firmware will monitor switch SW0 on the board for switch press and will report this to the PC USB Host application.
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit

- LED1 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host). Pressing the Toggle LED button on the PC USB Host application will cause LED1 to toggle.
- The firmware will monitor switch SW1 on the board for switch press and will report this to the PC USB Host application.
- Use the micro-A/B port J4 (which is located on the bottom side of the board) to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit

- Setup the SD card
 - Download harmony MPU bootstrap loader from this [location](#)
 - Copy the downloaded boot loader binary(boot.bin) and generated application binary (harmony.bin)into the SD card
 - Insert the SD card into the SDMMC1 slot on the board
- Short jumper JP2(DEBUG_DIS)
- Connect the Debug USB port on the board to the computer using a micro USB cable
- Use "A5-USB-A" connector(J23 - Micro A/B connector) on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host.
- RGB LED turning to Green indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).

Running the Demonstration

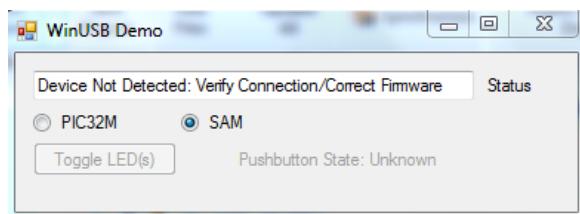
Provides instructions on how to build and run the Vendor USB Device demonstration.

Description

The Vendor device can be exercised by using the WinUSB PnP Demonstration application, which is provided in your installation of MPLAB Harmony.

The LEDs on the demonstration board will indicate the USB state of the device. This application allows the state of the LEDs on the board to be toggled and indicates the state of a switch (pressed/released) on the board. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for hardware specific details.

To launch the application, double click WinUSB_PnP_Demo.exe located in <install dir>/usb/apps/device/vendor/bin. A dialog box similar to the following should appear:



The appropriate device family that is under testing should be selected in the utility. Pressing the Toggle LED button will cause the LED on the board to toggle. The Pushbutton State field in the application indicates the state of a button on connected USB Device. Pressing the switch on the development board will update the Pressed/Not Pressed status of the Pushbutton State field.



Note: The device family under test should be selected appropriately. An incorrect selection will result in an invalid push button status.

printer_basic

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/device/printer_basic/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Project

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|----------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e54_xpro.x | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | <p>This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB Printer Device application on a ATSAME54P20A device.</p> <p>This demo shows how the SAM E54 Xplained Pro connected to the Windows PC enumerate as a USB printer device is capable of printing.</p> |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- LED0 indicates USB Device Configuration Set Complete event (the USB device functionality has been activated by the USB Host).
- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the basic printer demonstration.

Description

Demo functional blocks

This demo uses PC running Windows 7 as a Host. SAM E54 Xplained Pro running the demo application on top of USB printer function driver when connected to the host, enumerates as "USB Printing Support" device under USB controllers in Device Manager. This demo allows the user to print the text from Notepad or similar application in Windows using built in "Generic/Text Only" print driver.

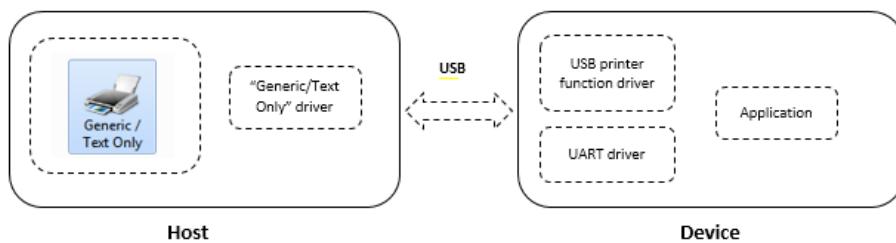
Generic / Text Only driver simply outputs the data to the connected USB printer in raw format without performing any translation on the data to be printed.

There is no Printer head mechanism used in this demo, instead, the print data received from the host is sent to the serial terminal application running in the host itself by the demo application.

Open any serial terminal application with 115200/8-N-1 settings for the Virtual COM port associated with the EDBG.



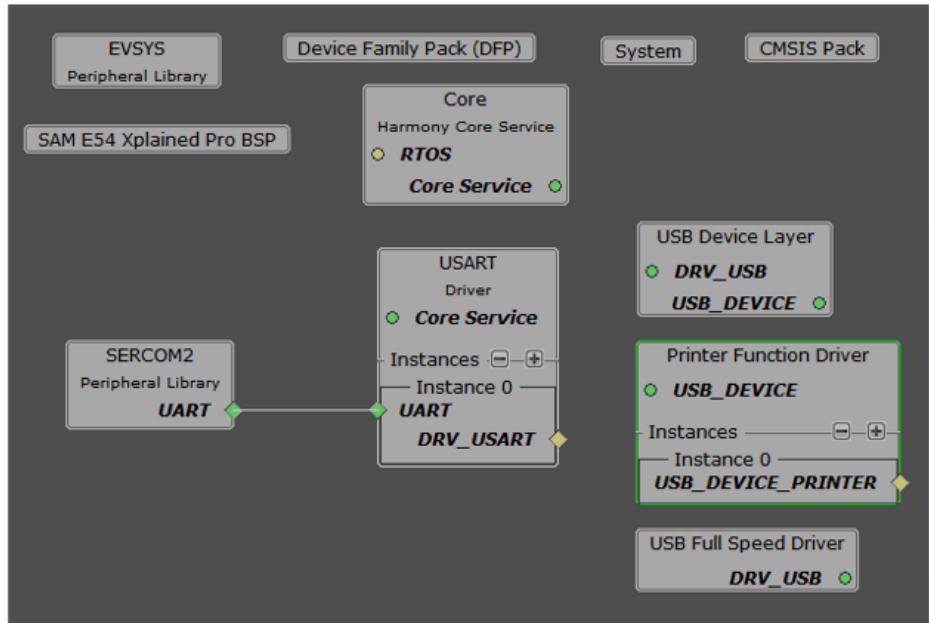
Check the 'Device Manager' for the Virtual COM number associated with the EDBG.



Opening demo application

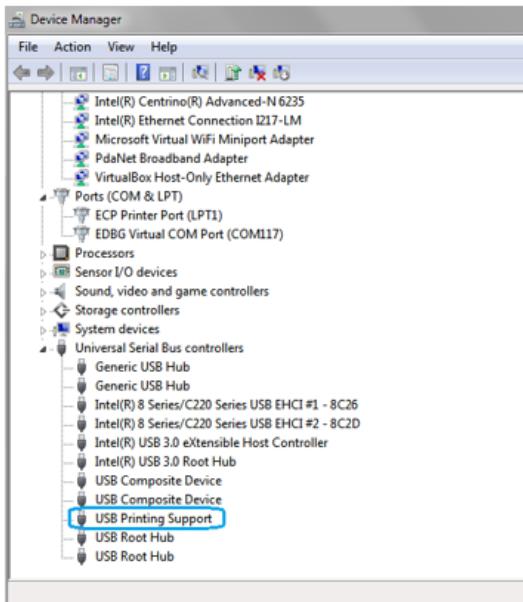
Open the Demo application in MPLAB X IDE and build the project. After successful build, program the connected SAM E54 Xplained Pro kit.

Once the programming is completed successfully, connect the "Target USB" port of SAM E54 Xplained Pro to the Host.

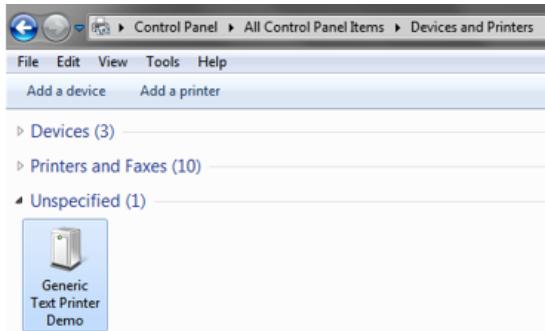


Installing the printer

The SAM E54 Xplained Pro attached to the host PC enumerates as "USB Printing Support" in Device Manager as shown below.

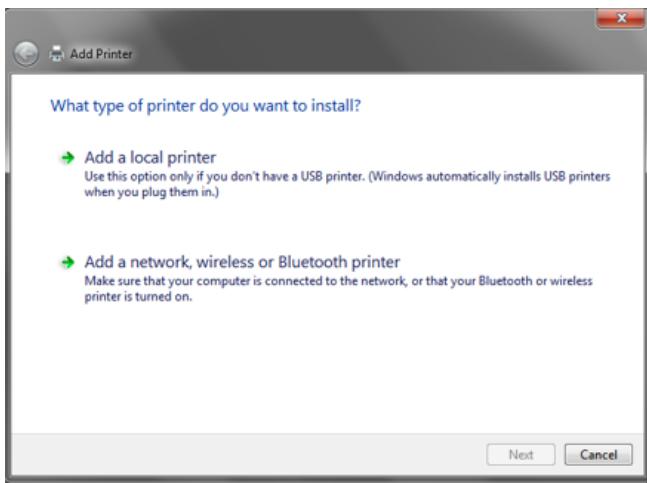


At this point, a new device by the name "Generic Text Printer Demo" should be available under Control Panel -> Devices and Printers as shown below.

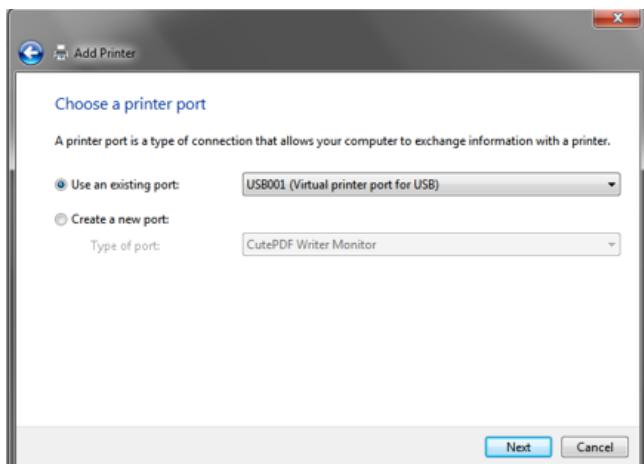


Follow the below steps to add "Generic/Text Only" printer and link it to the attached USB printer.

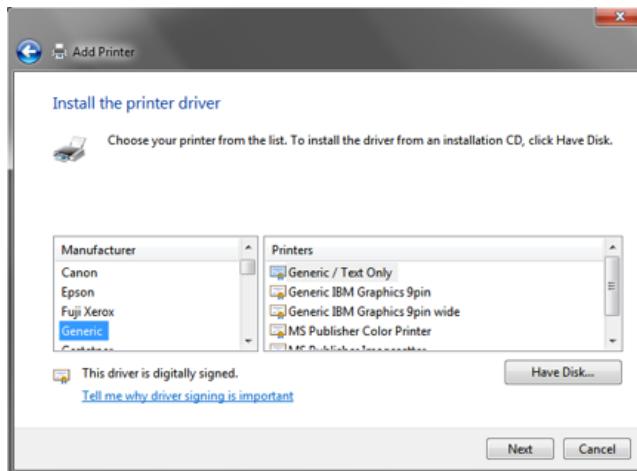
- 1) Open Devices and Printers from the Control Panel and right click then click "Add a printer"
- 2) In the Add Printer wizard, click "Add a local printer".



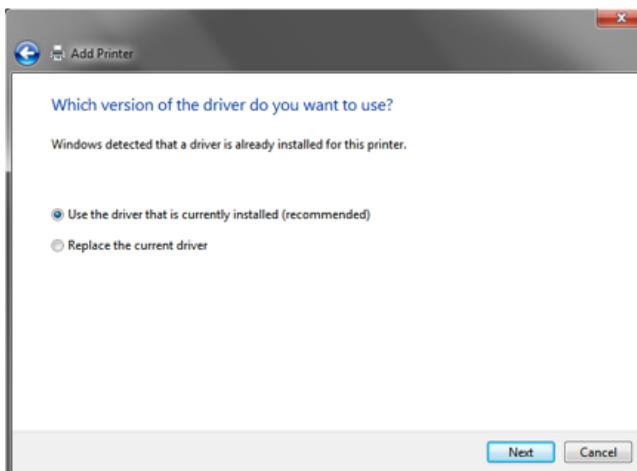
- 3) In the printer port selection option, choose "Use an existing port" and from the drop-down list, select "USB001 (Virtual printer port for USB)".



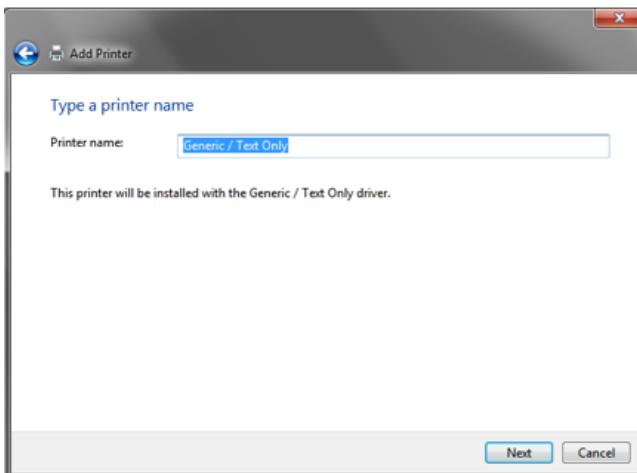
- 4) In the printer driver selection, select "Generic" from the Manufacturer list and "Generic / Text Only" from the Printers list.



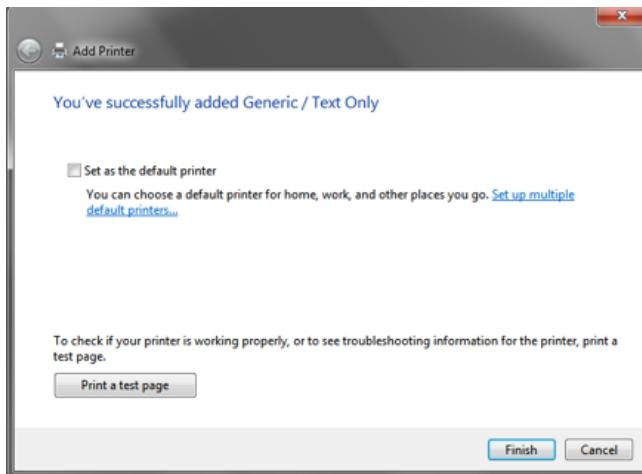
5) Use the default option in driver version select window and click Next.



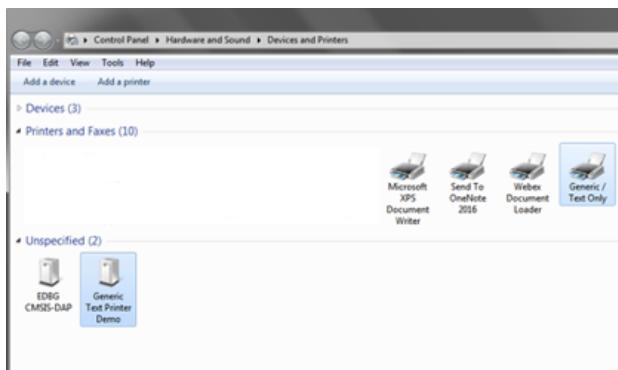
6) In the printer name window, use the default name "Generic / Text Only" or provide any other name and click Next.



7) Click Finish to complete the Add printer wizard.



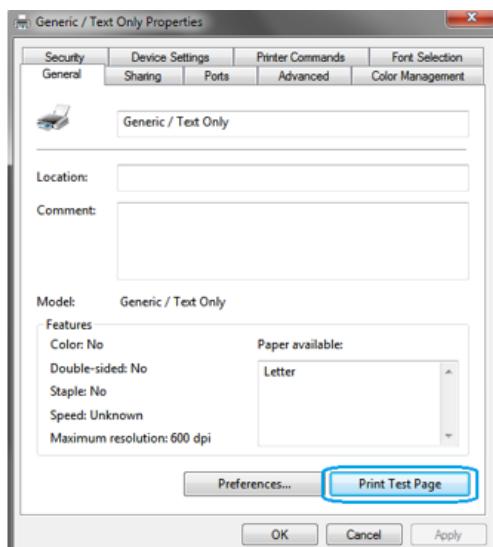
8) At this point, a new printer icon with the name provided in step #6 should be visible under Devices and Printers window as shown below.

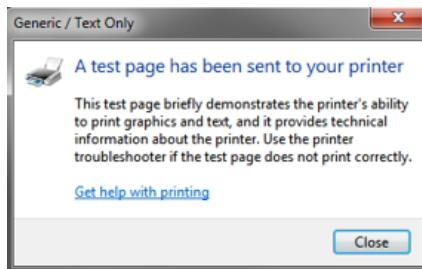


Print test page

After successful installation of the "Generic / Text Only" printer, follow below steps to print a test page.

- 1) On the printer icon, right click and select "Printer Properties"
- 2) In the properties window, click "Print Test Page" as shown below.





3) Now the test page data will be printed on the serial terminal application as shown below. This shows the successful reception of print data sent by the host PC.

```

Windows
Printer Test Page

Congratulations!
If you can read this information, you have correctly installed your
Generic / Text Only on [REDACTED]
The information below describes your printer driver and port settings.
Submitted Time: 5:20:00 PM ,11-Apr-19
Computer name: [REDACTED]
Printer name: Generic / Text Only
Printer model: Generic / Text Only
Color support: No
Port name(s): USB001
Data format: RAW
Location:
Comment:
Driver name: UNIDRV.DLL
Data file: TTY.GPD
Config file: UNIDRVUI.DLL
Help file: UNIDRV.HLP
Driver version: 6.00
Environment: Windows x64
Additional files used by this driver:
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\TTYRES.DLL
(6.1.7600.16385 (win7_rtm.090713-1255))
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\TTY.INI
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\TTY.DLL
(6.1.7600.16385 (win7_rtm.090713-1255))
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\TTYUI.DLL
(6.1.7600.16385 (win7_rtm.090713-1255))
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\TTYUI.HLP
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\UNIRES.DLL
(6.1.7600.16385 (win7_rtm.090713-1255))
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\STDNAMES.GPD
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\STDDTYPE.GDL
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\STDSCHEM.GDL
C:\Windows\system32\spool\DRIVERS\x64\3\STDSCHEMX.GDL
This is the end of the printer test page.

```

Host Demonstrations

This section describes the USB Host demonstrations.

cdc_basic

This application demonstrates the use of the CDC Host Class Driver to enumerate and operate a CDC Device.

Description

This application demonstrates the use of the CDC Host Class Driver to enumerate and operate a CDC Device. The application uses the USB Host layer and CDC class driver to enumerate a CDC USB device. The demonstration host application then operates and uses the functionality of the attached CDC Device.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/host/cdc_basic/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Project

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_d21_xpro.X | ATSAMD21J18A | SAMD21 Xplained PRO | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC Host application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB CDC Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC Host application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_v71_xult_freertos.X | ATSAMV71Q21B | SAMV71 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB CDC Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAMV71Q21B device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.X | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC Host application on a ATSAME54P20A device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC Host application on a PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk_freertos.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a USB CDC Host application with freeRTOS on a PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

IAR Embedded Workbench Projects

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_a5d2_xult.IAR | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC Host application on a ATSAMA5D27C device. |
| sam_a5d2_xult_freertos.X | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a USB CDC Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAMA5D27C device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and LED 1(positions 1 and 2).
- Use "TARGET USB" J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED1 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device.

SAMV71 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper titled "USB VBUS" must be shorted between PC09 and LED1(positions 1 and 2)
- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB

Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.

- LED0 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- Jumper titled "PA03 SELECT" must be shorted between PA03 and USB_ID(positions 2 and 3)
- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device.

PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit

- Connect the device to the Type A connector J5, which is located on the top side of the starter kit.
- LED0 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device.

SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit

- Setup the SD card
 - Download harmony MPU bootstrap loader from this [location](#)
 - Copy the downloaded boot loader binary(boot.bin) and generated application binary (harmony.bin)into the SD card
 - Insert the SD card into the SDMMC1 slot on the board
- Short jumper JP2(DEBUG_DIS)
- Connect the Debug USB port on the board to the computer using a micro USB cable
- Use "A5-USB-B" connector(J13 - Type A connector) on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host.
- RGB LED on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device.

Running the Demonstration

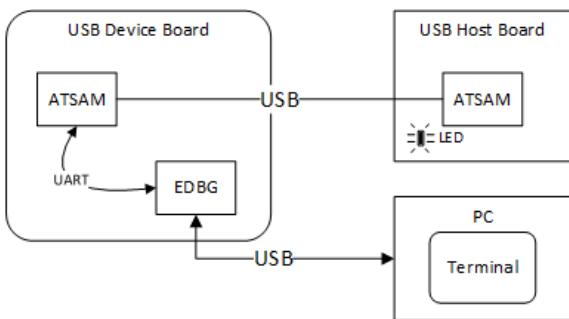
Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB Host CDC Basic Demo.

Description

This application demonstrates the use of the CDC Host Class Driver to enumerate and operate a CDC Device. The application uses the USB Host layer and CDC class driver to enumerate a CDC USB device. The demonstration host application then operates and uses the functionality of the attached CDC Device.

- Open the MPLAB X IDE project corresponding to the selected board. Refer to the Building the Application section for details.
- Build the code and program the device.
- Follow the directions for setting up and running the [cdc_serial_emulator](#) USB device demonstration.
- Connect the USB Device connector of the CDC USB Device board to the USB Host Target board. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for any converter requirements.
- Start a terminal program on the USB Host personal computer and select the Serial-to-USB Dongle as the communication port. Select the baud rate as 9600, no parity, 1 Stop bit and no flow control.
- A prompt (LED :) will be displayed immediately on the terminal emulation program.
- Pressing the 1 key on the USB Host keyboard will cause the LED on the Host USB board to switch on. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware section for details on the relevant LED. Pressing any other key at the prompt message will cause the LED to switch off.
- The prompt will again be displayed on terminal emulation program, and step 7 can be repeated.

The setup should be similar to the following diagram.



The [cdc_serial_emulator](#) demonstration emulates a USB-to-Serial Dongle. The CDC Host (running the [cdc_basic](#) demonstration application) sends the prompt message to the CDC device. The CDC device forwards the prompt to the UART port from where it is transmitted to the personal computer USB Host through the USB serial interface. A key press on the personal computer USB Host is transmitted to the CDC device, which in turn presents the key press data to the CDC host. The [cdc_basic](#) demonstration then analyzes the key press data and switches on the respective LED.

cdc_msd

Demonstrates host support for multiple device classes.

Description

This demonstration application creates a USB Host that can support different device classes in one application.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/host/cdc_msd/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Project

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB CDC MSD Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC MSD Host application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.x | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB CDC MSD Host application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

[SAME70 Xplained Ultra](#)

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and LED 1(positions 1 and 2).
- LED2 indicates a Device Connection. (Attached device has been successfully enumerated and configured).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.

- LED1 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device when a CDC device is attached. When a Mass Storage Device is attached, it indicates file write completion.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- Jumper titled "PA03 SELECT" must be shorted between PA03 and USB_ID(positions 2 and 3)
- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 on the board is controlled by the attached USB CDC device when a CDC device is attached. When a Mass Storage Device is attached, it indicates file write completion.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB CDC MSD demonstration.

Description

This demonstration application creates a USB Host application that enumerates a CDC and a MSD device. This application combines the functionality of the Host cdc_basic and msd_basic demonstration applications into one application. If a CDC device is connected, the demonstration application behaves like the cdc_basic host application. If a MSD device is connected, the demonstration application behaves like the msd_basic host application.

Refer to [Running the Demonstration](#) section of the host cdc_basic demonstration and the [Running the Demonstration](#) section of the host msd_basic demonstration for details on exercising the CDC and MSD host aspects of the demonstration.

hid_basic_keyboard

Demonstrates using the USB HID Host Client driver with the Keyboard Usage driver to facilitate the use of a USB HID Keyboard with a PIC32 USB Host.

Description

This application demonstrates the use of the USB HID Host Client Driver to enumerate and operate a HID keyboard device. The application uses the USB Host layer, HID Client driver and HID Keyboard Usage driver to enumerate a USB keyboard and understand keyboard press release events.

The keyboard events are displayed using a terminal emulator on a personal computer.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/host/hid_basic_keyboard/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Project

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB HID Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.x | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB HID Host application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.x | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB HID Host application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |

IAR Embedded Workbench Projects

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_a5d2_xult.IAR | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB HID Host application on a ATSAMA5D27C device. |
| sam_a5d2_xult_freertos.X | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a USB HID Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAMA5D27C device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and LED 1(positions 1 and 2).
- LED2 indicates a Device Connection. (Attached device has been successfully enumerated and configured).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the keyboard.
- A commercially available USB Keyboard will be needed.
- The demonstration uses the EDBG Serial Interface to transfer demonstration application messages on a PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- Jumper titled "PA03 SELECT" must be shorted between PA03 and USB_ID(positions 2 and 3)
- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 indicates a Device Connection. (Attached device has been successfully enumerated and configured).
- The demonstration uses the EDBG Serial Interface to transfer demonstration application messages on a PC.

SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit

- Setup the SD card
 - Download harmony MPU bootstrap loader from this [location](#)
 - Copy the downloaded boot loader binary(boot.bin) and generated application binary (harmony.bin)into the SD card
 - Insert the SD card into the SDMMC1 slot on the board
- Short jumper JP2(DEBUG_DIS)
- Connect the Debug USB port on the board to the computer using a micro USB cable
- Use "A5-USB-B" connector(J13 - Type A connector) on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host.
- RGB LED indicates a Device Connection. (Attached device has been successfully enumerated and configured).
- The demonstration uses the EDBG Serial Interface to transfer demonstration application messages on a PC.

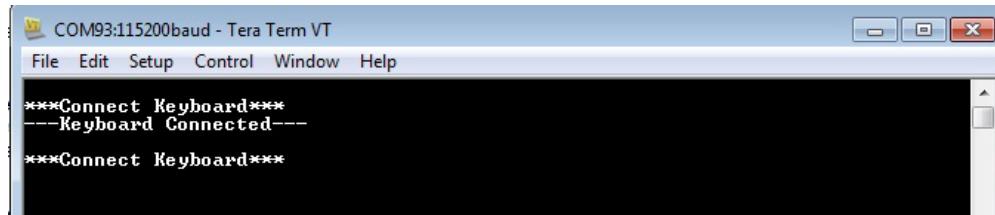
Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB HID Basic Keyboard demonstration.

Description

1. Open the MPLAB X IDE project corresponding to the selected hardware.
2. Build the code and program the device.
3. Connect the serial interface on the board to a PC. On the PC, launch a terminal emulator, such as Tera Term, and select the appropriate COM port and set the serial port settings to 115200-N-1.
4. If a USB keyboard is not connected to the Embedded USB Host, the terminal emulator window will show the *Connect Keyboard* prompt.

5. Attach a USB keyboard to the Host connector of the target hardware. The message, *Keyboard Connected*, will appear in the terminal emulator window.
6. Begin typing on the keyboard and the appropriate keys should be displayed on the serial terminal. Subsequent press and release of modifier keys (i.e., CAPS LOCK, NUM LOCK, etc.) will result in the appropriate keyboard LEDs to turning ON and OFF.
7. Disconnecting the keyboard will result in the message, *Connect Keyboard*.



msd_basic

This application demonstrates the use of the MSD Host Class Driver to write a file to USB Flash Drive.

Description

This application demonstrates the use of the MSD Host Class Driver to write a file to a USB Flash drive. The application uses the USB Host layer , MSD class driver and the MPLAB Harmony File System Framework to enumerate a USB Flash drive and to write a file to it.

Building the Application

This section identifies the MPLAB X IDE projects contained in this demo application, the name and location of the projects and lists the target hardware development board for each project.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/host/msd_basic/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Project

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_d21_xpro.X | ATSAMD21J18A | SAMD21 Xplained PRO | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB MSD Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_v71_xult_freertos.X | ATSAMV71Q21B | SAMV71 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB MSD Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAMV71Q21B device. |
| sam_e54_xpro.X | ATSAME54P20A | SAM E54 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a ATSAME54P20A device. |
| pic32mz_ef_sk.X | PIC32MZ2048EFH144 | PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a PIC32MZ2048EFH144 device. |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pic32mz_das_sk.x | PIC32MZ2064DAS169 | PIC32MZ Embedded Graphics with Stacked DRAM (DA) Starter Kit (Crypto) | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a PIC32MZ2064DAS169 device. |
| pic32mx470_curiosity.X | PIC32MX470F512H | PIC32MX Curiosity Development Board | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a PIC32MX470F512H device. |
| pic32mx470_curiosity_freertos.X | PIC32MX470F512H | PIC32MX Curiosity Development Board | This project implements a USB MSD Host application with FreeRTOS on a PIC32MX470F512H device. |
| sam_121_xpro.X | ATSAML21J18B | SAM L21 Xplained Pro Evaluation Kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a ATSAML21J18B device. |
| pic32mk_sk.x | PIC32MK1024GPE100 | PIC32MK General Purpose (GP) Development Board | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a PIC32MK1024GPE100 device. |
| pic32mk_sk_freertos.X | PIC32MK1024GPE100 | PIC32MK General Purpose (GP) Development Board | This project implements a USB MSD Host application with FreeRTOS on a PIC32MK1024GPE100 device. |

Identify the project for the target device and hardware and open this project in MPLAB X IDE. Build the project using the available Menu or Tool Bar options.

IAR Embedded Workbench Projects

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_a5d2_xult.IAR | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB MSD Host application on a ATSAMA5D27C device. |
| sam_a5d2_xult_freertos.X | ATSAMA5D27C | SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit | This project implements a USB MSD Host application with freeRTOS on a ATSAMA5D27C device. |

Configuring the Hardware

Describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and LED 1(positions 1 and 2).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED1 indicates the file write is complete.

SAMV71 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper titled "USB VBUS" must be shorted between PC09 and LED1(positions 1 and 2)

- Use TARGET USB connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 indicates the file write is complete.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- Jumper titled "PA03 SELECT" must be shorted between PA03 and USB_ID(positions 2 and 3)
- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 indicates the file write is complete.

SAME54 Xplained PRO

- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 indicates the file write is complete.

PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity with FPU (EF) Starter Kit

- Connect the device to the Type A connector J5, which is located on the top side of the starter kit.
- LED1 indicates the file write is complete.

PIC32MZ Embedded Graphics with Stacked DRAM (DA) Starter Kit

- Connect the device to the Type A connector J7, which is located on the top side of the starter kit.
- LED1 indicates the file write is complete.

SAMA5D2 Xplained Ultra evaluation kit

- Setup the SD card
 - Download harmony MPU bootstrap loader from this [location](#)
 - Copy the downloaded boot loader binary(boot.bin) and generated application binary (harmony.bin)into the SD card
 - Insert the SD card into the SDMMC1 slot on the board
- Short jumper JP2(DEBUG_DIS)
- Connect the Debug USB port on the board to the computer using a micro USB cable
- Use "A5-USB-B" connector(J13 - Type A connector) on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host.
- RGB LED turning to Green indicates the file write is complete.

PIC32MK General Purpose (GP) Development Board

- Connect the device to the Type A connector J5, which is located on the top side of the starter kit.
- LED1 indicates the file write is complete.

PIC32MX Curiosity Development Board

- Connect the device to theUSB micro-B port J12, which is located on the top side of the starter kit.
- LED1 indicates the file write is complete.

SAM L21 Xplained Pro Evaluation Kit

- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 indicates the file write is complete.

Running the Demonstration

Provides instructions on how to build and run the USB Host MSD Basic demonstration.

Description

This application demonstrates the use of the MSD Host Class Driver to write a file to USB Flash drive. The application uses the USB Host layer, MSD class driver and the MPLAB Harmony File System Framework to enumerate a USB Flash drive and to write a file to it.

1. Open the MPLAB X IDE project corresponding to the selected hardware. Refer to the Building the Application section for details.
2. Build the code and program the device.
3. With the code running, attach a USB Flash drive to the Host connector on the desired starter kit.
4. The demonstration application will then create a file named `file.txt`. It will then write the text "Hello World" to this file, and then close the file.
5. The LED on the selected hardware will indicate the status of the operation. Refer to the Configuring the Hardware instruction

for details.

6. The USB Flash drive can then be attached to a USB Host personal computer to verify the demonstration application operation.
7. Steps 3 through 6 can be repeated.
8. If the USB Flash drive already contains a file with the name `file.txt`, the demonstration application will append the text "Hello World" to the end of the file contents.

hid_basic_mouse_usart

Building the Application

This section does the following:

- Identifies the MPLAB X IDE project name and location.
- Lists and describes the available configurations for the USB HID Basic Mouse USART demonstration.

Description

The following table lists the MPLAB X Projects contained in <install-dir>/usb/apps/host/hid_basic_mouse_usart/firmware folder and provides a description of each project. All projects listed in this table implement the same functionality.

MPLAB X IDE Project

This table lists the name and location of the MPLAB X IDE project folder for the demonstration.

| Project Name | Target Device | Target Board | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam_e70_xult_freertos.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a USB HID Host Mouse application with freeRTOS on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_e70_xult.X | ATSAME70Q21B | SAME70 Xplained Ultra | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB HID Host Mouse application on a ATSAME70Q21B device. |
| sam_d21_xpro.X | ATSAMD21J18A | SAM D21 Xplained Pro | This project implements a bare-metal(non RTOS) USB HID Host Mouse application on a ATSAMD21J18A device. |

Configuring the Hardware

This section describes how to configure the supported hardware.

Description

SAME70 Xplained Ultra

- Jumper J204 must be shorted between PB08 and LED 1(positions 1 and 2).
- LED2 indicates a Device Connection. (Attached device has been successfully enumerated and configured).
- Use TARGET USB J202 connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the keyboard.
- A commercially available USB Keyboard will be needed.
- The demonstration uses the EDBG Serial Interface to transfer demonstration application messages on a PC.

SAMD21 Xplained PRO

- Jumper titled "PA03 SELECT" must be shorted between PA03 and USB_ID(positions 2 and 3)
- Use "TARGET USB" connector on the board to connect the USB Device to the the USB Host PC. A USB micro AB to type A USB Host receptacle converter will be needed to connect the device.
- LED0 indicates a Device Connection. (Attached device has been successfully enumerated and configured).
- The demonstration uses the EDBG Serial Interface to transfer demonstration application messages on a PC.

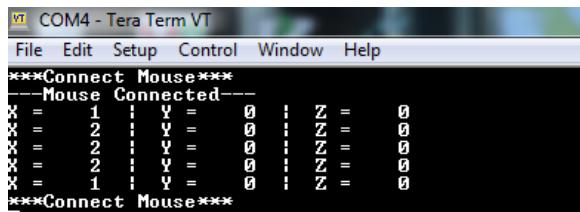
Running the Demonstration

This section provides instructions about how to build and run the USB HID Mouse USART demonstration.

Description

Open the project in MPLAB X IDE and select the project configuration.

- Build the code and program the device.
- Launch a terminal emulator, such as Tera Term. Select the appropriate COM port and set the serial port settings to 115200-N-1.
- If a USB mouse is not connected to the Host connector, the serial terminal emulator window will show the "Connect Mouse" prompt.
- Attach a USB mouse to the Host connector of the target hardware. The message, "Mouse Connected", will display in the serial terminal emulator window.
- Begin moving the mouse and the appropriate relative coordinate changes for X,Y, and Z axes should be displayed in the serial terminal window.
- Click the mouse button to toggle LEDs on the board.
- Disconnecting the mouse will result in the message, "Connect Mouse", to reappear on the serial console.



USB Libraries Help

This document provides descriptions of the USB libraries that are available in MPLAB Harmony.

USB Device Libraries

This section provides information on the USB Device libraries that are available in MPLAB Harmony.

USB Device Library - Getting Started

This section provides information for getting started with the USB Device Library.

Introduction

Provides an introduction to the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Library

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Device Library (referred to as the USB Device Library) provides embedded application developers with a framework to design and develop a wide variety of USB Devices. A choice of Full Speed only or Full Speed and Hi-Speed USB operations are available, depending on the selected PIC32 or SAM microcontroller. The USB Device Library facilitates development of standard USB devices through function drivers that implement standard USB Device class specification. Vendor USB devices can be implemented via USB Device Layer Endpoint functions. The USB Device Library is modular, thus allowing application developers to readily design composite USB devices. The USB Device Library is a part of the MPLAB Harmony installation and is accompanied by demonstration applications that highlight library usage. These demonstrations can also be modified or updated to build custom applications. The USB Device Library also features the following:

- Support for different USB device classes (CDC, Audio, HID, MSD, Printer and Vendor)
- Supports multiple instance of the same class in a composite device
- Supports multiple configurations at different speeds
- Supports Full-Speed and High-Speed operation
- Supports multiple USB peripherals (allows multiple device stacks)
- Modular and Layered architecture
- Supports deferred control transfer responses
- Completely non-blocking
- Supports both polled and interrupt operation
- Works readily in an RTOS application

This document serves as a getting started guide and provides information on the following:

- USB Device Library architecture
- USB Device Library - application interaction
- Creating your own USB device



Note: It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the USB 2.0 specification (available at www.usbif.org). While the document, for the sake completeness, does cover certain aspects of the USB 2.0 protocol, it is recommended that the reader refer to the specification for a complete description of USB operation.

USB Device Library Architecture

Describes the USB Device Library Architecture.

Description

The USB Device Library features a modular and layered architecture, as illustrated in the following figure.

USB Device Library Architecture

As seen in the figure, the USB Device Library consists of the following three major components.

USB Controller Driver (USBCD)

The USBCD manages the state of the USB peripheral and provides the Device Layer with structured data access methods to the USB. It also provides the Device layer with USB events. The USBCD is a MPLAB Harmony driver and uses the MPLAB Harmony framework services for its operation. It supports only one client per instance of the USB Peripheral. This client would typically be the Device Layer. In case of multiple USB peripherals, the USBCD can manage multiple USB peripherals, each being accessed by one client. The driver is accessed exclusively by the Device Layer in the USB Device Layer Architecture. The USBCD provides functions to:

- Enable, disable and stall endpoints
- Schedule USB transfers
- Attach or detach the device
- Control resume signalling

Device Layer

The Device Layer responds to the enumeration requests issued by the USB Host. It has exclusive access to an instance of the USBCD and the control endpoint (Endpoint 0). When the Host issues a class specific control transfer request, the Device Layer will analyze the setup packet of the control transfer and will route the control transfer to the appropriate function driver. The Device Layer must be initialized with the following data:

- Master Descriptor Table - This is a table of all the configuration descriptors and string descriptors.
- Function Driver Registration Table - This table contains information about the function drivers in the application
- USBCD initialization information - This specifies the USB peripheral interrupt, the USB Peripheral instance and Sleep mode operation options

The Device Layer initializes all function drivers that are registered with it when it receives a Set Configuration (for a supported configuration) from the Host. It deinitializes the function drivers when a USB reset event occurs. It opens the USBCD and registers an event handler to receive USB events. The Device Layer can also be opened by the application (the application becomes a client to the Device Layer). The application can then receive bus and device events and respond to control transfer requests. The Device Layer provides events to the application such as device configured or device reset. Some of these events are notification-only events, while other events require the application to take action.

Function Drivers

The Function Drivers implements various USB device classes as per the class specification. The USB Device Library architecture can support multiple instances of a function driver. An example would be a USB CDC device that emulates two serial ports. Function drivers provide an abstracted and an easy to use interface to the application. The application must register an event handler with the function driver to receive function driver events and must respond to some of these events with control transfer read/write functions. Function drivers access the bus through the Device Layer.

USB Device Library - Application Interaction

Describes how the application must interact with the USB Device Stack.

Description

 **Note:** Additional information on USB demonstration application projects is available in the [USB Demonstrations](#) section.

The following figure highlights the steps that the application must follow to use the USB Device Library.

Application Interaction with Device Layer

The application must first initialize the Device Layer. As a part of the Device Layer initialization process, the Device Layer initialization structure must be defined which in turn requires the following data structures to be designed

- The master descriptor table
- The function driver registration table

The following figure shows a pictorial representation of the data that forms the Device Layer initialization structure. Additional information on Device Layer initialization is available in the Device Layer Help File.

Device Layer Initialization

After successful initialization of the Device layer, the application can open the Device layer and register a Device layer event handler. The Device layer event handler receives device level events such as device configured, device deconfigured, device

reset and device suspended. The device configured event and deconfigured event are important. The application can use the device deconfigured event to reinitialize its internal state machine. When the application receives a device configured event, it must register event handlers for each function driver that is relevant to the configuration that was set. The function driver event handler registration must be done in the device configured event context because the Device layer acknowledges the set configuration request from the host when it exits the device configured event handler context. The application at this point should be ready to respond to function driver events.

 **Note:** Not registering the function driver event handler in the Device layer configured event could cause the device to not respond to the host requests and therefore, be non-compliant.

Once configured, the device is now ready to serve its intended function on the USB. The application interacts with the Device layer and function drivers through API function and event handlers. The application must be aware of function driver events which require application response. For example, the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING event from the USB CDC Function Driver requires the application to respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlRead function. This function provides the buffer to receive the line coding parameters that the Host sends in the data stage of the Set Line Coding control transfer.

The following figure shows the application interaction with Device layer and function driver after the device has been configured.

Application - Device Layer Interaction after device configuration

In the previous figure, the application should have registered the Device layer event handler before attaching the device on the bus. It should have registered the function driver event handler before exiting the device configured - Device layer event. The application will then receive function driver instance specific events via the function driver event handlers.

Deferring Control Transfer Responses

Class-specific control transfer related function driver events require the application to complete the data stage and/or the status of the control transfer. The application does this by using the Device Layer Control Transfer API to complete the Control Read/Write transfers. The application may typically be able to complete required data processing, and to continue (or end) the control transfer within the function driver event handler context. However, there could be cases where the required control transfer data processing may require hardware access or extended computation. Performing extended processing or waiting for external hardware within the function driver event handler context is not recommended as the USB 2.0 Specification places restrictions on the control transfer response time.

In cases where the application is not ready to respond to control transfer requests within the function driver event handler context, the USB Device Library provides the option of deferring the response to the control transfer event. The application can respond to the control transfer request after exiting the handler function. The application must still observe the USB 2.0 Specification control transfer timing requirements while responding to the control transfer. Deferring the response in such a manner provides the application with flexibility to analyze the control transfer without degrading the performance of the device on the USB.

Creating Your Own USB Device

Describes how to create a USB device with the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Library.

Description

The first step in creating a USB device is identifying whether the desired device function fits into any of the standard USB device class functions. Using standard USB classes may be advantageous as major operating systems feature Host driver support for standard USB devices. However, the application may not want to tolerate the overhead associated with standard USB device class protocols, in which case, a Vendor USB device can be implemented. A Vendor USB device can be implemented by using the USB Device Layer Endpoint functions; however, these devices will require custom USB host drivers for their operation. Having identified the device class to be used, the recommended approach is to use the available demonstration applications as a starting point for the application.

Use the Available Library Demonstration Applications

The USB Device Library release package contains a set of demonstration applications that are representative of common USB devices. These can be modified easily to include application specific initialization and application logic. The application logic must be non-blocking and could be implemented as a state machine. Note that the function names and file names referred to in the following section are those used in the USB Device Library demonstration applications.

- The application specific initialization can be called in the APP_Initialize function (in the app.c file). The APP_Initialize function is called from the SYS_Initialize function, which in turn is called when the device comes out of Power-on Reset (POR).
- The application logic is implemented as a state machine in the APP_Tasks function (in the app.c file). The application logic can interact with the function driver and the Device layer by using available API calls.
- The application logic can track device events by processing the events in the application USB device event handler function

(APP_USBDeviceEventHandler function in app.c).

USB Device Layer Library

This section describes the USB Device Layer Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony 3 USB Device Layer Library.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony 3 USB Device Layer Library (also referred to as the Device Layer) is part of the MPLAB Harmony 3 USB Device Stack. Within the USB Device Stack, the Device Layer implementation is independent of the USB Controller Hardware. It responds to enumeration requests from the Hosts. It receives control transfers from the Host and responds to these control transfers in case of standard device requests. It dispatches all other control transfers to function drivers and the application. It provides the application and function drivers with API routines that allow them to respond and complete a control transfer, with a facility to defer the responses to a control transfer. The Device Layer also provides the application with events and functions that allow the application to track the state of the device.

The Device Layer plays the role of a system in the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack. It initializes USB device function drivers which contained in the active configuration. The state machines of these function drivers is maintained by the Device Layer i.e. the Device Layer invokes the function driver tasks routines from within its own task routine. The Device Layer thus treats the function drivers as sub modules.

The device layer features the following:

- Supports both USB Full-Speed and Hi-Speed operation.
- Based on a modular and event-driven architecture.
- Hardware independent architecture. API does not change across microcontrollers.
- Supports the SAME7x and SAMD2x families of microcontrollers.
- Supports composite USB devices.
- Supports CDC, HID, MSD, Printer, Audio v1.0. Audio v2.0 and Generic/Vendor Devices.
- All functions are non-blocking.
- Operates readily with a RTOS.
- Designed to integrate readily with other MPLAB Harmony middleware.
- Completely interrupt driven.
- Requires minimal application intervention while maintaining the USB Device state.
- Allows implementation of a multi-configuration USB device.
- In case of multiple UBS controllers, allows itself to be instantiated more than once.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB Device Layer Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model implemented by USB Device Layer.

Description

The Device Layer in the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack handles enumeration requests from the USB Host and provides an abstracted access to Control Transfers and Non-Control Endpoint Management. The Device Layer intercepts all Control transfers issues by the host. Only those control transfers that require application or function driver intervention are forwarded. Standard device control transfers are completely handled by the Device Layer. All access to the bus is routed via the Device Layer.

The following block diagram shows the USB Device Layer interaction with USB Controller Driver, Function Drivers, User

Application and the Harmony System module.

USB Device Layer Interaction Block Diagram

Harmony System Module Interaction

The MPLAB Harmony System Module initializes the Device Layer in the SYS_Initialize() function. It calls the USB Device Layer task routine periodically from the SYS_Tasks() function.

USB Controller Driver Interaction

The Device Layer opens the USB Controller Driver exclusively. It is the only client to the controller driver. The Device Layer manages Endpoint 0 and has exclusive access to this endpoint. It maintains the Control Transfer state machine and seeks intervention from the Application or the Function Drivers where required. The Device Layer provides layered access to the required USB Controller Driver functions.

Function Driver Interaction

The USB Device Layer interaction with the function driver involves the following:

- It initializes the function driver when device is configured by the Host. This happens when the Host issues the standard USB Set Configuration Request to the device. The device layer initializes only those function drivers that are part of the selected configuration.
- Deinitializes the function driver when the Host issues a bus reset or when device is detached from the host or when the Host issues a Set Configuration request with configuration value set to '0'.
- The Device Layer executes the Function driver task routines from within its own tasks routine ([USB_DEVICE_Tasks\(\)](#) function). In an RTOS application, this implies that the function driver task routines run at the same priority and context as the device layer task routine.
- Forwards class/interface specific control transfer requests from host to function drivers for processing. The function drivers can use Device layer API routines to read and write data to Endpoint 0.

The Device Layer initiates all of the above interactions with the function driver independent of function driver type. Each function driver implements a set of common APIs. These common API allow the Device Layer to initialize/deinitialize the function driver, forward control transfers and invoke the function driver's task routine. Function Drivers are registered with the Device Layer as a part of the Device Stack Configuration. This is a compile time step. Function driver registration is explained elsewhere in this help section.

User Application (Client) Interaction

The user application opens the Device Layer and becomes a Device Layer client. It registers an event callback function with the Device layer to get Device Layer event notifications. Other than receiving such notifications, the application client can also interact with the Device Layer to determine device status such as USB speed or initiate a remote wake-up. The Device Layer will forward Control Transfers, whose recipient field is set to Other, to the application. The application must use the Device Layer Control Transfer Routines to complete these control transfers.

Library Overview

The Device Layer Library provides API routines which allow the Harmony System module, function driver and the user application to interact with it.

The library interface routines can be classified as shown in the table below

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| System Interaction Functions | These functions allow the Harmony System Module to perform library initialization, deinitialization, reinitialization and task functions. |
| Client Core Functions | These functions allow the application client to register an event callback function. |
| Device Power State Management Functions | These functions manage the power state of the device (self or bus powered) and remote wake-up. |
| Endpoint Management Functions | These functions allow the application to manage (enable, disable and stall) endpoints. These are required in case of a Generic or a Vendor USB Device Implementation. |
| Device Management Functions | These functions allow the application to manage (attach, detach etc.) the state of the device. |
| Control Transfer Functions | These functions allow the application to complete control transfers. |

How the Library Works

This topic describes the operation of the Device Layer.

Library Initialization

Describes how the USB Device Layer must be initialized.

Description

The Device Layer initialization process requires the following components:

- USB Standard Descriptors that define the device functionality. The definitions of these descriptors are defined by the USB 2.0 and Device Class specification.
- Device Master Descriptor Table
- Function Driver Registration Table

The USB Standard Descriptors that define the device functionality are discussed in detail in the USB 2.0 and Device Class Specifications. The reader is encouraged to refer to these specifications for a detailed understanding of this topic. The Device Layer does not impose any additional requirements on Device descriptors.

Master Descriptor Table

Describes the USB Device Layer Master Descriptor Table.

Description

As seen in the figure, the Device Master Descriptor Table (specified by the [USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR](#) data type) is a container for all descriptor related information that is needed by the Device Layer for its operation. This table contains the following information:

- Pointer to the Full-Speed and High-Speed Device Descriptor
- Number of Full-Speed and High-Speed Configurations
- Pointers to Table of Full-Speed and High-Speed Configuration Descriptors
- Number of String Descriptors
- Pointer to a Table of String Descriptors
- Pointers to Full-Speed and High-Speed Device Qualifier

In a case where a particular item in the Device Master Descriptor Table is not applicable, that entry can be either set to '0' or NULL as applicable. For example for a Full-Speed-only device, the number of High Speed Configuration should be set to '0' and the pointer to the table of High-Speed Configuration Descriptors should be set to NULL.

The following code shows an example of a USB Device Master Descriptor design for a Full-Speed USB HID Keyboard.

```
*****
* USB Device Layer Master Descriptor Table
*****
const USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR usbMasterDescriptor =
{
    &fullSpeedDeviceDescriptor,          /* Full-speed descriptor */
    1,                                  /* Total number of full-speed configurations available */
    &fullSpeedConfigDescSet[0],          /* Pointer to array of full-speed configurations
descriptors */

    NULL,                               /* High-speed device descriptor is not supported*/
    0,                                  /* Total number of high-speed configurations available */
    NULL,                               /* Pointer to array of high-speed configurations
descriptors. Not supported */

    3,                                  /* Total number of string descriptors available */
    stringDescriptors,                  /* Pointer to array of string descriptors */

    NULL,                               /* Pointer to full-speed device qualifier. Not supported */
}
```

```

        NULL,
    } ;                                     /* Pointer to high-speed device qualifier. Not supported */

The following code shows an example of a USB Device Master Descriptor design for a Full Speed/High Speed USB HID
Keyboard.

*****
 * USB Device Layer Master Descriptor Table
 *****
const USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR usbMasterDescriptor =
{
    &fullSpeedDeviceDescriptor,           /* Full-speed descriptor */
    1,                                    /* Total number of full-speed configurations available */
    &fullSpeedConfigDescSet[0],          /* Pointer to array of full-speed configurations
descriptors*/                          

    &highSpeedDeviceDescriptor,          /* High-speed descriptor */
    1,                                    /* Total number of high-speed configurations available */
    &highSpeedConfigDescSet[0],          /* Pointer to array of high-speed configurations
descriptors*/                          

    3,                                    /* Total number of string descriptors available */
    stringDescriptors,                  /* Pointer to array of string descriptors */

    &deviceQualifierDescriptor1,         /* Pointer to full-speed device qualifier. */
    NULL,                                /* Pointer to high-speed device qualifier. Not supported */
};

```

The USB Device Layer Master Descriptor table can be placed in the data or program memory of the microcontroller. The contents of this table should not be modified while the application is running. Doing this will affect the operation of the Device Stack. A typical USB device application will not need to change the contents of this table while the application is running.

Function Driver Registration Table

This section explains how function drivers can be registered with the USB Device Layer using the Function Registration Table.

Description

The Function Driver Registration Table (defined by the [USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE](#) data type) contains information about the function drivers that are present in the application. The Device Layer needs this information to establish the intended functionality of the USB Device and then manage the operation of the device.

The Function Driver Registration Table contains an entry for every function driver instance contained in the application. Each entry is configuration specific. If a device that features multiple configurations, the Function Driver Registration Table will contain an entry for every function driver in each configuration. Entries are instance and configuration specific. Hence if a configuration contains two instances of the same function driver type, the Function Driver Registration Table will contain two entries for the same function driver but with different instance indexes. A description of each member of the Function Driver Registration Table entry is as follows:

- The configurationValue member of the entry specifies to which configuration this entry belongs. The Device Layer will process this entry when the configurationValue configuration is set.
- The driver member of the entry should be set to Function Driver – Device Layer Interface Functions Object exported by the function driver. This object is provided by the function driver. In case of the CDC function driver, this is [USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER](#). In case of HID function driver, this is [USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER](#). Refer to the "Library Initialization" topic in Function Driver Specific help section for more details.
- The funcDriverIndex member of the entry specifies the instance of the function driver that this entry relates to. The Device Layer will use this instance when communicating with the function driver. In a case where there are multiple instances of the same function driver in a configuration, the funcDriverIndex allows the Device Layer to uniquely identify the function driver.
- The funcDriverInit member of the entry must point to the function driver instance specific initialization data structure. Function Drivers typically require an initialization data structure to be specified. The Device Layer passes the pointer to the initialization data structure when the function driver is initialized. Refer to the "Library Initialization" topic in Function Driver Specific help section for more details.
- The interfaceNumber member of the entry must contain the interface number of the first interface that is owned by this function driver instance. The information is available from the Device Configuration Descriptor.
- The numberOfInterfaces member of the entry must contain the number of interfaces following the interfaceNumber interface that is owned by this function driver instance. For example, a CDC Device requires two interfaces. The interfaceNumber member of Function Driver Registration Table entry for this function driver would be 0 and the numberOfInterfaces member

would be 2. This indicates that Interface 0 and Interface 1 in the Device Configuration Descriptor are owned by this function driver.

- The speed member of the entry specifies the device speeds for which this function driver should be initialized. This can be set to either USB_SPEED_FULL, USB_SPEED_HIGH or a logical OR combination of both. The Device Layer will initialize the function if the device attach speed matches the speed member of the entry.

The following code shows an example of Function Driver Registration Table for one function driver. The CDC Function Driver in this case has two interfaces.

```
*****
* USB Device Layer Function Driver Registration
* Table
*****
const USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
{
    .configurationValue = 1,                                // Configuration descriptor index
    .driver = USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER,              // CDC APIs exposed to the device layer
    .funcDriverIndex = 0,                                   // Instance index of CDC function driver
    .funcDriverInit = (void *)&cdcInit,                   // CDC init data
    .interfaceNumber = 0,                                   // Start interface number of this instance
    .numberOfInterfaces = 2,                               // Total number of interfaces contained in
this instance
    .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH                // USB Speed
}
};
```

The following code shows an example of Function Driver Registration Table for two function drivers. This example demonstrates a Composite (CDC + MSD) device. The CDC Function Driver uses two interfaces starting from interface 0. The MSD Function Driver has one interface starting from interface 2.

```
*****
* Function Driver Registration Table
*****
USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[2] =
{
{
    .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH,                  // Speed at which this device can operate
    .configurationValue = 1,                                 // Configuration number to which this
device belongs
    .interfaceNumber = 1,                                   // Starting interface number for this
function driver
    .numberOfInterfaces = 2,                               // Number of interfaces that this function
driver owns.
    .funcDriverIndex = 0,                                 // Function Driver index
    .funcDriverInit = &cdcInit,                          // Function Driver initialization data
structure
    .driver = USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER             // CDC Function Driver.
},
{
    .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH,                  // Speed at which this device can operate
    .configurationValue = 1,                                 // Configuration number to which this
device belongs
    .interfaceNumber = 0,                                   // Starting interface number for this
function driver
    .numberOfInterfaces = 1,                               // Number of interfaces that this function
driver owns.
    .funcDriverIndex = 0,                                 // Function Driver index
    .funcDriverInit = &msdInit,                          // Function Driver initialization data
structure
    .driver = USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER            // MSD Function Driver.
},
};
```

The USB Device Layer Function Driver registration table can be placed in the data or program memory of the microcontroller. The contents of this table should not be modified while the application is running. Doing this will affect the operation of the device stack. A typical USB device application will not need to change the contents of this table while the application is running.

Initializing the Device Layer

This section describes the USB Device Layer initialization.

Description

With the USB Device Master Descriptor and the Function Driver Registration Table available, the application can now create the Device Layer Initialization Data structure. This data structure is a [USB_DEVICE_INIT](#) type and contains the information need to initialize the Device Layer. The actual initialization is performed by calling the [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#) function. This function returns a Device Layer System Module Object which must be used by the System Module to access this Device Layer context while calling the Device Layer task routine.

The following code shows an example of initializing the Device Layer.

```
*****
 * USB Device Layer Initialization.
*****/
```

```
USB_DEVICE_INIT usbDevInitData =
{
    /* Number of function drivers registered to this instance of the
     * USB device layer */
    .registeredFuncCount = 2,

    /* Function driver table registered to this instance of the USB device layer*/
    .registeredFunctions = (USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE*)funcRegistrationTable,

    /* Pointer to USB Descriptor structure */
    .usbMasterDescriptor = (USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR*)&usbMasterDescriptor,

    /* USB Device Speed */
    .deviceSpeed = USB_SPEED_HIGH,

    /* Pointer to the USB Driver Interface */
    .usbDriverInterface = DRV_USBHSV1_DEVICE_INTERFACE
};

*****
 * System Initialization Routine
*****/
void SYS_Initialize ( void * data )
{
    /* Initialize the USB device layer */
    sysObjects.usbDevObject = USB_DEVICE_Initialize (USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,( SYS_MODULE_INIT* ) &
usbDevInitData);

    /* Initialize the Application */
    APP_Initialize ( );
}
```

Device Layer Task Routines

Describes the Device Layer task routines.

Description

A call to the [USB_DEVICE_Tasks\(\)](#) function should be placed in the [SYS_Tasks\(\)](#) function. This will ensure that this function is called periodically. The [USB_DEVICE_Tasks\(\)](#) function in turn calls the tasks routines of the applicable functions drivers. The following code shows an example of how the [USB_DEVICE_Tasks\(\)](#) function is called in the [SYS_Tasks\(\)](#) function.

```
void SYS_Tasks ( void )
{
    /* Device layer tasks routine. Function Driver tasks gets called
```

```

    * from device layer tasks */

USB_DEVICE_Tasks(sysObjects.usbDevObject);

/* Call the application's tasks routine */
APP_Tasks ();
}

```

Application Client Interaction

Describes application client interaction with Device Layer.

Description

Once initialized, Device Layer becomes ready for operation. The application must open the Device Layer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_Open\(\)](#) function. Opening the Device Layer makes the application a Device Layer client. The Device Layer returns a valid Device Layer Handle when opened successfully. It will return an invalid Device Layer Handle when the open function fails. The application in this case should try opening the Device Layer again. The application needs a valid Device Layer handle (a handle that is not invalid) to access the Device Layer functionality.

The client must now register a Device Layer Event Handler with the Device Layer. This is a mandatory step. It enables USB Device Layer Events and is required for proper functioning of the USB Device Stack. The application must use the [USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet\(\)](#) function to register the event handler. The Application Event Handler should be of the type [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER](#). The Device Layer, when an event needs to be generated, calls this event handler function with the event type and event relevant information. The application must register an event handler for proper functioning of the USB Device. Not registering an event handler may cause the USB Device to malfunction and become non-compliant.

The client can now attach the USB Device on the bus. The application must attach the in response to the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED](#) event. Attaching the device on the bus makes the device visible to the host (if it is already attached to the bus) and will cause the host to interact with the device.

The following code shows an example of the application opening the Device Layer and registering the event handler.

```

*****
* Here the application tries to open the Device Layer
* and then register an event handler and then attach
* the device on the bus.
*****
```

```

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    switch(appData.state)
    {
        case APP_STATE_INIT:

            /* Open the device layer */
            appData.deviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE
);

            if(appData.deviceHandle != USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID)
            {
                /* Register a callback with device layer to get event notification */
                USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet(appData.deviceHandle, APP_USBDeviceEventCallBack, 0);

                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION;
            }
            else
            {
                /* The Device Layer is not ready to be opened. We should try
                   * again later. */
            }
            break;
    }
}

```

Event Handling

Describes the events generated by Device Layer.

Description

The Device Layer generates events to let the application client know about the state of the bus. Some of these events require the application to respond in a specific manner. Not doing so, could cause the USB device to malfunction and become non-compliant. Code inside the event handler executes in an interrupt context when the Device Layer (unless otherwise noted). The application must avoid calling computationally intensive functions or blocking functions in the event handler. The application can call interrupt safe functions in the event handler.

The following table shows a summary of the events that the Device Layer generates and the required application client response.

| Event | Required Application Response |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED | Attach the device. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED | Detach the device. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET | No response required. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED | No response required. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED | No response required. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR | The application can try detaching the device and reattaching. This should be done after exiting from the event handler. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF | No response required. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED | The application must check the configuration that was activated and register event handlers with all function drivers that are contained in the activated configuration. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED | No response required. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST | Application must either respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() to send data, USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() to receive data or stall or acknowledge the control request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | No response required. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED | Application must either stall or acknowledge the control request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_ABORTED | No response required. |

The Device Layer generates events with event specific data. The pData parameter in the event handler functions points to this event specific data. The application can access this data by type casting the pData parameter of the event handler function to a event specific data type. The following table shows a summary of the USB Device Layer events and the event data generated along with the event.

| Event | Related pData Type |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF * |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED * |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST | USB_SETUP_PACKET * |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED | NULL |

A detailed description of each Device Layer event along with the required application client response, the likely follow-up event (if applicable) and the event specific data is provided here.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED

Application Response: This event indicates that the device has detected a valid VBUS to the host. The device is yet to be enumerated and configured. The application should not access the function drivers at this point. The application can use this event to attach the device on the bus.

Event Specific Data(pData): The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED

Application Response: This event is an indication to the application client that the device is detached from the bus. The application can use this event to detach the device.

Event Specific Data(pData): The pData parameter will be NULL

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED

Application Response: This event is an indication to the application client that device is suspended and it can put the device to sleep mode if required. Power saving routines should not be called in the event handler.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET

Application Response: USB bus reset occurred. This event is an indication to the application client that device layer has deinitialized all function drivers. The application should not use the function drivers in this state.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED

Application Response: This event indicates that device has resumed from suspended state. The application can use this event to resume the operational state of the device.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR

Application Response: This event is an indication to the application client that an error occurred on the USB bus. The application can try detaching and reattaching the device.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF

Application Response: This event occurs when the device receives a Start Of Frame packet. The application can use this event for synchronizing purposes. This event will be received every 1 millisecond for Full Speed USB and every one 125 micro seconds for High Speed USB. No application response is required.

Event Specific Data: Will point to [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF](#) data type containing the frame number

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURED

Application Response: This event is an indication to the application client that device layer has initialized all function drivers. The application can check the configuration set by the host. The application should use the event to register event handlers with the function drivers that are contained in the active configuration.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will point to a [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED](#) data type that contains the configuration set by the host

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_DECONFIGURED

Application Response: The host has deconfigured the device. This happens when the host sends a Set Configuration request with configuration number 0. The device layer will deinitialize all function drivers and then generate this event. No application response is required.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED

Application Response: An on-going control transfer was aborted. The application can use this event to reset its control transfer state machine.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED

Application Response: The data stage of a Control write transfer has completed. This event occurs after the application has used the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive\(\)](#) function to receive data in the control transfer (in response to the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST](#) event). The application can inspect the received data and stall or acknowledge the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag or [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag respectively. The application can call the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function in the event handler or after exiting the event handler.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST

Application Response: A setup packet of a control transfer has been received. The recipient field of the received setup packet is Other. The application can initiate the data stage by using the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive\(\)](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend\(\)](#) functions. It can end the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function. The application will receive this event when the Control Transfer recipient field is set to Other.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter in the event handler will point to [USB_SETUP_PACKET](#) data type.

Likely Follow Up Event: [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT](#) if the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend\(\)](#) function was called to send data to the host. [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED](#) if the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive\(\)](#) function was called to receive data from the host.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT

Application Response: The data stage of a Control Read transfer has completed. This event occurs after the application has used the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend\(\)](#) function to send data in the control transfer. No application response is required.

Event Specific Data: The pData parameter will be NULL

Likely Follow Up Event: None.

Device Layer Control Transfers

Describes the operation of USB Device Layer control transfers.

Description

The Device Layer forwards control transfer setup packets to the application, where the Recipient field in the Setup packet is set to "Other". The pData parameter of the event handler will point to the control transfer setup packet. The application must respond

appropriately to this event. The following flow chart shows the possible sequences of events and application responses.

The Device Layer provides the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive\(\)](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend\(\)](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) functions to complete the control transfers. These functions should be called only in response to the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST](#) event. In response to this event, the application can use the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive\(\)](#) function to receive data in the data stage of a Control Write transfer. The reception of data is indicated by the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED](#) event. The application can then complete the Control Write transfer by either:

- accepting the received data and acknowledging the Status Stage of the Control transfer. This is done by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag.
- rejecting the received data and stalling the Status Stage of the Control transfer. This is done by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag.

The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend\(\)](#) function to send data in the data stage of a Control Read transfer. The transmission of data is indicated by the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT](#) event.

In a case where the Control Transfer does not contain a data stage or if the application does not support the Setup Request, the application can end the Control Transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function in response to the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST](#) event. Here the application can

- accepting the command by acknowledging the Status Stage of the Zero Data Stage of the Control transfer. This is done by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag.
- rejecting the Setup Request and stalling the Status Stage of the Control transfer. This is done by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag.

The application can also defer the response to Control transfer events. In that, the application does not have to respond to Control Transfer Events in the event handler. This may be needed in cases where resources required to respond to the Control Transfer Events are not readily available. The application, even while deferring the response, must however complete the Control Transfer in a time fashion. Failing to do so, will cause the host to cancel and retry the control transfer. This could also cause the USB device to malfunction and become non-compliant.

The following code shows an example of handling Device Layer events.

```
USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    uint8_t      activeConfiguration;
    uint16_t     frameNumber;
    USB_SPEED   attachSpeed;
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupEventData;

    // Handling of each event
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:

            // This means the device detected a valid VBUS voltage
            // and is attached to the USB if the device is bus powered.
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:

            // This means the device is not attached to the USB.
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:

            // The bus is idle. There was no activity detected.
            // The application can switch to a low power mode after
            // exiting the event handler.
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF:

            // A start of frame was received. This is a periodic
            // event and can be used the application for time
    }
}
```

```
// related activities. pData will point to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF type data
// containing the frame number.

frameNumber = ((USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF *) (pData)) -> frameNumber;
break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET :

    // Reset signalling was detected on the bus. The
    // application can find out the attach speed.

    attachedSpeed = USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet(usbDeviceHandle);
    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED :

    // This indicates that host has deconfigured the device i.e., it
    // has set the configuration as 0. All function driver instances
    // would have been deinitalized.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR :

    // This means an unknown error has occurred on the bus.
    // The application can try detaching and attaching the
    // device again.
    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED :

    // This means that device is configured and the application can
    // start using the device functionality. The application must
    // register function driver event handlers within this event.
    // The pData parameter will be a pointer to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED
data type
    // that contains the active configuration number.

    activeConfiguration = ((USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED
*) (pData)) -> configurationValue;
    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:

    // This means that the resume signalling was detected on the
    // bus. The application can bring the device out of power
    // saving mode.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST:

    // This means that the setup stage of the control transfer is in
    // progress and a setup packet has been received. The pData
    // parameter will point to a USB_SETUP_PACKET data type. The
    // application can process the command and update its control
    // transfer state machine. The application for example could call
    // the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function (as shown here) to
    // submit the buffer that would receive data in case of a
    // control read transfer.

    setupPacket = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *) pData;

    // Submit a buffer to receive 32 bytes in the control write transfer.
    USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, data, 32);
    break;
```

```

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA RECEIVED:

    // This means that data in the data stage of the control write
    // transfer has been received. The application can either accept
    // the received data by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus()
    // function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in
    // this example) or it can reject it by calling the
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function with
    // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag.

    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
    break;
```

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT:

```

    // This means that data in the data stage of the control
    // read transfer has been sent. The application would typically
    // end the control transfer by calling the
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function with
    // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example).

    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
    break;
```

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_ABORTED:

```

    // This means the host has aborted the control transfer. The
    // application can reset its control transfer state machine.

    break;
```

default:

```

    break;
}
```

return USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;

}

String Descriptor Table

Describes the Device Layer String Descriptor Table.

Description

The Device Layer allows the application to specify string descriptors via a String Descriptor Table. When the USB Host requests for a string by its index and language ID, the Device Layer looks for the corresponding string descriptor in the String Descriptor Table. There are two possible methods of specifying this String Descriptor Table, Basic and Advanced. These methods are discussed here.

Basic String Descriptor Table

The Basic String Descriptor Table should be used when the USB Device Application has equal number of string descriptors for each language string and the String Descriptor Indexes are continuous. This is the default method of specifying the String Descriptor Table. Each entry in the table contains the following information

- The size of the entry
- The descriptor type, which is always set to USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING
- The array containing the string

The first entry in the String Descriptor Table, at index 0 of the table, will always contain the Lang ID string. This string specifies the one language ID of the String Descriptor that this application intends to support. The subsequent entries in the String Descriptor Table contain the actual string descriptor. Each language must have an equal set of the string descriptors. The Device layer will associate each set of string descriptors with language ID specified in the language ID string descriptor. The following code shows an example of a Basic String Descriptor table.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of a Basic String Descriptor Table. In
 * this example, the table contains five entries. The first entry is the
 * language ID string. The second entry in the manufacturer string and the third
 * entry is the product string for language ID 0x0409. The fourth and the fifth
 * entry is the manufacture and product string, respectively for the language ID
 * 0x040C. */

/********************* Language ID string descriptor. Note that this contains two Language IDs. *****/
const struct
{
    uint8_t bLength;
    uint8_t bDscType;
    uint16_t string[1];
}
sd000 =
{
    sizeof(sd000),           // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,   // STRING descriptor type
    {0x0409, 0x040C}         // Language ID
};

/********************* Manufacturer string descriptor *****/
const struct
{
    uint8_t bLength;          // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    uint8_t bDscType;         // STRING descriptor type
    uint16_t string[25];     // String
}
sd001 =
{
    sizeof(sd001),
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,
    {'M','i','c','r','o','c','h','i','p',' ','
     'T','e','c','h','n','o','l','o','g','y',' ','I','n','c','.','.'}
};

/********************* Product string descriptor *****/
const struct
{
    uint8_t bLength;          // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    uint8_t bDscType;         // STRING descriptor type
    uint16_t string[22];     // String
}
sd002 =
{
    sizeof(sd002),
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,
    {'S','i','m','p','l','e',' ', 'C','D','C',' ', 'D','e','v','i','c','e',' ', 'D','e','m','o' }
};

/********************* Manufacturer string descriptor *****/
const struct
{
    uint8_t bLength;          // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    uint8_t bDscType;         // STRING descriptor type
    uint16_t string[25];     // String
}
sd003 =
```

```

sizeof(sd003),
USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,
{'M','i','c','r','o','c','h','i','p',' ',' ',
'T','e','c','h','n','o','l','o','g','y',' ',' ','I','n','c','.'}
};

/***********************
 * Product string descriptor
***********************/
const struct
{
    uint8_t bLength;           // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    uint8_t bDscType;          // STRING descriptor type
    uint16_t string[22];       // String
}
sd004 =
{
    sizeof(sd004),
USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,
{'S','i','m','p','l','e',' ','C','D','C',' ','D','e','v','i','c','e',' ','D','e','m','o' }
};

/***********************
 * Array of string descriptors
***********************/
USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE stringDescriptors[ 3 ]=
{
    /* This is the language ID string */
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd000,

    /* This string descriptor at index 1 will be returned when the host request
     * for a string descriptor with index 1 and language ID 0x0409. */
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd001,

    /* This string descriptor at index 2 will be returned when the host request
     * for a string descriptor with index 2 and language ID 0x0409. */
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd002,

    /* This string descriptor at index 3 will be returned when the host request
     * for a string descriptor with index 1 and language ID 0x040C. */
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd003,

    /* This string descriptor at index 4 will be returned when the host request
     * for a string descriptor with index 2 and language ID 0x040C. */
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd004
};

```

Advanced String Descriptor Table

The Advanced String Descriptor Table should be used when the application needs to specify string descriptors with string indexes that are not continuous. One such example is the Microsoft OS String Descriptor. The index of this string descriptor is 0xEE. If the application were to use the Basic String Descriptor Table , this would require the String Descriptor Table to have at least 0xED entries (valid or invalid) before the entry for the Microsoft OS String Descriptor. This arrangement may not be optimal. Using the Ad Advanced String Descriptor Table mitigates this problem. The Advanced String Descriptor Table format is enabled only when **USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE_ADVANCED_ENABLE** configuration option is specified in the system_config.h. Each entry in the Advanced String Descriptor Table contains the following information:

- The index of the string descriptor
- The language ID of the string descriptor
- The size of the entry, which is two more than the length of the string
- The descriptor type, which is always set to USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING
- The array containing the string

The first such entry in the Advanced String Descriptor Table specifies the language ID string. The string index and the language ID of this entry should be zero. This first entry is then followed by the actual string descriptors. Unlike the Basic String Descriptor Table, the position of the string descriptor in the Advanced String Descriptor Table does not define the String Descriptor Index that the host must to use to identify the string.Instead, the index of the string is specified by the stringIndex member of the Advanced

String Descriptor Table table entry. The following code shows an example of the Advanced String Descriptor table.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of an Advanced String Descriptor Table.
 * The Advanced String Descriptor table should be used when multiple languages
 * are needed to be supported. In this example, two languages are supported*/

*****  

* Language ID string descriptor. Note that stringIndex and
* language ID are always 0 for this descriptor.
*****/  

const struct __attribute__ ((packed))  

{  

    uint8_t stringIndex;      // Index of the string descriptor  

    uint16_t languageID ;   // Language ID of this string.  

    uint8_t bLength;         // Size of this descriptor in bytes  

    uint8_t bDscType;        // STRING descriptor type  

    uint16_t string[2];     // String  

}  

sd000 =  

{  

    0,                      // Index of this string is 0  

    0,                      // This field is always blank for String Index 0  

    sizeof(sd000)- 3,    // Should always be set to this.  

    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,  

    {0x0409, 0x040C}        // Language ID  

};  

*****  

* Manufacturer string descriptor for language 0x0409
*****/  

const struct __attribute__ ((packed))  

{  

    uint8_t stringIndex;      // Index of the string descriptor  

    uint16_t languageID ;   // Language ID of this string.  

    uint8_t bLength;         // Size of this descriptor in bytes  

    uint8_t bDscType;        // STRING descriptor type  

    uint16_t string[25];    // String  

}  

sd001 =  

{  

    1,          // Index of this string descriptor is 1.  

    0x0409,    // Language ID of this string descriptor is 0x0409 (English)  

    sizeof(sd001) - 3,  

    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,  

    {'M','i','c','r','o','s','o','f','t','\0'}  

};  

*****  

* Manufacturer string descriptor for language 0x040C
*****/  

const struct __attribute__ ((packed))  

{  

    uint8_t stringIndex;      // Index of the string descriptor  

    uint16_t languageID ;   // Language ID of this string.  

    uint8_t bLength;         // Size of this descriptor in bytes  

    uint8_t bDscType;        // STRING descriptor type  

    uint16_t string[25];    // String  

}  

sd002 =  

{  

    1,          // Index of this string descriptor is 1.  

    0x040C,    // Language ID of this string descriptor is 0x040C (French)  

    sizeof(sd001) - 3,  

    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,  

    {'M','i','c','r','o','s','o','f','t','\0'},  

}
```

```

    'T','e','c','h','n','o','l','o','g','y','I','n','c','.')
};

*****
* Product string descriptor for language 0x409
*****
const struct __attribute__ ((packed))
{
    uint8_t stringIndex;      // Index of the string descriptor
    uint16_t languageID ;    // Language ID of this string.
    uint8_t bLength;          // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    uint8_t bDscType;         // STRING descriptor type
    uint16_t string[22];     // String
}
sd003 =
{
    2,                      // Index of this string descriptor is 2.
    0x0409,                // Language ID of this string descriptor is 0x0409 (English)
    sizeof(sd002) - 3,
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,
    {'S','i','m','p','l','e',' ','C','D','C',' ','D','e','v','i','c','e',' ','D','e','m','o' }
};

*****
* Product string descriptor for language 0x40C
*****
const struct __attribute__ ((packed))
{
    uint8_t stringIndex;      // Index of the string descriptor
    uint16_t languageID ;    // Language ID of this string.
    uint8_t bLength;          // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    uint8_t bDscType;         // STRING descriptor type
    uint16_t string[22];     // String
}
sd004 =
{
    2,                      // Index of this string descriptor is 2.
    0x0409,                // Language ID of this string descriptor is 0x040C (French)
    sizeof(sd002) - 3,
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING,
    {'S','i','m','p','l','e',' ','C','D','C',' ','D','e','v','i','c','e',' ','D','e','m','o' }
};

*****
* Array of string descriptors. The entry order does not matter.
*****
USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTORS_TABLE stringDescriptors[5]=
{
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd000,
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd001,    // Manufacturer string for language 0x0409
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd002,    // Manufacturer string for language 0x040C
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd003,    // Product string for language 0x0409
    (const uint8_t *const)&sd004,    // Product string for language 0x040C
};

```

BOS Descriptor Support

Provides information on the BOS descriptor.

Description

The USB 3.0 and the USB 2.0 LPM specifications define a new descriptor called the Binary Device Object Store (BOS) descriptor. This descriptor contains information about the capability of the device. When the bcdUSB value in the Device Descriptor is greater than 0x0200, the USB Host Operating System may request for the BOS descriptor.

The MPLAB Harmony USB Device Library allows the application to support the BOS descriptor requests. This support is enabled

by adding the `USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE` configuration macro in `system_config.h`. The application must set the `bosDescriptor` member of the `USB_DEVICE_INIT` data structure (this data structure is passed in the `USB_DEVICE_Initialize` function) to point to the data to be returned in the data stage of the BOS descriptor request.

If the `USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE` configuration macro is not specified, the Device Layer will stall the Host request for the BOS descriptor.

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB Device Library.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_INSTANCES_NUMBER</code> | Number of Device Layer instances to provisioned in the application. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED</code> | Specifies the combined endpoint queue depth in case of a vendor USB device implementation. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_SET_DESCRIPTOR_EVENT_ENABLE</code> | Enables the Device Layer Set Descriptor Event. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE</code> | Enables the Device Layer SOF event. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_SYNCH_FRAME_EVENT_ENABLE</code> | Enables the Device Layer Synch Frame Event. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE</code> | Specifies if the Device Layer should process a Host request for a BOS descriptor. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_DRIVER_INITIALIZE_EXPLICIT</code> | Specifies if the USB Controller Driver must be initialized explicitly as opposed to being initialized by the Device Layer. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_EP0_BUFFER_SIZE</code> | Buffer Size in Bytes for Endpoint 0. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE_ADVANCED_ENABLE</code> | Specifying this macro enables the Advanced String Descriptor Table Entry Format. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID</code> | Constant that defines the value of an Invalid Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle. |
| | <code>_USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</code> | This is macro <code>_USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</code> . |

Description

The USB Device Layer initializes and configures the USB Controller Driver (the driver that manages the USB peripheral when operating as device) and maintains its task routine. For completeness, the following table lists the configuration macros that are needed by the USB Controller Driver. These macros should be defined in `system_config.h` file along with the Device Layer Configuration macros.

USB_DEVICE_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Number of Device Layer instances to provisioned in the application.

File

`usb_device_config_template.h`

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INSTANCES_NUMBER 1
```

Description

Number of Device Layer Instances.

This configuration macro defines the number of Device Layer instances in the application. In cases of microcontrollers that feature multiple USB peripherals, this allows the application to run multiple instances of the Device Layer. As an example, for a microcontroller containing two USB peripherals, setting `USB_DEVICE_INSTANCES_NUMBER` to 2 will cause 2 instances of the Device Layer to execute.

Remarks

Setting this value to more than the number of USB peripheral will result in unused RAM consumption.

`USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED` Macro

Specifies the combined endpoint queue depth in case of a vendor USB device implementation.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED 2
```

Description

USB Device Layer Combined Endpoint Queue Depth

This configuration constant specifies the combined endpoint queue depth in a case where the endpoint read and endpoint write functions are used to implement a vendor USB device. This constant should be used in conjunction with the `usb_device_endpoint_functions.c` file.

This macro defines the number of entries in all IN and OUT endpoint queues in all instances of the USB Device Layer. This value can be obtained by adding up the endpoint read and write queue sizes of each USB Device Layer instance . In a simple single instance USB Device Layer, that requires only one read and one write endpoint with one buffer each, the `USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED` macro can be set to 2. Consider a case with one Device Layer instance using 2 IN and 2 OUT endpoints, each requiring 2 buffers, this macro should be set to 8 (2 + 2 + 2 + 2).

Remarks

This constant needs to be specified only if a Vendor USB Device is to be implemented and the `usb_device_endpoint_functions.c` file is included in the project. This constant does not have any effect on queues of other standard function drivers that are included in the USB device implementation.

`USB_DEVICE_SET_DESCRIPTOR_EVENT_ENABLE` Macro

Enables the Device Layer Set Descriptor Event.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_SET_DESCRIPTOR_EVENT_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Device Layer Set Descriptor Event Enable

Specifying this configuration macro will cause the USB Device Layer to generate the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR` event when a Set Descriptor request is received. If this macro is not defined, the USB Device Layer will stall the Set Descriptor control transfer request.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE Macro

Enables the Device Layer SOF event.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Device Layer SOF Event Enable

Specifying this configuration macro will cause the USB Device Layer to generate the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF event. On Full Speed USB Devices, this event will be generated every 1 millisecond. On High Speed USB devices, this event will be generated every 125 microsecond.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_SYNCH_FRAME_EVENT_ENABLE Macro

Enables the Device Layer Synch Frame Event.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_SYNCH_FRAME_EVENT_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Device Layer Synch Frame Event Enable

Specifying this configuration macro will cause the USB Device Layer to generate the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SYNCH_FRAME event when a Synch Frame control transfer request is received. If this macro is not defined, the USB Device Layer will stall the control transfer request associated with this event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE Macro

Specifies if the Device Layer should process a Host request for a BOS descriptor.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Device Layer BOS Descriptor Support Enable

Specifying this configuration macro will enable support for BOS request. When the request is received, the device layer will transfer the data pointed to by the bosDescriptor member of the [USB_DEVICE_INIT](#) data structure. If this configuration macro is not specified, request for a BOS descriptor is stalled.

Remarks

The USB Host will request for a BOS descriptor when the bcdVersion field in the Device Descriptor is greater than 0x0200.

USB_DEVICE_DRIVER_INITIALIZE_EXPLICIT Macro

Specifies if the USB Controller Driver must be initialized explicitly as opposed to being initialized by the Device Layer.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_DRIVER_INITIALIZE_EXPLICIT
```

Description

USB Device Layer USB Controller Driver Explicit Initialize

Specifying this macro indicates that the USB Controller Driver will be initialized explicitly in the SYS_Initialize() function. The Device Layer will not initialize the USB Controller Driver. All releases of the USB Device Layer starting from v1.04 of MPALB Harmony will specify this macro i.e the controller driver will be initialized explicitly.

If this macro is not specified, then the USB Device Layer will initialize the controller driver and run its tasks routines.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_EP0_BUFFER_SIZE Macro

Buffer Size in Bytes for Endpoint 0.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_EP0_BUFFER_SIZE
```

Description

Endpoint 0 Buffer Size

This number defines the size (in bytes) of Endpoint 0. For High Speed USB Devices, this number should be 64. For Full Speed USB Devices, this number can be 8, 16, 32 or 64 bytes. This number will be applicable to all USB Device Stack instances.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE_ADVANCED_ENABLE Macro

Specifying this macro enables the Advanced String Descriptor Table Entry Format.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE_ADVANCED_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Device Advanced String Descriptor Table Entry Format Enable.

Specifyin this macro enables the Advanced String Descriptor Table Entry Format. The advanced format allows the application to specify the String Index and the language in the entry itself. In the basic format, this information is obtained by the virtue of the entry index of the String Descriptor in the String Descriptor Table. Using the Advanced format allows the application to specify strings with arbitrary strings indexes. In basic format, the string indexes are forced to be contiguous.

Remarks

The basic string descriptor entry format is selected by default. The advanced format must be enabled explicitly by specifying this macro.

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

Constant that defines the value of an Invalid Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Device Layer Invalid Endpoint Data Transfer Handle

This constant defines the value that is returned by the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead\(\)](#) and [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite\(\)](#) functions, as a transfer handle, when the function is not successful.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_`.

Building the Library

This section lists the files that are available in the USB Device Layer Library.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Device Layer API. |

Required File(s)



MHC

All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_device.c | This file implements the USB Device Layer interface and should be included in project if USB Device mode operation is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Device Layer Library depends on the following modules:

- USB Driver Library (Device mode files)

Library Interface

a) System Interaction Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Initialize | Creates and initializes an instance of the USB device layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize | De-initializes the specified instance of the USB device layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Status | Provides the current status of the USB device layer |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Tasks | USB Device layer calls all other function driver tasks in this function. It also generates and forwards events to its clients. |

b) Client Core Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Open | Opens the specified USB device layer instance and returns a handle to it. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Close | Closes an opened handle to an instance of the USB device layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_ClientStatusGet | Returns the client specific status. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet | USB Device Layer Event Handler Callback Function set function. |

c) Device Power State Management Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet | Sets power state of the device. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStatusGet | Gets the "Remote wake-up" status of the device. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended | Returns true if the device is in a suspended state. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStart | This function will start the resume signaling. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStartTimed | This function will start a self timed Remote Wake-up. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStop | This function will stop the resume signaling. |

d) Device Management Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_StateGet | Returns the current state of the USB device. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Attach | This function will attach the device to the USB. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_Detach | This function will detach the device from the USB. |

| | | |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet | Informs the client of the current USB device configuration set by the USB host. |
| | USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet | Informs the client of the current operation speed of the USB bus. |

e) Endpoint Management Functions

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled | This function returns the stall status of the specified endpoint and direction. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointStall | This function stalls an endpoint in the specified direction. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear | This function clears the stall on an endpoint in the specified direction. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable | Disables a device endpoint. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable | Enables a device endpoint. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled | Returns true if the endpoint is enabled. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead | Reads data received from host on the requested endpoint. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel | This function cancels a transfer scheduled on an endpoint. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite | This function requests a data write to a USB Device Endpoint. |

f) Control Transfer Functions

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive | Receives data stage of the control transfer from host to device. |
| | USB_DEVICE_ControlSend | Sends data stage of the control transfer from device to host. |
| | USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus | Initiates status stage of the control transfer. |

g) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT | USB Device Layer Events. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HANDLE | Data type for USB device handle. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS | USB Device Layer Control Transfer Status Stage flags. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT | Enumerated data type identifying results of a control transfer. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INIT | USB Device Initialization Structure |
| | USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE | Enumerated data type that identifies if the device is self powered or bus powered . |
| | USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS | Enumerated data type that identifies if the remote wakeup status of the device. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID | Constant that defines the value of an Invalid Device Handle. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0 | USB device layer index definitions. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1 . |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2 . |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3 . |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4 . |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5 . |
| | USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS | Enumerated data type that identifies the USB Device Layer Client Status. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE | Pointer to an array that contains pointer to configuration descriptors. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED | USB Device Set Configuration Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE | Device Layer Event Handler function return type. |

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE | USB Device Function Registration Structure |
| | USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR | USB Device Master Descriptor Structure. |
| | USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTORS_TABLE | Pointer to an array that contains pointer to string descriptors. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | Device Layer Event Handler Function Response Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF | USB Device Start Of Frame Event Data Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME | USB Device Synch Frame Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_RESULT | USB Device Layer Results Enumeration |
| | USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS | Enumerated data type that identifies the USB Device Layer Transfer Flags. |
| | USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE | Data type for USB Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MICROSOFT_OS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE | Specifies if the USB Device stack should support Microsoft OS Descriptor. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Device Layer Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) System Interaction Functions

USB_DEVICE_Initialize Function

Creates and initializes an instance of the USB device layer.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ USB_DEVICE_Initialize(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX instanceIndex, const
SYS_MODULE_INIT * const init);
```

Returns

If successful, returns a valid handle to a device layer object. Otherwise, it returns SYS_MODULE_OBJ_INVALID.

Description

This function initializes an instance of USB device layer, making it ready for clients to open and use it. The number of instances is limited by the value of macro USB_DEVICE_MAX_INSTANCES defined in system_config.h file.

Remarks

This routine must be called before any other USB Device Layer routine is called and after the initialization of USB Device Driver. This routine should only be called once during system initialization.

Preconditions

None.

Example

```

// This code example shows the initialization of the
// the USB Device Layer. Note how an endpoint table is
// created and assigned.

USB_DEVICE_INIT deviceLayerInit;
SYS_MODULE_OBJ usbDeviceObj;
uint8_t __attribute__((aligned(512))) endpointTable[USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_TABLE_SIZE];

// System module initialization
deviceLayerInit.moduleInit.value = SYS_MODULE_POWER_RUN_FULL;

// Identifies peripheral (PLIB-level) ID
deviceLayerInit.usbID = USB_ID_1;

// Boolean flag: true -> Stop USB module in Idle Mode
deviceLayerInit.stopInIdle = false;

// Boolean flag: true -> Suspend USB in Sleep Mode
deviceLayerInit.suspendInSleep = false;

// Interrupt Source for USB module
deviceLayerInit.interruptSource = INT_SOURCE_USB_1;

// Number of function drivers registered to this instance of the
// USB device layer
deviceLayerInit.registeredFuncCount = 1;

// Function driver table registered to this instance of the USB device layer
deviceLayerInit.registeredFunctions = funcRegistrationTable;

// Pointer to USB Descriptor structure
deviceLayerInit.usbMasterDescriptor = &usbMasterDescriptor;

// Pointer to an endpoint table.
deviceLayerInit.endpointTable = endpointTable;

// USB device initialization
usbDeviceObj = USB_DEVICE_Initialize(USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0, &deviceLayerInit);

if (SYS_MODULE_OBJ_INVALID == usbDeviceObj)
{
    // Handle error
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instanceIndex | In case of microcontrollers with multiple USB peripherals, user can create multiple instances of USB device layer. Parameter instanceIndex identifies this instance. |
| init | Pointer to a data structure containing any data necessary to initialize the USB device layer |

Function

```

SYS_MODULE_OBJ USB_DEVICE_Initialize
(
    const SYS_MODULE_INDEX instanceIndex,
    const SYS_MODULE_INIT * const init
)

```

USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize Function

De-initializes the specified instance of the USB device layer.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize(SYS_MODULE_OBJ usbDeviceObj);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function deinitializes the specified instance of the USB device layer, disabling its operation (and any hardware) and invalidates all of the internal data.

Remarks

Once the Initialize operation has been called, the deinitialize operation must be called before the Initialize operation can be called again.

Preconditions

Function [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#) must have been called before calling this routine and a valid SYS_MODULE_OBJ must have been returned.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the USB
// Device Layer can be deinitialized. It is assumed the
// USB Device Layer was already initialized.

SYS_MODULE_OBJ usbDeviceobj;

USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize(usbDeviceobj);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| object | USB device layer object handle, returned by USB_DEVICE_Initialize |

Function

`void USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize (SYS_MODULE_OBJ usbDeviceobj)`

USB_DEVICE_Status Function

Provides the current status of the USB device layer

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
SYS_STATUS USB_DEVICE_Status(SYS_MODULE_OBJ object);
```

Returns

SYS_STATUS_READY - Indicates that the device is busy with a previous system level operation and cannot start another
SYS_STATUS_UNINITIALIZED - Indicates that the device layer is in a deinitialized state

Description

This function provides the current status of the USB device layer.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#) function must have been called before calling this function.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the USB_DEVICE_Status function
// can be used to check if the USB Device Layer is ready
// for client operations.

SYS_MODULE_OBJ      object;      // Returned from DRV_USB_Initialize
SYS_STATUS          status;

status = USB_DEVICE_Status(object);

if (SYS_STATUS_READY != status)
{
    // Handle error
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| object | Driver object handle, returned from USB_DEVICE_Initialize |

Function

SYS_STATUS USB_DEVICE_Status (SYS_MODULE_OBJ object)

USB_DEVICE_Tasks Function

USB Device layer calls all other function driver tasks in this function. It also generates and forwards events to its clients.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_Tasks(SYS_MODULE_OBJ object);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function must be periodically called by the user application. The USB Device layer calls all other function driver tasks in this function. It also generates and forwards events to its clients.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Device layer must have been initialized by calling [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#).

Example

```
// The USB_DEVICE_Tasks() function should be placed in the
// SYS_Tasks() function of a MPLAB Harmony application.
```

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ usbDeviceLayerObj; // Returned by USB_DEVICE_Initialize().

void SYS_Tasks(void)
{
    USB_DEVICE_Tasks(usbDeviceLayerObj);
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| devLayerObj | Pointer to the Device Layer Object that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Initialize |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_Tasks( SYS_MODULE_OBJ devLayerObj )
```

b) Client Core Functions

USB_DEVICE_Open Function

Opens the specified USB device layer instance and returns a handle to it.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE USB_DEVICE_Open(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX instanceIndex, const DRV_IO_INTENT intent);
```

Returns

If successful, returns a valid device layer handle. Otherwise, it returns [USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Description

This function opens the USB device layer instance specified by instance index and returns a handle. This handle must be provided to all other client operations to identify the caller and the instance of the USB device layer. An instance of the Device Layer can be opened only once. Trying to open the Device Layer more than once will return a invalid device layer handle.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

This function must be called after USB device driver initialization and after the initialization of USB Device Layer.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the
// USB Device Layer can be opened.

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Before opening a handle, USB device must have been initialized
// by calling USB_DEVICE_Initialize().

usbDeviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,
                                  DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

if(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID == usbDeviceHandle)
{
    //Failed to open handle.
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instanceIndex | USB device layer instance index |
| intent | This parameter is ignored. The Device Layer will always open in read/write and exclusive mode. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE USB_DEVICE_Open
(
    const SYS_MODULE_INDEX instanceIndex,
    const DRV_IO_INTENT intent
)
```

USB_DEVICE_Close Function

Closes an opened handle to an instance of the USB device layer.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_Close(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None

Description

This function closes an opened handle to an instance of the USB device layer, invalidating the handle.

Remarks

After calling this routine, the handle passed in "usbDevHandle" must not be used with any of the remaining driver routines. A new handle must be obtained by calling [USB_DEVICE_Open\(\)](#) before the client may use the device layer again.

Preconditions

The [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#) function must have been called for the specified device layer instance. [USB_DEVICE_Open](#) must have been called to obtain a valid opened device handle.

Example

```
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Before opening a handle, USB device must have been initialized
// by calling USB_DEVICE_Initialize().
usbDeviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0 );

if(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID == usbDeviceHandle)
{
    //Failed to open handle.
}

//.....
//.....
// User's code
//.....
//.....
// Close handle
USB_DEVICE_Close( usbDevHandle );
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | A valid open-instance handle, returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_Close( USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

[USB_DEVICE_ClientStatusGet Function](#)

Returns the client specific status.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS USB\_DEVICE\_ClientStatusGet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

[USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS](#) type of client status.

Description

This function returns the status of the client (ready or closed). The application can use this function to query the present state of a client. Some of the USB Device Layer functions do not have any effect if the client handle is invalid. The [USB_DEVICE_ClientStatusGet](#) function in such cases can be used for debugging or trouble shooting.

Remarks

The application may ordinarily not find the need to use this function. It can be used for troubleshooting or debugging purposes.

Preconditions

The USB device layer must have been initialized and opened before calling this function.

Example

```
// This code example shows usage of the
// USB\_DEVICE\_ClientStatusGet function.

if(USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS_READY == USB\_DEVICE\_ClientStatusGet(usbDeviceHandle))
{
    // Client handle is valid.
    if(USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended(usbDeviceHandle))
    {
        // Device is suspended. Do something here.
    }
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Pointer to the device layer handle that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |

Function

```
USB\_DEVICE\_CLIENT\_STATUS USB\_DEVICE\_ClientStatusGet
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle
)
```

USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet Function

USB Device Layer Event Handler Callback Function set function.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, const
USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER callBackFunc, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This is the USB Device Layer Event Handler Callback Set function. A client can receive USB Device Layer event by using this function to register and event handler callback function. The client can additionally specify a specific context which will be returned with the event handler callback function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The device layer must have been initialized by calling [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#) and a valid handle to the instance must have been obtained by calling [USB_DEVICE_Open](#).

Example

```
// This code example shows how the application can set
// a Device Layer Event Handler.

// Application states
typedef enum
{
    //Application's state machine's initial state.
    APP_STATE_INIT=0,
    APP_STATE_SERVICE_TASKS,
    APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION,
} APP_STATES;

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;
APP_STATES appState;

// This is the application device layer event handler function.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPacket;
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:
            // This event is generated when VBUS is detected. Attach the device
            USB_DEVICE_Attach(usbDeviceHandle);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:
            // This event is generated when VBUS is removed. Detach the device
    }
}
```

```

        USB_DEVICE_Detach (usbDeviceHandle);
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:
        // This event indicates that Host has set Configuration in the Device.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST:
        // This event indicates a Control transfer setup stage has been completed.
        setupPacket = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)pData;

        // Parse the setup packet and respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(),
        // USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive or USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus().

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:
        // This event indicates that a Control transfer Data has been sent to Host.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED:
        // This event indicates that a Control transfer Data has been received from Host.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED:
        // This event indicates a control transfer was aborted.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF:
        // This event indicates an SOF is detected on the bus. The
        // USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE
        // macro should be defined to get this event.
        break;
    default:
        break;
    }
}

void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    // Check the application's current state.
    switch ( appState )
    {
        // Application's initial state.
        case APP_STATE_INIT:
            // Open the device layer
            usbDeviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,
                DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

            if(usbDeviceHandle != USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID)
            {
                // Register a callback with device layer to get event notification
                USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet(usbDeviceHandle,
                    APP_USBDeviceEventHandler, 0);
}

```

```

        appState = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION;
    }
    else
    {
        // The Device Layer is not ready to be opened. We should try
        // gain later.
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_SERVICE_TASKS:
    break;

    // The default state should never be executed.
default:
    break;
}
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Pointer to the device layer handle that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |
| callBackFunc | Pointer to the call back function. The device layer calls notifies the client about bus event by calling this function. |
| context | Client specific context |

Function

```

void USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER *callBackFunc,
    uintptr_t context
)

```

c) Device Power State Management Functions

USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet Function

Sets power state of the device.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

void USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE
powerState);

```

Returns

None.

Description

Application clients can use this function to set the power state of the device. A USB device can be bus powered or self powered. Based on hardware configuration, this power state may change while the device is on operation. The application can call this function to update the Device Layer on the present power status of the device.

Remarks

By default, the device is bus powered.

Preconditions

The device layer should have been initialized and opened.

Example

```
// The following code example shows how the application can
// change the power state of the device. In this case the application checks
// if a battery is charged and if so, the application set the device power
// state to self-powered.

if(APP_BATTERY_IS_CHARGED == APP_BatteryChargeStatusGet())
{
    // The application switches if power source.

    APP_PowerSourceSwitch(APP_POWER_SOURCE_BATTERY);
    USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_SELF_POWERED);
}
else
{
    // The battery is still not charged. The application uses the USB power.

    USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_BUS_POWERED);
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open() . |
| powerState | USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_BUS_POWERED/ USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_SELF_POWERED |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE powerState
)
```

[USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStatusGet Function](#)

Gets the "Remote wake-up" status of the device.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStatusGet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE
usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_ENABLED - Remote wakeup is enabled. USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_DISABLED - Remote wakeup is disabled.

Description

This function returns the present "Remote Wake-up" status of the device. If the device supports remote wake-up, the host may enable or disable this feature. The client can use this function to find out the status of this feature.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The device layer should have been initialized and opened.

Example

```
// This code example checks if the host has enabled the remote wake-up
// feature and then starts resume signaling. It is assumed
// that the device is in suspended mode.

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

if(USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStatusGet(usbDeviceHandle))
{
    // Start resume signaling.

    USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStart(usbDeviceHandle);
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open() . |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStatusGet
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle
)
```

USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended Function

Returns true if the device is in a suspended state.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
bool USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

Returns true if the device is suspended.

Description

This function returns true if the device is presently in suspended state. The application can use this function in conjunction with the [USB_DEVICE_StateGet](#) function to obtain the detailed state of the device (such as addressed and suspended, configured and suspended etc.). The Device Layer also provides the macro [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED](#) event to indicate entry into suspend state.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB Device Layer must have been initialized and opened before calling this function.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the application
// can find out if the device is in a configured but suspended state.

if(USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended(usbDeviceHandle))
```

```
{
    // Device is in a suspended state.

    if(USB_DEVICE_STATE_CONFIGURED == USB_DEVICE_StateGet(usbDeviceHandle))
    {
        // This means the device is in configured and suspended state.

    }
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Pointer to the Device Layer Handle that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |

Function

bool USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended([USB_DEVICE_HANDLE](#) usbDeviceHandle)

[USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupsStart Function](#)

This function will start the resume signaling.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupsStart(USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will start the resume signaling on the bus. The client calls this function after it has detected a idle bus (through the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED](#) event). The remote wake-up feature should have been enabled by the host, before the client can call this function. The client can use the [USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupsStatusGet](#) function to check if the host has enabled the remote wake-up feature.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid. The remote wake-up feature should have been enabled by the host.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the device can enable and disable
// Resume signaling on the bus. These function should only be called if the
// device support remote wakeup and the host has enabled this
// feature.

USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Start resume signaling.
USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupsStart(usbDeviceHandle);

// As per section 7.1.7.7 of the USB specification, device can
// drive resume signaling for at least 1 millisecond but no
// more than 15 milliseconds.

APP_DelayMilliseconds(10);

// Stop resume signaling.
```

```
USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStop(usbDeviceHandle);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Client's driver handle (returned from USB_DEVICE_Open) |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStart( USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStartTimed Function

This function will start a self timed Remote Wake-up.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStartTimed(USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will start a self timed Remote Wake-up sequence. The function will cause the device to generate resume signaling for 10 milliseconds. The resume signaling will stop after 10 milliseconds. The application can use this function instead of the [USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStart](#) and [USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStop](#) functions, which require the application to manually start, maintain duration and then stop the resume signaling.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid. The host should have enabled the Remote Wake-up feature for this device.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the device can use the
// USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStartTimed function to drive resume signaling
// on the bus for 10 milliseconds.

USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Check if host has enabled remote wake-up for the device.
if(USB\_DEVICE\_REMOTE\_WAKEUP\_ENABLED == USB\_DEVICE\_RemoteWakeupStatusGet(usbDeviceHandle))
{
    // Remote wake-up is enabled

    USB\_DEVICE\_RemoteWakeupStartTimed(usbDeviceHandle);
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Client's driver handle (returned from USB_DEVICE_Open) |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStartTimed( USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStop Function

This function will stop the resume signaling.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStop(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will stop the resume signaling. This function should be called after the client has called the [USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStart\(\)](#) function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid. The host should have enabled the Remote Wakeup feature for this device.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the device can enable and disable
// Resume signaling on the bus. These function should only be called if the
// device support remote wake-up and the host has enabled this
// feature.

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Start resume signaling.
USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStart(usbDeviceHandle);

// As per section 7.1.7.7 of the USB specification, device must
// drive resume signaling for at least 1 millisecond but no
// more than 15 milliseconds.

APP_DelayMilliseconds(10);

// Stop resume signaling.
USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStop(usbDeviceHandle);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Client's driver handle (returned from USB_DEVICE_Open) |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeupStop ( USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

d) Device Management Functions

USB_DEVICE_StateGet Function

Returns the current state of the USB device.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_STATE USB_DEVICE_StateGet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_STATE_DETACHED - Device is not in any of the known states

USB_DEVICE_STATE_ATTACHED - Device is attached to the USB, but is not powered

USB_DEVICE_STATE_POWERED - Device is attached to the USB and powered, but has not been reset

USB_DEVICE_STATE_DEFAULT - Device is attached to the USB and powered and has been reset, but has not been assigned a unique address

USB_DEVICE_STATE_ADDRESS - Device is attached to the USB, powered, has been reset, and a unique device address has been assigned

USB_DEVICE_STATE_CONFIGURED - Device is attached to the USB, powered, has been reset, has a unique address, is configured, and is not suspended

Description

This function returns the current state of the USB device, as described in Chapter 9 of the USB 2.0 Specification.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB device layer must have been initialized and opened before calling this function.

Example

```
USB_DEVICE_STATE usbDevState;

// Get USB Device State.
usbDevState = USB_DEVICE_StateGet( usbDeviceHandle );

switch(usbDevState)
{
    case USB_DEVICE_STATE_ATTACHED:
        // Add code here
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_STATE_POWERED:
        // Add code here
        break;

    default:
        break;
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Pointer to the device layer handle that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_STATE USB_DEVICE_StateGet( USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

USB_DEVICE_Attach Function

This function will attach the device to the USB.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_Attach(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will attach the device to the USB. It does this by enabling the pull up resistors on the D+ or D- lines. This function should be called after the USB device layer has generated the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED event.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid. The device layer should have been initialized and an device layer event handler function should have been assigned.

Example

```
// This code example shows the set
// of steps to follow before attaching the
// device on the bus. It is assumed that the
// device layer is already initialized.

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Get an handle to the USB device layer.
usbDeviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,
                                  DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

if(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID == usbDeviceHandle)
{
    // Failed to open handle.
    // Handle error.
}

// Register an event handler call back function with device layer
// so that we are ready to receive events when the device is
// attached to the bus.

USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet(usbDeviceHandle, APP_USBDeviceEventHandler, NULL);

// Now, connect device to USB
USB_DEVICE_Attach(usbDeviceHandle);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Client's USB device layer handle (returned from USB_DEVICE_Open) |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_Attach( USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

USB_DEVICE_Detach Function

This function will detach the device from the USB.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_Detach(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will detach the device from the USB. It does this by disabling the pull up resistors on the D+ or D- lines. This function should be called when the application wants to disconnect the device from the bus (typically to implement a soft detach or switch to host mode operation). It should be called when the Device Layer has generated the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED event.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The device layer should have been initialized and opened.

Example

```
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

// Detach the device from the USB
USB_DEVICE_Detach( usbDeviceHandle );
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Client's driver handle (returned from USB_DEVICE_Open) |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_Detach( USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle );
```

USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet Function

Informs the client of the current USB device configuration set by the USB host.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

Present active configuration.

Description

This function returns the current active USB device configuration.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB Device Layer must have been initialized and opened before calling this function.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the
// USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet function can be called to obtain
// the configuration that has been set by the host. Note that this
// information is also available in the macro USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED.

uint8_t currentConfiguration;
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

currentConfiguration = USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet(usbDeviceHandle);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Pointer to the Device Layer Handle that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet( USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle )
```

USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet Function

Informs the client of the current operation speed of the USB bus.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_SPEED USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

USB_SPEED_LOW - USB module is at low-speed
 USB_SPEED_FULL - USB module is at full-speed
 USB_SPEED_HIGH - USB module is at high-speed

Description

The USB device stack supports both high speed and full speed operations. This function returns the current operation speed of the USB bus. This function should be called after the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET event has occurred.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB device layer must have been initialized and a valid handle to USB device layer must have been opened.

Example

```
// This code example shows how the
// USB_DEVICE_GetDeviceSpeed function can be called to obtain
// the current device speed. This information is also
// available in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event.

if(USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet(usbDeviceHandle) == USB_SPEED_FULL)
{
    // This means the device attached at full speed.
}
```

```

else if(USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet(usbDeviceHandle) == USB_SPEED_HIGH)
{
    // This means the device attached at high speed.
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | Pointer to device layer handle that is returned from USB_DEVICE_Open |

Function

`USB_SPEED USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle)`

e) Endpoint Management Functions

`USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled` Function

This function returns the stall status of the specified endpoint and direction.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
bool USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint);
```

Returns

Returns true if endpoint is stalled, false otherwise.

Description

This function returns the stall status of the specified endpoint and direction.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state.

Example

```

// This code example shows of how the
// USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled function can be used to obtain the
// stall status of the endpoint 1 and IN direction.

USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS ep;

ep = 0x1 | USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN;

if(true == USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled (handle, ep))
{
    // Endpoint stall is enabled. Clear the stall.

    USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear(handle, ep);

}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open |
| endpoint | Specifies the endpoint and direction |

Function

```
bool USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB\_ENDPOINT\_ADDRESS endpoint
)
```

[USB_DEVICE_EndpointStall Function](#)

This function stalls an endpoint in the specified direction.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB\_DEVICE\_EndpointStall(USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, USB\_ENDPOINT\_ADDRESS endpoint);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function stalls an endpoint in the specified direction.

Remarks

The application may typically, not find the need to stall an endpoint. Stalling an endpoint erroneously could potentially make the device non-compliant.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid.

Example

```
// This code example shows how to stall an endpoint. In
// this case, endpoint 1 IN direction is stalled.
```

```
USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS ep;
ep = 0x1 | USB\_EP\_DIRECTION\_IN;
USB\_DEVICE\_EndpointStall(usbDeviceHandle, ep);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open |
| endpoint | Specifies the endpoint and direction |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_EndpointStall
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB\_ENDPOINT\_ADDRESS endpoint
```

)

USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear Function

This function clears the stall on an endpoint in the specified direction.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
void USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function clear the stall on an endpoint in the specified direction.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid.

Example

```
// This code example shows how to clear a stall on an
// endpoint. In this case, the stall on endpoint 1 IN direction is
// cleared.

USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS ep;

ep = USB_ENDPOINT_AND_DIRECTION(USB_DATA_DIRECTION_DEVICE_TO_HOST, 1);

USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear(usbDeviceHandle, ep);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open() . |
| endpoint | Specifies the endpoint and direction. |

Function

```
void USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint
)
```

USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable Function

Disables a device endpoint.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK - The endpoint was enabled successfully.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function disables a device endpoint. The application may need to disable the endpoint when it wants to change the endpoint characteristics. This could happen when the device features interfaces with multiple alternate settings. If such cases, the host may request the device to switch to specific alternate setting by sending the Set Interface request. The device application must then disable the endpoint (if it was enabled) before re-enabling it with the new settings. The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled](#) function to check the status of the endpoint and [USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable](#) function to enable the endpoint.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The device should have been configured.

Example

```
// The following code example checks if an Set Alternate request has
// been received and changes the endpoint characteristics based on the
// alternate setting. Endpoint is 1 and direction is device to host.
// Assume that endpoint size was 32 bytes in alternate setting 0.

if(setAlternateRequest)
{
    if(alternateSetting == 1)
    {
        // Check if the endpoint is already enabled.
        if(USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN)))
        {
            // Disable the endpoint.
            USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN));
        }

        // Re-enable the endpoint with new settings
        USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN)
                                  USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_BULK, 64);
    }
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB Device Layer Handle. |
| endpoint | Endpoint to disable. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint,
);
```

USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable Function

Enables a device endpoint.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, uint8_t
interface, USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint, USB_TRANSFER_TYPE transferType, size_t size);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK - The endpoint was enabled successfully.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function enables a device endpoint for the specified transfer type and size. A Vendor specific device application may typically call this function in response to a Set Interface request from the host. Note that Device Layer will enable endpoints contained in Alternate Setting 0 of an interface, when the host configures the device. If there is only one alternate setting in an interface, the application may not need to call the USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable function.

If the device supports multiple alternate settings in an Interface, the device application must then disable an endpoint (if it was enabled) before re-enabling it with the new settings. The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled](#) function to check the status of the endpoint and [USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable](#) function to disable the endpoint.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The device should have been configured.

Example

```
// The following code example checks if an Set Alternate request has
// been received and changes the endpoint characteristics based on the
// alternate setting. Endpoint is 1 and direction is device to host.
// Assume that endpoint size was 32 bytes in alternate setting 0.

if(setAlternateRequest)
{
    if(alternateSetting == 1)
    {
        // Check if the endpoint is already enabled.
        if(USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN)))
        {
            // Disable the endpoint.
            USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN));
        }

        // Re-enable the endpoint with new settings
        USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable(usbDeviceHandle, 0, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN)
                                  USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_BULK, 64);
    }
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB Device Layer Handle. |
| interface | This parameter is ignored in the PIC32 USB Device Stack implementation. |

| | |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| endpoint | Endpoint to enable. |
| transferType | Type of transfer that this endpoint will support. This should match the type reported to the host |
| size | Maximum endpoint size. This should match the value reported to the host. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    uint8_t interface,
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint,
    USB_TRANSFER_TYPE transferType
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled Function

Returns true if the endpoint is enabled.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
bool USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle, USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint);
```

Returns

true - The endpoint is enabled.

false - The endpoint is not enabled or the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system and is invalid.

Description

This function returns true if the endpoint is enabled. The application can use this function when handling Set Interface requests in case of Vendor or Custom USB devices.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The device should have been configured.

Example

```
// The following code example checks if an Set Alternate request has
// been received and changes the endpoint characteristics based on the
// alternate setting. Endpoint is 1 and direction is device to host.
// Assume that endpoint size was 32 bytes in alternate setting 0.

if(setAlternateRequest)
{
    if(alternateSetting == 1)
    {
        // Check if the endpoint is already enabled.
        if(USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN)))
        {
            // Disable the endpoint.
            USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN));
        }
    }
}
```

```

    // Re-enable the endpoint with new settings
    USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable(usbDeviceHandle, (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN)
        USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_BULK, 64);
}
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB Device Layer Handle. |
| endpoint | Endpoint to disable. |

Function

```

bool USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint,
);

```

USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead Function

Reads data received from host on the requested endpoint.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint, void * buffer,
    size_t bufferSize);

```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK - The read request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
 USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.
 USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID - The specified transfer size was not a multiple of endpoint size or is 0.
 USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_NOT_CONFIGURED - The specified endpoint is not configured yet and is not ready for data transfers.
 USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a endpoint data read from the USB Device Layer. The function places a requests with driver, the request will get serviced as data is made available by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE event. The amount of data read and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in the pData parameter of the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

If the size parameter is not a multiple of maxPacketSize or is 0, the function returns

[USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#) in transferHandle and returns an error code as a return value. If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the host sends less than maxPacketSize data in any transaction, the transfer completes and the function driver will issue a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE event along with the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) data structure. If the size parameter is a multiple of

maxPacketSize and the host sends maxPacketSize amount of data, and total data received does not exceed size, then the function driver will wait for the next packet.

Remarks

While the using the device layer with PIC32MZ USB module, the receive buffer provided to the USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16))) attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The device should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// driver was opened successfully. Note how the endpoint
// is specified. The most significant bit is cleared while
// the lower nibble specifies the endpoint (which is 1).

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_RESULT readRequestResult;
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;
USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint = 0x01;

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead(usbDeviceHandle,
                                            &transferHandle, endpoint, data, 128);

if(USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB Device Layer Handle. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the read request was successful. |
| endpoint | Endpoint from which the data should be read. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer where read data will be stored. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint,
    void * buffer,
    size_t bufferSize
);
```

USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel Function

This function cancels a transfer scheduled on an endpoint.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,  
USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint, USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK - The transfer will be canceled completely or partially.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR - The transfer could not be canceled because it has either completed, the transfer handle is invalid or the last transaction is in progress.

Description

This function cancels a transfer scheduled on an endpoint using the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead](#) and [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite](#) functions. If a transfer is still in the queue and its processing has not started, the transfer is canceled completely. A transfer that is in progress may or may not get canceled depending on the transaction that is presently in progress. If the last transaction of the transfer is in progress, the transfer will not be canceled. If it is not the last transaction in progress, the in progress transfer will be allowed to complete. Pending transactions will be canceled. The first transaction of an in progress transfer cannot be canceled.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state.

Example

```
// The following code example cancels a transfer on endpoint 1, IN direction.  
  
USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;  
USB_DEVICE_RESULT result;  
  
result = USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel(usbDeviceHandle,  
                                         (0x1|USB_EP_DIRECTION_IN), transferHandle);  
  
if(USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK == result)  
{  
    // The transfer cancellation was either completely or  
    // partially successful.  
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB Device Layer Handle. |
| endpoint | Endpoint of which the transfer needs to be canceled. |
| handle | Transfer handle of the transfer to be canceled. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel  
(  
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,  
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint,  
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle  
)
```

USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite Function

This function requests a data write to a USB Device Endpoint.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,  
USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint, const void * data,  
size_t size, USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS flags);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK - The write request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - Internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_INVALID - Endpoint is not provisioned in the system.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID - The combination of the transfer size and the specified flag is invalid.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_NOT_CONFIGURED - Endpoint is not enabled because device is not configured.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID - Device Layer handle is not valid.

Description

This function requests a data write to the USB Device Endpoint. The function places a requests with Device layer, the request will get serviced as and when the data is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE event. The amount of data written and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in length member of the pData parameter in the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE exits. If the write request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

The behavior of the write request depends on the flags and size parameter. If the application intends to send more data in a request, then it should use the USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING flag. If there is no more data to be sent in the request, the application must use the USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE flag. This is explained in more detail here:

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE, the write function will append a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to complete the transfer.

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING, the write function will not append a ZLP and hence will not complete the transfer.

- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is

set as USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE, the write function complete the transfer without appending a ZLP.

- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is

set as USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING, the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

- If size is less than maxPacketSize and flag is set as

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE, the write function schedules one packet.

- If size is less than maxPacketSize and flag is set as `USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING`, the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to `USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`.

Remarks

While the using the device layer with PIC32MZ USB module, the transmit buffer provided to the `USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite` should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state.

Example

```
// Below is a set of examples showing various conditions trying to
// send data with the Write command.
//
// This assumes that Device Layer was opened successfully.
// Assume maxPacketSize is 64.

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_RESULT writeRequestHandle;
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

//-----
// In this example we want to send 34 bytes only.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite(usbDeviceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 34,
                                              USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// In this example we want to send 64 bytes only.
// This will cause a ZLP to be sent.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite(usbDeviceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 64,
                                              USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// This example will return an error because size is less
// than maxPacketSize and the flag indicates that more
// data is pending.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite(usbDeviceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 32,
                                              USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 byte transfer.
// The 70 bytes will be sent out in a 64 byte transaction and a 6 byte
// transaction completing the transfer.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite(usbDeviceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 70,
```

```

        USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// This example would result in an error because the transfer size is
// not an exact multiple of the endpoint size and the
// USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING flag indicate that the
// transfer should continue.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite(usbDeviceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 70,
                                              USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

if(USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE event.

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | Handle to the device layer. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the write request was successful. |
| endpoint | Endpoint to which the data should be written. Note that is a combination of direction and the endpoint number. Refer to the description of USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS for more details. |
| data | Pointer to the data buffer that contains the data to written. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |
| flags | Flags that indicate whether the transfer should continue or end. Refer to the description for more details. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_RESULT USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint,
    const void * data,
    size_t size,
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS flag
);

```

f) Control Transfer Functions

USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive Function

Receives data stage of the control transfer from host to device.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    void * data, size_t length);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_FAILED - If control transfer failed due to host aborting the previous control transfer.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request was submitted successfully.

Description

This function allows the application to specify the data buffer that would be needed to receive the data stage of a control write transfer. It should be called when the application receives the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST event and has identified this setup request as the setup stage of a control write transfer. The function can be called in the Application Control Transfer Event handler or can be called after the application has returned from the control transfer event handler.

Calling this function after returning from the event handler defers the response to the event. This allows the application to prepare the data buffer out of the event handler context, especially if the data buffer to receive the data is not readily available. Note however, that there are timing considerations when responding to the control transfer. Exceeding the response time will cause the host to cancel the control transfer and may cause USB host to reject the device.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid.

Example

```
// The following code example shows an example of how the
// USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function is called in response to the
// USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST event to enable a control
// write transfer.

void APP_USBDeviceControlTransferEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    uint8_t * setupPkt;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST:

            setupPkt = (uint8_t *)pData;

            // Submit a buffer to receive 32 bytes in the control write transfer.
            USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, data, 32);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_RECEIVED:

            // This means that data in the data stage of the control
            // write transfer has been received. The application can either
            // accept the received data by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example)
```

```

// or it can reject it by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus()
// function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag.

USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
break;

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT:

    // This means that data in the data stage of the control
    // read transfer has been sent. The application would typically
    // end the control transfer by calling the
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
    // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example).

USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
break;

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_ABORTED:

    // This means the host has aborted the control transfer. The
    // application can reset its control transfer state machine.
break;
}

}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open |
| data | Pointer to buffer that holds data |
| length | Size in bytes |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    void * data,
    size_t length
)

```

USB_DEVICE_ControlSend Function

Sends data stage of the control transfer from device to host.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
void * data, size_t length);

```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_FAILED - If control transfer failed due to host aborting the previous control transfer.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request was submitted successfully.

Description

This function allows the application to specify the data that would be sent to host in the data stage of a control read transfer. It should be called when the application has received the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST

event and has identified this setup request as the setup stage of a control read transfer. The Device Layer will generate a `USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT` event when the data stage has completed. The function can be called in the Application Control Transfer Event handler or can be called after the application has returned from the control transfer event handler.

Calling this function after returning from the event handler defers the response to the event. This allows the application to prepare the data buffer out of the event handler context, especially if the data buffer to receive the data is not readily available. Note however, that there are timing considerations when responding to the control transfer. Exceeding the response time will cause the host to cancel the control transfer and may cause USB host to reject the device.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid.

Example

```
// The following code example shows an example of how the
// USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function is called in response to the
// USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST event to enable a control
// read transfer.

void APP_USBDeviceEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPkt;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST:

            setupPkt = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)pData;

            // Submit a buffer to send 32 bytes in the control read transfer.
            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, data, 32);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_RECEIVED:

            // This means that data in the data stage of the control
            // write transfer has been received. The application can either
            // accept the received data by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example)
            // or it can reject it by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus
            // function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT:

            // This means that data in the data stage of the control
            // read transfer has been sent. The application would typically
            // end the control transfer by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example).

            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_ABORTED:
```

```

    // This means the host has aborted the control transfer. The
    // application can reset its control transfer state machine.
    break;
}

}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open |
| data | Pointer to buffer that holds data |
| length | Size in bytes |

Function

```

USB\_DEVICE\_CONTROL\_TRANSFER\_RESULT USB_DEVICE_ControlSend
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    void * data,
    size_t length
)

```

[USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus Function](#)

Initiates status stage of the control transfer.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

USB\_DEVICE\_CONTROL\_TRANSFER\_RESULT USB\_DEVICE\_ControlStatus(USB\_DEVICE\_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
USB\_DEVICE\_CONTROL\_STATUS status);

```

Returns

[USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_FAILED](#) - If control transfer failed due to host aborting the previous control transfer.

[USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The request was submitted successfully.

Description

This function allows the application to complete the status stage of the of an on-going control transfer. The application must call this function when the data stage of the control transfer is complete or when a Setup Request has been received (in case of a zero data stage control transfer). The application can either accept the data stage/setup command or reject it. Calling this function with status set to [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) will acknowledge the status stage of the control transfer. The control transfer can be stalled by setting the status parameter to [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#).

The function can be called in the Application Control Transfer event handler or can be called after returning from this event handler. Calling this function after returning from the control transfer event handler defers the response to the event. This allows the application to analyze the event response outside the event handler. Note however, that there are timing considerations when responding to the control transfer. Exceeding the response time will cause the host to cancel the control transfer and may cause USB host to reject the device.

The application must be aware of events and associated control transfers that do or do not require data stages. Incorrect usage of the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function could cause the device function to be non-compliant.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

Client handle should be valid. This function should only be called to complete an on-going control transfer.

Example

```
// The following code example shows an example of how the
// USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function is called in response to the
// USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_RECEIVED and
// USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT event to complete the control
// transfer. Here, the application code acknowledges the status stage of the
// control transfer.

void APP_USBDeviceControlTransferEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * data,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPkt;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_SETUP_REQUEST:

            setupPkt = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)pData;

            // Submit a buffer to receive 32 bytes in the control write transfer.
            USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, data, 32);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_RECEIVED:

            // This means that data in the data stage of the control
            // write transfer has been received. The application can either
            // accept the received data by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example)
            // or it can reject it by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus
            // function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT:

            // This means that data in the data stage of the control
            // read transfer has been sent. The application would typically
            // end the control transfer by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in this example).

            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_ABORTED:

            // This means the host has aborted the control transfer. The
            // application can reset its control transfer state machine.
            break;
    }
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usbDeviceHandle | USB device handle returned by USB_DEVICE_Open |
| status | USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK to acknowledge the status stage. USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR to stall the status stage. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus
(
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS status
)
```

g) Data Types and Constants

USB_DEVICE_EVENT Enumeration

USB Device Layer Events.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP REQUEST,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA SENT,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR,
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SYNCH_FRAME
} USB_DEVICE_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET | USB bus reset occurred. This event is an indication to the application client that device layer has deinitialized all function drivers. The application should not use the function drivers in this state. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED | This event is an indication to the application client that device is suspended and it can put the device to sleep mode if required. Power saving routines should not be called in the event handler. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED | This event indicates that device has resumed from suspended state. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR | This event is an indication to the application client that an error occurred on the USB bus. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF | This event is generated at every start of frame detected on the bus. Application client can use this SOF event for general time based house keeping activities. The pData parameter in the event handler function will point to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOFTWARE type that contains the frame number. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED | This event is an indication to the application client that device layer has initialized all function drivers and application can set the event handlers for the function drivers. The pData parameter will point to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED data type that contains configuration set by the host. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED | The host has deconfigured the device. This happens when the host sends a Set Configuration request with configuration number 0. The device layer will deinitialize all function drivers and then generate this event. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED | An on-going control transfer was aborted. The application can use this event to reset its control transfer state machine. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | The data stage of a Control write transfer has completed. This event occurs after the application has used the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to receive data in the control transfer. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST | A setup packet of a control transfer has been received. The recipient field of the received setup packet is Other. The application can initiate the data stage using the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive and USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function. It can end the control transfer by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. The pData parameter in the event handler will point to USB_SETUP_PACKET data type. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | The data stage of a Control read transfer has completed. This event occurs after the application has used the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to send data in the control transfer. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a endpoint read transfer scheduled using the USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead function has completed. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be a pointer to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE data type. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a endpoint write transfer scheduled using the USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite function has completed. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be a pointer to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE data type. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR | A SET_DESCRIPTOR request is received. This event occurs when Host sends a SET_DESCRIPTOR request. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be a pointer to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR data type. The application should initiate the data stage using the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function. In the USB Device Stack, this event is generated if USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENABLE_SET_DESCRIPTOR is defined in the system configuration. |
| USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SYNCH_FRAME | A SYNCH_FRAME request is received. This event occurs when Host sends a SYNCH_FRAME request. The pData parameter in the event handler function will be a pointer to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME data type. The application should initiate the data stage using the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function. In the USB Device Stack, this event is generated if USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENABLE_SYNCH_FRAME is defined in the system configuration. |

Description

USB Device Layer Events.

This enumeration lists the possible events that the device layer can generate. The client should register an event handler of the type [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER](#) to receive device layer events. The contents of pData in the event handler depends on the generated event. Refer to the description of the event for details on data provided along with that event. The events generated are device layer instance specific.

The client will receive control transfers for handling from the device layer, where the recipient field of the Control Transfer Setup packet is set to Other. The client can use the control transfer events and the Device Layer control transfer functions to complete such control transfers.

It is not mandatory for the client application to handle the control transfer event within the event handler. Indeed, it may be possible that the data stage of the control transfer requires extended processing. Because the event handler executes in an interrupt context, it is recommended to keep the processing in the event handler to a minimum. The client application can call the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) functions after returning from the event handler, thus deferring the control transfer event handling and responses.

Note that a USB host will typically wait for control transfer response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the transfer and associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such timeouts have to be avoided.

The client must use the [USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet](#) function to register the event handler call back function. The following code example shows the handling of the USB Device Layer Events.

```
USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    uint8_t      activeConfiguration;
    uint16_t     frameNumber;
    USB_SPEED   attachSpeed;
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupEventData;

    // Handling of each event
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:

            // This means the device detected a valid VBUS voltage and is
            // attached to the USB. The application can now call
            // USB_DEVICE_Attach() function to enable D+/D- pull up
            // resistors.
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:
    }
}
```

```
// This means the device is not attached to the USB.  
// The application should now call the USB_DEVICE_Detach()  
// function.  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:  
  
    // The bus is idle. There was no activity detected.  
    // The application can switch to a low power mode after  
    // exiting the event handler.  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF:  
  
    // A start of frame was received. This is a periodic event and  
    // can be used by the application for timing related activities.  
    // pData will point to a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF type data  
    // containing the frame number. In USB Device Stack, this  
    // event is generated if USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE is  
    // defined in System Configuration.  
  
    frameNumber = ((USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF *)pData)->frameNumber;  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET :  
  
    // Reset signaling was detected on the bus. The  
    // application can find out the attach speed.  
  
    attachedSpeed = USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet(usbDeviceHandle);  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED :  
  
    // This indicates that host has deconfigured the device i.e., it  
    // has set the configuration as 0. All function driver instances  
    // would have been deinitialized.  
  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR :  
  
    // This means an unknown error has occurred on the bus.  
    // The application can try detaching and attaching the  
    // device again.  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED :  
  
    // This means that device is configured and the application can  
    // start using the device functionality. The application must  
    // register function driver event handlersI have one device  
    // level event. The pData parameter will be a pointer to a  
    // USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED data type that contains the  
    // active configuration number.  
  
    activeConfiguration = ((USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED  
*)pData)->configurationValue;  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:  
  
    // This means that the resume signaling was detected on the  
    // bus. The application can bring the device out of power  
    // saving mode.
```

```
break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST:

    // This means that the setup stage of the control transfer is in
    // progress and a setup packet has been received. The pData
    // parameter will point to a USB_SETUP_PACKET data type. The
    // application can process the command and update its control
    // transfer state machine. The application for example could call
    // the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function (as shown here) to
    // submit the buffer that would receive data in case of a
    // control read transfer.

    setupPacket = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)pData;

    // Submit a buffer to receive 32 bytes in the control write transfer.
    USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, data, 32);
    break;

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_RECEIVED:

    // This means that data in the data stage of the control write
    // transfer has been received. The application can either accept
    // the received data by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus
    // function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag (as shown in
    // this example) or it can reject it by calling the
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with
    // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag.

    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
    break;

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_DATA_SENT:

    // This means that data in the data stage of the control
    // read transfer has been sent.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_EVENT_ABORTED:

    // This means the host has aborted the control transfer. The
    // application can reset its control transfer state machine.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE:

    // This means schedule endpoint read operation has completed.
    // The application should interpret pData as a pointer to
    // a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE type.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

    // This means schedule endpoint write operation has completed.
    // The application should interpret pData as a pointer to
    // a USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE type.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR:

    // This means the Host has sent a Set Descriptor request. The
    // application should interpret pData as a
    // USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR pointer type containing the
```

```

// details of the Set Descriptor request. In USB Device
// Stack, this event is generated if
// USB_DEVICE_SET_DESCRIPTOR_EVENT_ENABLE is defined in the
// system configuration. The application can use
// USB_DEVICE_ControlSend, USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive and/or
// the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus functions to complete the
// control transfer.

break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SYNCH_FRAME:

    // This means the host has sent a Sync Frame Request. The
    // application should interpret pData as a
    // USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME pointer type. In USB Device
    // Stack, this event is generated if
    // USB_DEVICE_SYNCH_FRAME_EVENT_ENABLE is defined in the
    // system configuration. The application should respond by
    // sending the 2 byte frame number using the
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function.

    USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, &frameNumber, 2);
    break;

default:
    break;
}

return USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}

```

Remarks

Generation of some events required the definition of configuration macros. Refer to the event specific description for more details.

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE Type

Data type for USB device handle.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_HANDLE;
```

Description

Data type for USB device handle.

The data type of the handle that is returned from [USB_DEVICE_Open](#) function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS Enumeration

USB Device Layer Control Transfer Status Stage flags.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
```

```

    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK | Using this flag acknowledges the Control transfer. A Zero Length Packet will be transmitted in the status stage of the control transfer. |
| USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR | Using this flag stalls the control transfer. This flags should be used if the control transfer request needs to be declined. |

Description

Control Transfer Status Stage Flags

This enumeration defines the flags to be used with the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT Enumeration

Enumerated data type identifying results of a control transfer.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_FAILED,
    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_SUCCESS
} USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_FAILED | Control transfer failed. This could be because the control transfer handle is no more valid since the control transfer was aborted by host by sending a new setup packet |
| USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT_SUCCESS | Control transfer was successful |

Description

USB Device Layer Control Transfer Result Enumeration

These enumerated values are the possible return values for control transfer operations. These values are returned by the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) and the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_INIT Structure

USB Device Initialization Structure

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

typedef struct {
    SYS_MODULE_INIT moduleInit;

```

```

unsigned int usbID;
bool stopInIdle;
bool suspendInSleep;
INT_SOURCE interruptSource;
INT_SOURCE interruptSourceUSBDma;
void * endpointTable;
uint16_t registeredFuncCount;
USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE * registeredFunctions;
USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR * usbMasterDescriptor;
USB_SPEED deviceSpeed;
uint16_t queueSizeEndpointRead;
uint16_t queueSizeEndpointWrite;
SYS_MODULE_INDEX driverIndex;
void * usbDriverInterface;
} USB_DEVICE_INIT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SYS_MODULE_INIT moduleInit; | System module initialization |
| unsigned int usbID; | Identifies peripheral (PLIB-level) ID. The use of this parameter is <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>deprecated</u>. |
| bool stopInIdle; | If true, USB module will stop when CPU enters Idle Mode. The use of this <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • parameter is <u>deprecated</u>. |
| bool suspendInSleep; | If true, USB module will suspend when the microcontroller enters sleep <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mode. The use of this parameter is <u>deprecated</u>. |
| INT_SOURCE interruptSource; | Interrupt Source for USB module. The use of this parameter is <u>deprecated</u> . |
| INT_SOURCE interruptSourceUSBDma; | Interrupt Source for USB DMA module. The use of this parameter is <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>deprecated</u>. |
| void * endpointTable; | Pointer to an byte array whose size is USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_TABLE_SIZE and who start address is aligned at a 512 bytes address boundary. The <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>use of this parameter is deprecated</u>. |
| uint16_t registeredFuncCount; | Number of function drivers registered to this instance of the USB device layer |
| USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE * registeredFunctions; | Function driver table registered to this instance of the USB device layer |
| USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR * usbMasterDescriptor; | Pointer to USB Descriptor structure |
| USB_SPEED deviceSpeed; | Specify the speed at which this device will attempt to connect to the host. PIC32MX and PIC32WK devices support Full Speed only. PIC32MZ devices support Full Speed and High Speed. Selecting High Speed will allow the device to work at both Full Speed and High Speed. |
| uint16_t queueSizeEndpointRead; | Enter Endpoint Read queue size. Application can place this many Endpoint Read requests in the queue. Each Endpoint Read queue element would consume 36 Bytes of RAM. Value of this field should be at least 1. This is applicable only for applications using Endpoint Read/Write functions like USB Vendor Device. |
| uint16_t queueSizeEndpointWrite; | Enter Endpoint Write queue size. Application can place this many Endpoint Write requests in the queue. Each Endpoint Write queue element would consume 36 Bytes of RAM. Value of this field should be at least 1. This is applicable only for applications using Endpoint Read/Write functions like USB Vendor Device. |
| SYS_MODULE_INDEX driverIndex; | System Module Index of the driver that this device layer should open |
| void * usbDriverInterface; | Interface to the USB Driver that this Device Layer should use |

Description

USB Device Initialization Structure

This data type defines the USB Device Initialization data structure. A data structure of this type should be initialized and provided to [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#).

Remarks

This type is specific to implementation of the USB Device Stack API.

USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE Enumeration

Enumerated data type that identifies if the device is self powered or bus powered .

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_BUS_POWERED,
    USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_SELF_POWERED
} USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_BUS_POWERED | Device is bus powered |
| USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE_SELF_POWERED | Device is self powered |

Description

Device Power state

This enumeration defines the possible power states of the device. The application specifies this state to the device layer (through the [USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet](#) function) to let the device layer know if this USB Device is presently bus or self powered.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS Enumeration

Enumerated data type that identifies if the remote wakeup status of the device.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_DISABLED,
    USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_ENABLED
} USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_DISABLED | Remote wakeup is disabled |
| USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_ENABLED | Remote wakeup is enabled |

Description

Remote Wakeup Status

This enumeration defines the possible status of the remote wake up capability. These values are returned by the [USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStatusGet](#) function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

Constant that defines the value of an Invalid Device Handle.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Device Layer Invalid Handle

This constant is returned by the [USB_DEVICE_Open\(\)](#) function when the function fails.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0 Macro

USB device layer index definitions.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0 0
```

Description

USB Device Layer Index Numbers

These constants provide USB device layer index definitions.

Remarks

These constants should be used in place of hard-coded numeric literals. These values should be passed into the [USB_DEVICE_Initialize](#) and [USB_DEVICE_Open](#) routines to identify the device layer instance in use.

USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1 Macro

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1 1
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1.

USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2 Macro

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2 2
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2.

USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3 Macro**File**

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3 3
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3.

USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4 Macro**File**

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4 4
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4.

USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5 Macro**File**

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5 5
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5.

USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS Enumeration

Enumerated data type that identifies the USB Device Layer Client Status.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS_CLOSED,
    USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS_READY
} USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS_CLOSED | Client is closed or the specified handle is invalid |
| USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS_READY | Client is ready |

Description

USB Device Layer Client Status

This enumeration defines the possible status of the USB Device Layer Client. It is returned by the [USB_DEVICE_ClientStatusGet](#) function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE Type

Pointer to an array that contains pointer to configuration descriptors.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef const uint8_t * const USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE;
```

Description

Configuration descriptors pointer

This type defines a pointer to an array that contains pointers to configuration descriptors. This data type is used in [USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR](#) data type to point to the table of configuration descriptors.

Remarks

This type is specific to implementation of the USB Device Stack API.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED Structure

USB Device Set Configuration Event Data type.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t configurationValue;
} USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| uint8_t configurationValue; | The configuration that was set |

Description

USB Device Set Configuration Event Data type.

This data type defines the type of data that is returned by the Device Layer along with the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED](#) event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Device Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE (* USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_DEVICE_EVENT event, void *  
eventData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Device Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Device Layer Event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a Device Layer Event handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the Device Layer. The Device Layer will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be type cast to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE Type

Device Layer Event Handler function return type.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef void USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Description

Device Layer Event Handler function return type.

This data type defines the return type of the Device Layer event handler function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE Structure

USB Device Function Registration Structure

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {  
    USB_SPEED speed;  
    uint8_t configurationValue;
```

```

    uint8_t interfaceNumber;
    uint8_t numberOfInterfaces;
    uintptr_t funcDriverIndex;
    void * funcDriverInit;
    void * driver;
} USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_SPEED speed; | Type of speed (high, full or low speed) |
| uint8_t configurationValue; | Configuration Value to which the function driver has to be tied |
| uint8_t interfaceNumber; | Interface number to which this function driver has to be tied |
| uint8_t numberOfInterfaces; | Number of interfaces used by the function |
| uintptr_t funcDriverIndex; | Function driver instance index |
| void * funcDriverInit; | Pointer to a structure that contains function driver initialization data |
| void * driver; | Pointer to a standard structure that exposes function driver APIs to USB device layer |

Description

USB Device Function Registration Structure

This data type defines the USB Device Function Registration Structure. A table containing entries for each function driver instance should be registered with device layer.

Remarks

This type is specific to implementation of the USB Device Stack API.

USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR Structure

USB Device Master Descriptor Structure.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```

typedef struct {
    const USB_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR * deviceDescriptor;
    uint8_t configDescriptorCount;
    USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE * configDescriptorTable;
    const USB_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR * highSpeedDeviceDescriptor;
    uint8_t highspeedConfigDescriptorCount;
    USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE * highSpeedConfigDescriptorTable;
    uint8_t stringDescCount;
    USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE * stringDescriptorTable;
    const USB_DEVICE_QUALIFIER * fullSpeedDeviceQualifier;
    const USB_DEVICE_QUALIFIER * highSpeedDeviceQualifier;
    const uint8_t * bosDescriptor;
} USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| const USB_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR * deviceDescriptor; | Pointer to standard device descriptor (for low/full speed) |
| uint8_t configDescriptorCount; | Total number configurations available (for low/full speed) |
| USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE * configDescriptorTable; | Pointer to array of configurations descriptor pointers (for low/full speed) |
| const USB_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR * highSpeedDeviceDescriptor; | Pointer to array of high speed standard Device descriptor. Assign this to NULL if not supported. |

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>uint8_t highSpeedConfigDescriptorCount;</code> | Total number of high speed configurations available. Set this to zero if not supported |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE * highSpeedConfigDescriptorTable;</code> | Pointer to array of high speed configurations descriptor pointers. Set this to NULL if not supported |
| <code>uint8_t stringDescCount;</code> | Total number of string descriptors available (common to all speeds) |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE * stringDescriptorTable;</code> | Pointer to array of string Descriptor pointers (common to all speeds) |
| <code>const USB_DEVICE_QUALIFIER * fullSpeedDeviceQualifier;</code> | Pointer to full speed device_qualifier descriptor. Device responds with this descriptor when it is operating at high speed |
| <code>const USB_DEVICE_QUALIFIER * highSpeedDeviceQualifier;</code> | Pointer to high speed device_qualifier descriptor. Device responds with this descriptor when it is operating at full speed |
| <code>const uint8_t * bosDescriptor;</code> | Pointer to BOS descriptor for this Device. Device responds with this descriptor when Host sends a GET_DESCRIPTOR request for BOS descriptor |

Description

USB Device Master Descriptor Structure.

This data type defines the structure of the USB Device Master Descriptor. The application must provide such a structure for each instance of the device layer.

Remarks

This type is specific to implementation of the USB Device Stack API.

USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE Type

Pointer to an array that contains pointer to string descriptors.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef const uint8_t * const USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE;
```

Description

String Descriptors Pointer

This type defines a pointer to an array that contains pointers to string descriptors. This data type is used in [USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR](#) data type to point to the table of string descriptors.

Remarks

This type is specific to implementation of the USB Device Stack API.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE Macro

Device Layer Event Handler Function Response Type.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

Device Layer Event Handler Function Response Type None.

This is the definition of the Device Layer Event Handler Response Type None.

Remarks

Intentionally defined to be empty.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer Handle |
| size_t length; | Size of transferred data |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type.

This data type defines the type of data that is returned by the Device Layer along with the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE` and `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE` events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer Handle |
| size_t length; | Size of transferred data |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type.

This data type defines the type of data that is returned by the Device Layer along with the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE and USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF Structure

USB Device Start Of Frame Event Data Type

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint16_t frameNumber;
} USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| uint16_t frameNumber; | The Start Of Frame number |

Description

USB Device Start Of Frame Event Data Type

This data type defines the type of data that is returned by the Device Layer along with the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME Structure

USB Device Synch Frame Event Data type.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint;
} USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_ENDPOINT_ADDRESS endpoint; | Endpoint for which the Synch Frame number is requested |

Description

USB Device Synch Frame Event Data type.

This data type defines the type of data that is returned by the Device Layer along with the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SYNCH_FRAME event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_RESULT Enumeration

USB Device Layer Results Enumeration

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_NOT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST,
    USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL | Queue is full |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_OK | No Error |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_NOT_CONFIGURED | Endpoint not configured |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_INVALID | Endpoint not provisioned in the system |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID | One or more parameter/s of the function is invalid |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID | Device Handle passed to the function is invalid |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED | Transfer terminated because host halted the endpoint |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST | Transfer terminated by host because of a stall clear |
| USB_DEVICE_RESULT_ERROR | An unspecified error has occurred |

Description

USB Device Result Enumeration

This enumeration lists the possible USB Device Endpoint operation results. These values are returned by USB Device Endpoint functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS Enumeration

Enumerated data type that identifies the USB Device Layer Transfer Flags.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING
} USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE | This flag indicates there is no further data to be sent in this transfer and that the transfer should end. If the size of the transfer is a multiple of the maximum packet size for related endpoint configuration, the device layer will send a zero length packet to indicate end of the transfer to the host. |
| USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING | This flag indicates there is more data to be sent in this transfer. If the size of the transfer is a multiple of the maximum packet size for the related endpoint configuration, the device layer will not send a zero length packet. This flags should not be specified if the size of the transfer is is not a multiple of the maximum packet size or if the transfer is less than maximum packet size. |

Description

USB Device Layer Transfer Flags

This enumeration defines the possible USB Device Layer Transfer Flags. These flags are specified in [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite\(\)](#) function to specify the handling of the transfer. Please refer to the description of the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite](#) function for examples.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

Data type for USB Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle.

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

Data type for USB Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle.

The data type of the handle that is returned by the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead\(\)](#) and [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite\(\)](#) functions.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_H Macro

File

[usb_device.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_H
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_H.

USB_DEVICE_MICROSOFT_OS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE Macro

Specifies if the USB Device stack should support Microsoft OS Descriptor.

File

[usb_device_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_MICROSOFT_OS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Device Layer Microsoft OS Descriptor Support Enable

This macro needs to be defined to enable Microsoft OS descriptor support. If this macro is defined all Vendor Interface requests are forwarded to client unconditionally and Device layer does not validate the recipient interface field in a Control transfer.

Device and Class Control Requests are not affected by this configuration. The Device Layer will validate the recipient interface in Device and Class Control Requests, irrespective of this configuration constant, and will stall these requests if the interface is provisioned in the Function Driver Registration Table.

If this macro is not defined, then USB Device Layer will validate the interface number in a Vendor Interface request and stall the request if Interface number is not available in the Function registration table.

Remarks

None.

Files**Files**

| Name | Description |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device.h | USB Device Layer Interface Header |
| usb_device_config_template.h | USB device configuration template header file. |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_device.h

USB Device Layer Interface Header

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS | Enumerated data type that identifies the USB Device Layer Client Status. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS | USB Device Layer Control Transfer Status Stage flags. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT | Enumerated data type identifying results of a control transfer. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT | USB Device Layer Events. |
| | USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE | Enumerated data type that identifies if the device is self powered or bus powered . |
| | USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS | Enumerated data type that identifies if the remote wakeup status of the device. |
| | USB_DEVICE_RESULT | USB Device Layer Results Enumeration |
| | USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS | Enumerated data type that identifies the USB Device Layer Transfer Flags. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet | Informs the client of the current USB device configuration set by the USB host. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet | Informs the client of the current operation speed of the USB bus. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Attach | This function will attach the device to the USB. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_ClientStatusGet | Returns the client specific status. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Close | Closes an opened handle to an instance of the USB device layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive | Receives data stage of the control transfer from host to device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_ControlSend | Sends data stage of the control transfer from device to host. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus | Initiates status stage of the control transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize | De-initializes the specified instance of the USB device layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Detach | This function will detach the device from the USB. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable | Disables a device endpoint. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable | Enables a device endpoint. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled | Returns true if the endpoint is enabled. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled | This function returns the stall status of the specified endpoint and direction. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead | Reads data received from host on the requested endpoint. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointStall | This function stalls an endpoint in the specified direction. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear | This function clears the stall on an endpoint in the specified direction. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel | This function cancels a transfer scheduled on an endpoint. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite | This function requests a data write to a USB Device Endpoint. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet | USB Device Layer Event Handler Callback Function set function. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Initialize | Creates and initializes an instance of the USB device layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended | Returns true if the device is in a suspended state. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Open | Opens the specified USB device layer instance and returns a handle to it. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet | Sets power state of the device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStart | This function will start the resume signaling. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStartTimed | This function will start a self timed Remote Wake-up. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStatusGet | Gets the "Remote wake-up" status of the device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStop | This function will stop the resume signaling. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_StateGet | Returns the current state of the USB device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Status | Provides the current status of the USB device layer |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_Tasks | USB Device layer calls all other function driver tasks in this function. It also generates and forwards events to its clients. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | Device Layer Event Handler Function Response Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID | Constant that defines the value of an Invalid Device Handle. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0 | USB device layer index definitions. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5. |
| | USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | Constant that defines the value of an Invalid Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED | USB Device Set Configuration Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Layer Endpoint Read and Write Complete Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF | USB Device Start Of Frame Event Data Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME | USB Device Synch Frame Event Data type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE | USB Device Function Registration Structure |
| | USB_DEVICE_INIT | USB Device Initialization Structure |
| | USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR | USB Device Master Descriptor Structure. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE | Pointer to an array that contains pointer to configuration descriptors. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE | Device Layer Event Handler function return type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HANDLE | Data type for USB device handle. |
| | USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE | Pointer to an array that contains pointer to string descriptors. |
| | USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE | Data type for USB Device Endpoint Data Transfer Handle. |

Description

USB Device Layer Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface to the USB device layer. This application should include this file if it needs to use the USB Device Layer API.

File Name

usb_device.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_device_config_template.h

USB device configuration template header file.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE | Specifies if the Device Layer should process a Host request for a BOS descriptor. |
| | USB_DEVICE_DRIVER_INITIALIZE_EXPLICIT | Specifies if the USB Controller Driver must be initialized explicitly as opposed to being initialized by the Device Layer. |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED | Specifies the combined endpoint queue depth in case of a vendor USB device implementation. |
| | USB_DEVICE_EP0_BUFFER_SIZE | Buffer Size in Bytes for Endpoint 0. |
| | USB_DEVICE_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Number of Device Layer instances to provisioned in the application. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MICROSOFT_OS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE | Specifies if the USB Device stack should support Microsoft OS Descriptor. |
| | USB_DEVICE_SET_DESCRIPTOR_EVENT_ENABLE | Enables the Device Layer Set Descriptor Event. |
| | USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE | Enables the Device Layer SOF event. |
| | USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE_ADVANCED_ENABLE | Specifying this macro enables the Advanced String Descriptor Table Entry Format. |
| | USB_DEVICE_SYNCH_FRAME_EVENT_ENABLE | Enables the Device Layer Synch Frame Event. |

Description

USB Device Layer Compile Time Options

This file contains USB device layer compile time options (macros) that are to be configured by the user. This file is a template file and must be used as an example only. This file must not be directly included in the project.

File Name

usb_device_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Audio 1.0 Device Library

This section describes the USB Audio 1.0 Device Library.

Introduction

This section provides information on library design, configuration, usage and the library interface for the USB Audio 1.0 Device Library.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Audio 1.0 Device Library (also referred to as the Audio 1.0 Function Driver or library) features routines to implement a USB Audio 1.0 Device. Examples of Audio USB Devices include USB Speakers, microphones, and voice telephony. The library provides a convenient abstraction of the USB Audio 1.0 Device specification and simplifies the implementation of USB Audio 1.0 Devices.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the Audio 1.0 Function Driver and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB Audio 1.0 Device Library.

Description

The Audio 1.0 Function Driver offers various services to the USB Audio 1.0 device to communicate with the host by abstracting

USB specification details. It must be used along with the USB Device layer and USB controller to communicate with the USB host. Figure 1 shows a block diagram of the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack Architecture and where the Audio 1.0 Function Driver is placed.

Figure 1: USB Device 1.0 Audio Device Driver

The USB controller driver takes the responsibility of managing the USB peripheral on the device. The USB 1.0 Device Layer handles the device enumeration, etc. The USB Device 1.0 Layer forwards all Audio-specific control transfers to the Audio 1.0 Function Driver. The Audio 1.0 Function Driver interprets the control transfers and requests application's intervention through event handlers and a well-defined set of functions. The application must respond to the Audio events either in or out of the event handler. Some of these events are related to Audio 1.0 Device Class specific control transfers. The application must complete these control transfers within the timing constraints defined by USB.

Library Overview

The USB Audio 1.0 Device Library mainly interacts with the system, its clients and function drivers, as shown in the [Abstraction Model](#).

The library interface routines are divided into sub-sections, which address one of the blocks or the overall operation of the USB Audio 1.0 Device Library.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Functions | Provides event handler, read/write, and transfer cancellation functions. |

How the Library Works

Initializing the Library

Describes how the USB Audio 1.0 Device driver is initialized.

Description

The Audio 1.0 Function Driver instance for a USB device configuration is initialized by the Device Layer when the configuration is set by the host. This process does not require application intervention. Each instance of the Audio 1.0 Function Driver should be registered with the Device layer through the Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table. The Audio 1.0 Function Driver requires a initialization data structure to be specified. This is a [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT](#) data type that specifies the size of the read and write queues. The funcDriverInit member of the function driver registration table entry of the Audio 1.0 Function Driver instance should point to this initialization data structure. The [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER](#) object is a global object provided by the Audio 1.0 Function Driver and provides the Device Layer with an entry point into the Audio 1.0 Function Driver.

The following code shows an example of how the Audio 1.0 Function Driver can be registered with the Device Layer.

```
/* This code shows an example of how an Audio 1.0 Function Driver instances
 * can be registered with the Device Layer via the Device Layer Function Driver
 * Registration Table. In this case Device Configuration 1 consists of one
 * Audio 1.0 Function Driver instance. */

/* The Audio 1.0 Function Driver requires an initialization data structure that
 * specifies the read and write buffer queue sizes. Note that these settings are
 * also affected by the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED configuration
 * macro. */

const USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT audioDeviceInit =
{
    .queueSizeRead = 1,
    .queueSizeWrite = 1
};

const USB_DEVICE_FUNC_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
```

```

{
    .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL,                                // Supported speed
    .configurationValue = 1,                               // To be initialized for Configuration 1
    .interfaceNumber = 0,                                 // Starting interface number.
    .numberOfInterfaces = 2,                             // Number of interfaces in this instance
    .funcDriverIndex = 0,                                // Function Driver instance index is 0
    .funcDriverInit = &audioDeviceInit,                  // Function Driver does not need
initialization data structure
    .driver = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER // Pointer to Function Driver - Device
Layer interface functions
},
};

}

```

The following figure illustrates the typical sequence that is followed in the application when using the Audio 1.0 Function Driver.

Typical USB Audio 1.0 Device Sequence

1. Call set of APIs to initialize USB Device Layer (refer to the [USB Device Layer Library](#) section for details about these APIs).
2. The Device Layer provides a callback to the application for any USB Device events like attached, powered, configured, etc. The application should receive a callback with an event `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED` to proceed.
3. Once the Device Layer is configured, the application needs to register a callback function with the Audio 1.0 Function Driver to receive Audio Control transfers, and also other Audio 1.0 Function Driver events. Now the application can use Audio 1.0 Function Driver APIs to communicate with the USB Host.

Event Handling

Describes Audio 1.0 Function Driver event handler registration and event handling.

Description

Registering a Audio 1.0 Function Driver Callback Function

While creating a USB Audio 1.0 Device application, an event handler must be registered with the Device Layer (the Device Layer Event Handler) and every Audio 1.0 Function Driver instance (Audio 1.0 Function Driver Event Handler). The application needs to register the event handler with the Audio 1.0 Function Driver:

- For receiving Audio Control Requests from Host like Volume Control, Mute Control, etc.
- For handling other events from USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver (e.g., Data Write Complete or Data Read Complete)

The event handler should be registered before the USB device layer acknowledges the SET CONFIGURATION request from the USB Host. To ensure this, the callback function should be set in the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED` event that is generated by the device layer. The following code example shows how this can be done.

```

/* This a sample Application Device Layer Event Handler
 * Note how the USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver callback function
 * USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet()
 * is registered in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event. */

```

```

void APP_USBDeviceEventHandler( USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
                                void * pEventData, uintptr_t context )
{
    switch ( event )
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED:

            // USB device is reset or device is deconfigured.
            // This means that USB device layer is about to deinitialize
            // all function drivers.

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:

            /* check the configuration */
            if ( ((USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED *) 
                  (eventData))->configurationValue == 1)

```

```

    {

        USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet
        (
            USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX_0,
            APP_USBDeviceAudioEventHandler ,
            (uintptr_t)NULL);

        /* mark that set configuration is complete */
        appData.isConfigured = true;

    }
break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:
/* VBUS has been detected */
    USB_DEVICE_Attach(appData.usbDeviceHandle);
break;
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:
/*VBUS is not available anymore. */
    USB_DEVICE_Detach(appData.usbDeviceHandle);
break;
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:
default:
    break;
}
}

```

Event Handling

The Audio 1.0 Function Driver provides events to the application through the event handler function registered by the application. These events indicate:

- Completion of a read or a write data transfer
- Audio Control Interface requests
- Completion of data and the status stages of Audio Control Interface related control transfer

The Audio Control Interface Request events and the related control transfer events typically require the application to respond with the Device Layer Control Transfer routines to complete the control transfer. Based on the generated event, the application may be required to:

- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) function, which completes the data stage of a Control Read Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function, which provisions the data stage of a Control Write Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function, which completes the handshake stage of the Control Transfer. The application can either STALL or Acknowledge the handshake stage through the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function.

The following table shows the CDC Function Driver Control Transfer related events and the required application control transfer actions.

| Audio 1.0 Function Driver Control Transfer Event | Required Application Action |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MIN USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MAX USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_RES USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MEM | Identify the control type using the associated event data. If a data stage is expected, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to receive expected data. If a data stage is not required or if the request is not supported, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to Acknowledge or Stall the request. |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_CUR USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MIN USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MAX USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MEM | Identify the control type using the associated event data. Use the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to send the expected data. If the request is not supported, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to Stall the request. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_STAT | Identify the entity type using the associated event data. Use the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to send the expected data. If the request is not supported, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to Stall the request. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | Action not required. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN | Interpret the setup packet and use the Device layer Control transfer functions to complete the transfer. |

The application must analyze the wIndex field of the event data (received with the control transfer event) to identify the entity that is being addressed. The application must be aware of all entities included in the application and their IDs. Once identified, the application can then type cast the event data to entity type the specific control request type. For example, if the Host sends a control request to set the volume of the Audio device, the following occurs in this order:

1. The Audio 1.0 Function Driver will generate a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR event.
2. The application must type cast the event data to a [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR](#) type and check the entityId field.
3. The entityId field will be identified by the application as a Feature Unit.
4. The application must now type cast the event data type as a USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST data type and check the controlSelector field.
5. If the controlSelector field is a USB_AUDIO_VOLUME_CONTROL, the application can then call the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_ControlReceive](#) function to receive the new volume settings.

Based on the type of event, the application should analyze the event data parameter of the event handler. This data member should be type cast to an event specific data type. The following table shows the event and the data type to use while type casting. Note that the event data member is not required for all events

| Audio 1.0 Function Driver Event | Related Event Data Type |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MIN | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MAX | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_RES | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MEM | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_CUR | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MIN | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MAX | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MEM | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM * |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_STAT | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN | USB_SETUP_PACKET * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED * |

Handling Audio Control Requests:

When the Audio 1.0 Function Driver receives an Audio Class Specific Control Transfer Request, it passes this control transfer to the application as a Audio 1.0 Function Driver event. The following code example shows how to handle an Audio Control request.

```
// This code example shows handling Audio Control requests. The following code
// handles a Mute request (both SET and GET) received from a USB Host.
```

```
void APP_USBDeviceAudioEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX iAudio ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT event ,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED *interfaceInfo;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE *readEventData;
    uint8_t entityID;
    uint8_t controlSelector;
    if ( iAudio == 0 )
    {
        switch (event)
        {
            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED:

                /* We have received a request from USB host to change the
                 * Interface-Alternate setting. The application should be aware
                 * of the association between alternate settings and the device
                 * features to be enabled. */

                interfaceInfo = (USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED *)pData;
                appData.activeInterfaceAlternateSetting =
interfaceInfo->interfaceAlternateSetting;
                appData.state = APP_USB_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTING_RCVD;
                break;

            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
                /* We have received an audio frame from the Host.
                 * Now send this audio frame to Audio Codec for Playback. */
                break;

            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
                break;

            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR:

                /* This is an example of handling Audio control request. In this
                 * case the control request is targeted to the Mute Control in
                 * a feature unit entity. This event indicates that the current
                 * value needs to be set. */
        }
    }
}
```

```

entityID = ((USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST*)pData)->entityID;
if (entityID == APP_ID_FEATURE_UNIT)
{
    controlSelector =
((USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST*)pData)->controlSelector;
    if (controlSelector == USB_AUDIO_MUTE_CONTROL)
    {
        /* It is confirmed that this request is targeted to the
         * mute control. We schedule a control transfer receive
         * to get data from the host. */

        USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(appData.usbDevHandle, (void *)
&(appData.dacMute), 1 );
        appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_AUDIO_MUTE_CONTROL;
    }
}
break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_CUR:

/* This event occurs when the host is requesting a current
 * status of control */

entityID = ((USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST*)pData)->entityID;
if (entityID == APP_ID_FEATURE_UNIT)
{
    controlSelector =
((USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST*)pData)->controlSelector;
    if (controlSelector == USB_AUDIO_MUTE_CONTROL)
    {
        /* Use the control send function to send the status of
         * the control to the host */
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(appData.usbDevHandle, (void
*)&(appData.dacMute), 1 );
    }
}
break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MIN:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MIN:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MAX:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MAX:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_RES:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_MEM:

/* In this example, all of these control requests are not
 * supported. So these are stalled. */
USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus (appData.usbDevHandle,
USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);
break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:

/* This event occurs when data has been received in a control
 * transfer */

USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(appData.usbDevHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK );
if (appData.currentAudioControl == APP_USB_AUDIO_MUTE_CONTROL)
{
    appData.state = APP_MUTE_AUDIO_PLAYBACK;
    appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_CONTROL_NONE;
}
break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:
```

```
        break;  
    default:  
        break;  
    }  
}
```

Transferring Data

Describes how to send/receive data to/from USB Host using this USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver.

Description

The USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver provides functions to send and receive data.

Receiving Data

The `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read` function schedules a data read. When the host transfers data to the device, the Audio 1.0 Function Driver receives the data and invokes the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE` event. This event indicates that audio data is now available in the application specified buffer.

The Audio 1.0 Function Driver supports buffer queuing. The application can schedule multiple read requests. Each request is assigned a unique buffer handle, which is returned with the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE` event. The application can use the buffer handle to track completion to queued requests. Using this feature allows the application to implement audio buffering schemes such as ping-pong buffering.

Sending Data

The `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write` schedules a data write. When the host sends a request for the data, the Audio 1.0 Function Driver transfers the data and invokes the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event.

The Audio 1.0 Function Driver supports buffer queuing. The application can schedule multiple write requests. Each request is assigned a unique buffer handle, which is returned with the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event. The application can use the buffer handle to track completion to queued requests. Using this feature allows the application to implement audio buffering schemes such as ping-pong buffering.

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver.

Macros

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Audio Function Driver instances. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING | Specifies the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES | Specifies the maximum number of Audio Streaming interfaces in an Audio Function Driver instance. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED | Specifies the combined queue size of all Audio function driver instances. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_ABORT_NOTIFY | USB Audio Transfer abort notification enable |
| _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ -: |

Description

The application designer must specify the following configuration parameters while using the USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the `system_config.h` file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Audio Function Driver instances.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB device Audio Maximum Number of instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the Audio Function Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two instances of the Audio Function Driver (to create two composite Audio Device) on one USB Device, the macro should be set to 2. Note that implementing a USB Device that features multiple Audio interfaces requires appropriate USB configuration descriptors.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING Macro

Specifies the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING
```

Description

Maximum number of Alternate Settings

This macro defines the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface. If the Audio Device features multiple streaming interfaces, this configuration constant should be equal to the the maximum number of alternate required amongst the streaming interfaces.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES Macro

Specifies the maximum number of Audio Streaming interfaces in an Audio Function Driver instance.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES
```

Description

Maximum Audio Streaming Interfaces

This macro defines the maximum number of streaming interfaces in an Audio Function Driver instance. In case of multiple Audio Function Driver instances, this constant should be equal to the maximum number of interfaces amongst the Audio Function Driver instances.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED Macro

Specifies the combined queue size of all Audio function driver instances.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED
```

Description

USB device Audio Combined Queue Size

This macro defines the number of entries in all queues in all instances of the Audio function driver. This value can be obtained by adding up the read and write queue sizes of each Audio Function driver instance. In a simple single instance USB Audio device application, that does not require buffer queuing, the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro can be set to 2. Consider a case of a Audio function driver instances, with has a read queue size of 2 and write queue size of 3, this macro should be set to 5 (2 + 3).

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_ABORT_NOTIFY Macro

USB Audio Transfer abort notification enable

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_ABORT_NOTIFY
```

Description

USB Audio Transfer abort notification

This macro enabled USB Audio Transfer abort notifications. Whenever a scheduled transfer request is aborted due to Device Unplug or Host resets the device, the transfer complete event with status as aborted would be send to application's event handler.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_.

Building the Library

This section lists the files that are available in the USB Audio 1.0 Device Library.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_audio_v1_0.h | This header file must be included in every source file that needs to invoke USB Audio 1.0 Device Driver APIs. |

Required File(s)



All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_audio_v1_0.c | This file contains all of functions, macros, definitions, variables, datatypes, etc., that are specific to the USB Audio Specification v1.0 implementation of the Audio 1.0 Function Driver. |
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_audio_read_write.c | Contains implementation of the Audio 1.0 Function Driver read and write functions. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Audio 1.0 Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet | This function registers an event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel | This function cancels a scheduled Audio Device data transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend | This function requests a Status write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX | USB Device Audio function driver index. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device Audio Function Driver transfer handle definition. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT | USB Device Audio Function Driver events. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT | USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio result enumeration. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device Audio Function Driver invalid transfer handle definition. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver audio read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver audio read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Audio event handler function pointer type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device Audio Function Driver event callback response type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device Audio Function Driver event handler response type none. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device Audio Function Driver function pointer. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR | USB Device Audio Function Driver set and get request data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES . |

| | | |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT | This is type <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT</code> . |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED | USB Device Audio Function Driver alternate interface setting event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT | USB Device Audio Function Driver initialization data structure. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver Status Send complete event data. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H | This is macro <code>_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H</code> . |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Device Audio 1.0 Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Functions

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet Function

This function registers an event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK` - The operation was successful
- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID` - The specified instance does not exist.
- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID` - The eventHandler parameter is NULL

Description

This function registers a event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance. This function should be called by the application when it receives a SET CONFIGURATION event from the device layer. The application must register an event handler with the function driver in order to receive and respond to function driver specific events and control transfers. If the event handler is not registered, the device layer will stall function driver specific commands and the USB device may not function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

This function should be called when the function driver has been initialized as a result of a set configuration.

Example

```
// The following code shows an example for registering an event handler. The
// application specifies the context parameter as a pointer to an
// application object (appObject) that should be associated with this
// instance of the Audio function driver.
```

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT result;
```

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceAUDIOEventHandler
(
```

```

    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT event ,
    void* pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    // Event Handling comes here

    switch(event)
    {
        ...
    }

    return(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE) ;
}

result = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet ( USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INSTANCE_0 ,
    &APP_USBDeviceAUDIOEventHandler, (uintptr_t) &appObject);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK != result)
{
    // Do error handling here
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | Instance of the Audio Function Driver. |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instance ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler ,
    uintptr_t context
);

```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read Function

This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle, uint8_t interfaceNumber, void * data, size_t
size);

```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK** - The read request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL** - internal request queue is full. The read request could not be added.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED** - The specified instance is not configured yet.

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID** - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is made available by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** event. The amount of data read and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID**.

Remarks

While using the Audio Function Driver with PIC32MZ USB module, the audio buffer provided to the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read** function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here:

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// device had been configured. The example attempts to read
// data from interface 1.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
unit8_t interfaceNumber;
unit8_t rxBuffer[192]; // Use this attribute for PIC32MZ __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT readRequestResult;

instanceIndex = 0; //specify the Audio Function driver instance number.
interfaceNumber = 1; //Specify the Audio Streaming interface number.

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read ( instanceIndex, &transferHandle,
                                            interfaceNumber, &rxBuffer, 192);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event. The transfer handle
// and the amount of data read will be returned along with the
// event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device Audio Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the read request was successful. |
| interfaceNum | The USB Audio streaming interface number on which read request is to be placed. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer where read data will be stored. In case of PIC32MZ device, this buffer should be located in coherent memory and should be aligned at a 16 byte boundary. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle,
    uint8_t interfaceNum ,
    void * data ,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel Function

This function cancels a scheduled Audio Device data transfer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle);
```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK** - The transfer will be canceled completely or partially.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR** - The transfer could not be canceled because it has either completed, the transfer handle is invalid or the last transaction is in progress.

Description

This function cancels a scheduled Audio Device data transfer. The transfer could have been scheduled using the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read](#), [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write](#), or the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_SerialStateNotificationSend](#) functions. If a transfer is still in the queue and its processing has not started, the transfer is canceled completely. A transfer that is in progress may or may not get canceled depending on the transaction that is presently in progress. If the last transaction of the transfer is in progress, the transfer will not be canceled. If it is not the last transaction in progress, the in-progress will be allowed to complete. Pending transactions will be canceled. The first transaction of an in progress transfer cannot be canceled.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state.

Example

```
// The following code snippet cancels a AUDIO transfer.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT result;

result = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel(instanceIndex, transferHandle);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK == result)
{
    // The transfer cancellation was either completely or
    // partially successful.
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| instanceIndex | AUDIO Function Driver instance index. |
| transferHandle | Transfer handle of the transfer to be canceled. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle
);
```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write Function

This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, uint8_t interfaceNumber, void * data, size_t size);
```

Returns

- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK` - The read request was successful. `transferHandle` contains a valid transfer handle.
- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL` - internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.
- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED` - The specified instance is not configured yet.
- `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID` - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the `transferHandle` parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event. The amount of data written and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in `writeCompleteData` member of the `pData` parameter in the event handler.

The transfer handle expires when event handler for the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` exits. If the write request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and `transferHandle` will contain the value `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`.

Remarks

While using the Audio Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the audio buffer provided to the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write` function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here:

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to write audio data to the audio streaming
// interface . This assumes that device is configured and the audio
// streaming interface is 1.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
unit8_t interfaceNumber;
unit8_t txBuffer[192]; // Use this attribute for PIC32MZ __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT writeRequestResult;

instanceIndex = 0; //specify the Audio Function driver instance number.
interfaceNumber = 1; //Specify the Audio Streaming interface number.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write ( instanceIndex, &transferHandle,
                                              interfaceNumber, &txBuffer, 192);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event. The transfer handle
// and transfer size is provided along with this event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device Audio Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the write request was successful. |
| interfaceNum | The USB Audio streaming interface number on which the write request is to placed. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer contains the data to be written. In case of PIC32MZ device, this buffer should be located in coherent memory and should be aligned a 16 byte boundary. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instance ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle,
    uint8_t interfaceNum ,
    void * data ,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend Function

This function requests a Status write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
```

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle, USB_AUDIO_INTERRUPT_STATUS_WORD* status);
```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK** - The Status send request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL** - internal request queue is full. The status send request could not be added.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED** - The specified instance is not configured yet.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID** - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a status write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. The function places a requests with driver to arm the status interrupt Endpoint with the status provided, the request will get serviced as data is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE** event.

The transfer handle expires when event handler for the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE** exits. If the Status Send request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID**.

Remarks

While the using the Audio Function Driver with PIC32MZ USB module, the audio buffer provided to the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend** function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
USB_AUDIO_INTERRUPT_STATUS_WORD statusWord __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state. The USB Configuration descriptor must contain Status interrupt Endpoint descriptor.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to Submit Status Send request to Host. This assumes
// that device has been configured.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
// Following must have __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16))) for PIC32MZ
USB_AUDIO_INTERRUPT_STATUS_WORD statusWord;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT statusSendResult;

//specify the Audio Function driver instance number.
instanceIndex = 0;

// Fill in Status Word
statusWord.bOriginator = 0x01; //ID of the terminal
statusWord.originator = 0x00; //Audio Control interface
statusWord.memoryContentsChanged = 1; //Memory contents changed
statusWord.interruptPending = 1; //Interrupt is pending

statusSendResult = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend ( instanceIndex, &transferHandle,
                                                &statusWord);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK != statusSendResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND event. The transfer handle
// will be returned along with the event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device Audio Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the write request was successful. |
| status | pointer to the data buffer contains the Status. In case of PIC32MZ device, this buffer should be located in coherent memory and should be aligned a 16 byte boundary. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle,
    USB_AUDIO_INTERRUPT_STATUS_WORD* status
);
```

b) Data Types and Constants

[USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX](#) Type

USB Device Audio function driver index.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX;
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Index

This definition uniquely identifies a Audio Function Driver instance.

Remarks

None.

[USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE](#) Type

USB Device Audio Function Driver transfer handle definition.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device Audio Function Driver Transfer Handle. A Transfer Handle is owned by the application but its value is modified by the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write](#), [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read](#) functions. The transfer handle is valid for the life time of the transfer and expires when the transfer related event had occurred.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT Enumeration

USB Device Audio Function Driver events.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MIN,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MAX,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_RES,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_SET_MEM,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_CUR,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MIN,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MAX,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_MEM,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_STAT
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a write operation scheduled by calling the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write() function has completed. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE type. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a read operation scheduled by calling the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read() function has completed. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE type. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a status write opearttion is complete which was scheduled using the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend() function. The pData parameter in the event handler will point to the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE type. |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED | <p>This event occurs when the Host requests the Audio USB device to set an alternate setting on an interface present in this audio function. An Audio USB Device will typically feature a default interface setting and one or more alternate interface settings. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED type. This contains the index of the interface whose setting must be changed and the index of the alternate setting. The application may enable or disable audio functions based on the interface setting.</p> |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | <p>This event occurs when the data stage of a control write transfer has completed. This would occur after the application would respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function, which may possibly have been called in response to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED event. This event notifies the application that the data is received from Host and is available at the location passed by the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function. If the received data is acceptable to the application, it should acknowledge the data by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag. The application can reject the received data by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. The pData parameter will be NULL.</p> |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | <p>This event occurs when the data stage of a control read transfer has completed. This would occur when the application has called the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to complete the data stage of a control transfer. The event indicates that the data has been transmitted to the host. The pData parameter will be NULL.</p> |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN | <p>This event occurs when the Audio function driver receives a control transfer request that could not be decoded by Audio Function driver. The pData parameter will point to a USB_SETUP_PACKET type containing the SETUP packet. The application must analyze this SETUP packet and use the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend or USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive or the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus functions to advance the control transfer or complete it.</p> |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR | <p>This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Set Current Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions.</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MIN | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Set Minimum Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MAX | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Set Maximum Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_RES | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Set Resolution Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus USB_DEVICE_ControlSend and/or USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_SET_MEM | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Entity specific Set Memory Space Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Entity. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus USB_DEVICE_ControlSend and/or USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_CUR | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Get Current Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlSend functions. |

| | |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MIN | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Get Minimum Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlSend functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MAX | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Get Maximum Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlSend functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Control specific Get Resolution Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlSend functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_MEM | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio Entity specific Get Memory Space Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Entity. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus or USB_DEVICE_ControlSend functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_STAT | This event occurs when the Host sends a Audio Entity specific Get Status Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Entity. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlSend and or USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus functions. |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Events

These events are specific to a USB Device Audio Function Driver instance. An event may have some data associated with it. This is provided to the event handling function. Each event description contains details about this event data (pData) and other parameters passed along with the event, to the event handler.

Events associated with the Audio Function Driver Specific Control Transfers require application response. The application should respond to these events by using the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) functions.

Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) will stall the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is not supported. Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) will complete the status stage of the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is supported.

The following code shows an example of a possible event handling scheme.

```
// This code example shows all USB Audio Function Driver possible events and
// a possible scheme for handling these events. In this case event responses
// are not deferred.
```

```
void APP_USBDeviceAudioEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT event ,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
            // This event indicates that a Audio Read Transfer request
            // has completed. pData should be interpreted as a
            // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE pointer type.
            // This contains the transfer handle of the read transfer
            // that completed and amount of data that was read.

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
            // This event indicates that a Audio Write Transfer request
            // has completed. pData should be interpreted as a
            // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE pointer type.
            // This contains the transfer handle of the write transfer
            // that completed and amount of data that was written.

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE:
            // This event indicates that a Audio Status Write Transfer
            // request on the interrupt Endpoint has been completed. pData
            // should be interpreted as a
            // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE pointer type.
            // This contains the transfer handle of the transfer.

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED:
            // This event occurs when the host sends Set Interface request
            // to the Audio USB Device. pData will be a pointer to a
            // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED. This
            // contains the interface number whose setting was
```

```
// changed and the index of the alternate setting.  
// The application should typically enable the audio function  
// if the interfaceAlternateSetting member of pData is greater  
// than 0.  
  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN:  
  
    // This event indicates that the Audio function driver has  
    // received a control transfer which it cannot decode. pData  
    // will be a pointer to USB_SETUP_PACKET type pointer. The  
    // application should decode the packet and take the required  
    // action using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(),  
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive()  
    // functions.  
  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:  
  
    // This event indicates the data send request associated with  
    // the latest USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function was  
    // completed. pData will be NULL.  
  
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:  
  
    // This event indicates the data receive request associated with  
    // the latest USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function was  
    // completed. pData will be NULL. The application can either  
    // acknowledge the received data or reject it by calling the  
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function.  
  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_CUR:  
  
    // This event indicates that the host is trying to set the  
    // current setting attribute of a control. The data type will be  
    // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR type. The  
    // application should identify the entity type based on the  
    // entity ID. This mapping is application specific. The  
    // following example assumes entity type to be a Feature Unit.  
  
    if(APP_EntityIdentify(((USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR  
*)pData)->entityID)  
        == APP_ENTITY_FEATURE_UNIT)  
    {  
        // The entity type is a feature unit. Type cast pData as  
        // a USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST type and find  
        // identify the control selector. This example shows the  
        // handling for VOLUME control  
  
        switch((USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST *)pData)->controlSelector)  
        {  
            case USB_AUDIO_VOLUME_CONTROL:  
                // This means the host is trying to set the volume.  
                // Use the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function to  
                // receive the volume settings for each channel.  
  
                USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, volumeSetting,  
                                         ((USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST *)pData)->wLength);  
            default:  
                // Only volume control is supported in this example.  
                // So everything else is stalled.  
                USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle,  
                                         USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);  
        }  
    }
```

```

        }

    }

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_CUR:

    // This event indicates that the host is trying to get the
    // current setting attribute of a control. The data type will be
    // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR type. The
    // application should identify the entity type based on the
    // entity ID. This mapping is application specific. The
    // following example assumes entity type to be a Feature Unit.

    if(APP_EntityIdentify(((USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR
*)pData)->entityID)
    == APP_AUDIO_ENTITY_FEATURE_UNIT)
{
    // The entity type is a feature unit. Type cast pData as
    // a USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST type and find
    // identify the control selector. This example shows the
    // handling for VOLUME control

    switch((USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST *)pData)->controlSelector)
{
    case USB_AUDIO_VOLUME_CONTROL:
        // This means the host is trying to get the volume.
        // Use the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function to
        // receive the volume settings for each channel.

        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, volumeSetting,
            ((USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST *)pData)->wLength);
    default:
        // Only volume control is supported in this example.
        // So everything else is stalled.
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle,
USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);
    }
}
break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MAX:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MIN:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_RES:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_MEM:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MAX:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MIN:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_RES:
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_MEM:
    // In this example these request are not supported and so are
    // stalled.
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);
break;

default:
    break;
}

return(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

```

Remarks

The application can defer responses to events triggered by control transfers. In that, the application can respond to the control transfer event after exiting the event handler. This allows the application some time to obtain the response data rather than having to respond to the event immediately. Note that a USB host will typically wait for an event response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the event and associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such time-out have to be avoided.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT Enumeration

USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio result enumeration.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_INTERFACE_ID,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_BUFFER,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_OK | The operation was successful |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL | The transfer queue is full and no new transfers can be scheduled |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID | The specified instance is not provisioned in the system |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED | The specified instance is not configured yet |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID | The event handler provided is NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_INTERFACE_ID | Interface number passed to the read or write function is invalid. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_BUFFER | A NULL buffer was specified in the read or write function |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED | Transfer terminated because host halted the endpoint |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST | Transfer terminated by host because of a stall clear |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT_ERROR | General Error |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Device Audio Function Driver operation results.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Device Audio Function Driver invalid transfer handle definition.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a Invalid USB Device Audio Function Driver Transfer Handle. A Invalid Transfer Handle is returned by the `USB_DEVICE_Audio_Write`, `USB_DEVICE_Audio_Read`, functions when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

`USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE` Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver audio read and write complete event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    uint16_t length;
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read or write request |
| uint16_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read or written |
| uint8_t interfaceNum; | Interface Number |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE`, `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE`, events.

Remarks

None.

`USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE` Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver audio read and write complete event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    uint16_t length;
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this • read or write request |
| uint16_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was • read or written |
| uint8_t interfaceNum; | Interface Number |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE, events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Device Audio event handler function pointer type.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE (*
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX instanceIndex , USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT
event , void * pData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Device Audio Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature USB Device Audio Function Driver event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to an Audio Function Driver events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the Audio Function Driver. The function driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

instanceIndex - Instance index of the Audio Function Driver that generated the event.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be typecast to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that registered the event handling function.

Remarks

The event handler function executes in the USB interrupt context when the USB Device Stack is configured for interrupt based operation. It is not advisable to call blocking functions or computationally intensive functions in the event handler. Where the response to a control transfer related event requires extended processing, the response to the control transfer should be deferred and the event handler should be allowed to complete execution.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE Type

USB Device Audio Function Driver event callback response type.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef void USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Event Handler Response Type

This is the return type of the Audio Function Driver event handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE Macro

USB Device Audio Function Driver event handler response type none.

File

```
usb_device_audio_v1_0.h
```

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Event Handler Response None

This is the definition of the Audio Function Driver event handler response type none.

Remarks

Intentionally defined to be empty.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER Macro

USB Device Audio Function Driver function pointer.

File

```
usb_device_audio_v1_0.h
```

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Function Pointer

This is the USB Device Audio Function Driver function pointer. This should registered with the device layer in the function driver registration table.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR Type**File**

```
usb_device_audio_v1_0.h
```

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR Type

USB Device Audio Function Driver set and get request data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR;
```

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Set and Get request data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_SET_XXX, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_SET_MEM,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_CONTROL_GET_XXX and USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_ENTITY_GET_MEM events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN Type

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES Type**File**

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT Type**File**

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT;
```

Description

This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver alternate interface setting event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t interfaceNumber;
    uint8_t interfaceAlternateSetting;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| uint8_t interfaceNumber; | Interface number of the interface who setting is to be changed |
| uint8_t interfaceAlternateSetting; | Alternate setting number |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Alternate Interface Setting Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED**.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver initialization data structure.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    size_t queueSizeRead;
    size_t queueSizeWrite;
    size_t queueSizeStatusSend;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size_t queueSizeRead; | Size of the read queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • of the Audio function driver |
| size_t queueSizeWrite; | Size of the write queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • of the Audio function driver |
| size_t queueSizeStatusSend; | Queue Size for the Status send request for this instance of the Audio function driver |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

This data structure must be defined for every instance of the Audio Function Driver. It is passed to the Audio function driver, by the Device Layer, at the time of initialization. The funcDriverInit member of the Device Layer Function Driver registration table entry must point to this data structure for an instance of the Audio function driver.

Remarks

The queue sizes that are specified in this data structure are also affected by the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) configuration macro.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver Status Send complete event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with Status Send request |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Status Send Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE](#) event.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H Macro

File

[usb_device_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_audio_v1_0.h | USB Device Audio function Driver Interface |
| usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h | USB device Audio Class configuration definitions template |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_device_audio_v1_0.h

USB Device Audio function Driver Interface

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT | USB Device Audio Function Driver events. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT | USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio result enumeration. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet | This function registers an event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend | This function requests a Status write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel | This function cancels a scheduled Audio Device data transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio Function Driver Layer. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device Audio Function Driver event handler response type none. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device Audio Function Driver function pointer. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device Audio Function Driver invalid transfer handle definition. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED | USB Device Audio Function Driver alternate interface setting event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver audio read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver Status Send complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver audio read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT | USB Device Audio Function Driver initialization data structure. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR | USB Device Audio Function Driver set and get request data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT | This is type USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Audio event handler function pointer type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device Audio Function Driver event callback response type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX | USB Device Audio function driver index. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device Audio Function Driver transfer handle definition. |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Interface

This file describes the USB Device Audio Function Driver interface. This file should be included by the application if it needs to use the Audio Function Driver API.

File Name

`usb_device_audio.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

`usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h`

USB device Audio Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <code>_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</code> | This is macro <code>_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</code> -. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INSTANCES_NUMBER</code> | Specifies the number of Audio Function Driver instances. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING</code> | Specifies the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES</code> | Specifies the maximum number of Audio Streaming interfaces in an Audio Function Driver instance. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED</code> | Specifies the combined queue size of all Audio function driver instances. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_ABORT_NOTIFY</code> | USB Audio Transfer abort notification enable |

Description

USB Device Audio Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the Audio Function Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific `system_config.h`.

File Name

`usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Audio 2.0 Device Library

This section describes the USB Audio 2.0 Device Library.

Introduction

This section provides information on library design, configuration, usage and the library interface for the USB Audio 2.0 Device Library.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Audio 2.0 Device Library (also referred to as the Audio 2.0 Function Driver or library) features routines

to implement a USB Audio 2.0 Device. Examples of Audio USB 2.0 Devices include USB Speakers, microphones, and voice telephony. The library provides a convenient abstraction of the USB Audio 2.0 Device specification and simplifies the implementation of USB Audio 2.0 Devices.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the Audio 2.0 Function Driver and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB Audio 2.0 Device Library.

Description

The Audio 2.0 Function Driver offers various services to the USB Audio 2.0 device to communicate with the host by abstracting USB specification details. It must be used along with the USB Device layer and USB controller to communicate with the USB host. Figure 1 shows a block diagram of the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack Architecture and where the Audio 2.0 Function Driver is placed.

Figure 1: USB Device Audio Device Driver

The USB controller driver takes the responsibility of managing the USB peripheral on the device. The USB Device Layer handles the device enumeration, etc. The USB Device Layer forwards all Audio-specific control transfers to the Audio 2.0 Function Driver. The Audio 2.0 Function Driver interprets the control transfers and requests application's intervention through event handlers and a well-defined set of API. The application must respond to the Audio events either in or out of the event handler. Some of these events are related to Audio 2.0 Device Class specific control transfers. The application must complete these control transfers within the timing constraints defined by USB.

Library Overview

The USB Audio 2.0 Device Library mainly interacts with the system, its clients and function drivers, as shown in the [Abstraction Model](#).

The library interface routines are divided into sub-sections, which address one of the blocks or the overall operation of the USB Audio 2.0 Device Library.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Functions | Provides event handler, read/write, and transfer cancellation functions. |

How the Library Works

Initializing the Library

Describes how the USB Audio 2.0 Device driver is initialized.

Description

The Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance for a USB device configuration is initialized by the Device Layer when the configuration is set by the host. This process does not require application intervention. Each instance of the Audio 2.0 Function Driver should be registered with the Device layer through the Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table. The Audio 2.0 Function Driver requires a initialization data structure to be specified. This is a `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_2_0_INIT` data type that specifies the size of the read and write queues. The `funcDriverInit` member of the function driver registration table entry of the Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance should point to this initialization data structure. The `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_2_0_FUNCTION_DRIVER` object is a global object provided by the Audio 2.0 Function Driver and provides the Device Layer with an entry point into the Audio 2.0

Function Driver. The following code shows an example of how the Audio 2.0 Function Driver can be registered with the Device Layer.

```
/* This code shows an example of how an Audio 2.0 function driver instances
 * can be registered with the Device Layer via the Device Layer Function Driver
 * Registration Table. In this case Device Configuration 1 consists of one
 * Audio 2.0 function driver instance. */

/* The Audio 2.0 Function Driver requires an initialization data structure that
 * specifies the read and write buffer queue sizes. Note that these settings are
 * also affected by the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED configuration
 * macro. */

const USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_2_0_INIT audioDeviceInit =
{
    .queueSizeRead = 1,
    .queueSizeWrite = 1
};

const USB_DEVICE_FUNC_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
    {
        .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL,                                // Supported speed
        .configurationValue = 1,                               // To be initialized for Configuration 1
        .interfaceNumber = 0,                                 // Starting interface number.
        .numberOfInterfaces = 2,                            // Number of interfaces in this instance
        .funcDriverIndex = 0,                                // Function Driver instance index is 0
        .funcDriverInit = &audioDeviceInit,                  // Function Driver does not need
initialization data structure
        .driver = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_2_0_FUNCTION_DRIVER // Pointer to Function Driver - Device
Layer interface functions
    },
};

}
```

The following figure illustrates the typical sequence that is followed in the application when using the Audio 2.0 Function Driver.

Typical USB Audio 2.0 Device Sequence

1. Call set of APIs to initialize USB Device Layer (refer to the [USB Device Layer Library](#) section for details about these APIs).
2. The Device Layer provides a callback to the application for any USB Device events like attached, powered, configured, etc. The application should receive a callback with an event `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED` to proceed.
3. Once the Device Layer is configured, the application needs to register a callback function with the Audio 2.0 Function Driver to receive Audio 2.0 Control transfers, and also other Audio 2.0 Function Driver events. Now the application can use Audio 2.0 Function Driver APIs to communicate with the USB Host.

Event Handling

Describes Audio 2.0 Function Driver event handler registration and event handling.

Description

Registering a Audio 2.0 Function Driver Callback Function

While creating a USB Audio 2.0 Device application, an event handler must be registered with the Device Layer (the Device Layer Event Handler) and every Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance (Audio 2.0 Function Driver Event Handler). The application needs to register the event handler with the Audio 2.0 Function Driver:

- For receiving Audio 2.0 Control Requests from Host like Volume Control, Mute Control, etc.
- For handling other events from USB Audio 2.0 Device Driver (e.g., Data Write Complete or Data Read Complete)

The event handler should be registered before the USB device layer acknowledges the SET CONFIGURATION request from the USB Host. To ensure this, the callback function should be set in the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED` event that is generated by the device layer. The following code example shows how this can be done.

```
/* This a sample Application Device Layer Event Handler
 * Note how the USB Audio 2.0 Device Driver callback function
 * USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_2_0_EventHandlerSet()
 * is registered in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event. */
```

```

void APP_UsbDeviceEventCallBack( USB_DEVICE_EVENT event, void * pEventData, uintptr_t context )
{
    uint8_t * configuredEventData;
    switch( event )
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:
            break;
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED:
            // USB device is reset or device is de-configured.
            // This means that USB device layer is about to de-initialize
            // all function drivers. So close handles to previously opened
            // function drivers.
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:
            /* check the configuration */
            /* Initialize the Application */
            configuredEventData = pEventData;
            if(*configuredEventData == 1)
            {
                USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet
                (
                    0,
                    APP_USBDeviceAudioEventHandler ,
                    (uintptr_t)NULL
                );
                /* mark that set configuration is complete */
                appData.isConfigured = true;
            }
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:
            /* Attach the device */
            USB_DEVICE_Attach (appData.usbDevHandle);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:
            /* VBUS is not available. We can detach the device */
            USB_DEVICE_Detach(appData.usbDevHandle);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:
        default:
            break;
    }
}

```

Event Handling

The Audio 2.0 Function Driver provides events to the application through the event handler function registered by the application. These events indicate:

- Completion of a read or a write data transfer
- Audio 2.0 Control Interface requests
- Completion of data and the status stages of Audio 2.0 Control Interface related control transfer

The Audio 2.0 Control Interface Request events and the related control transfer events typically require the application to respond with the Device Layer Control Transfer routines to complete the control transfer. Based on the generated event, the application may be required to:

- Respond with a **USB_DEVICE_ControlSend** function, which completes the data stage of a Control Read Transfer
- Respond with a **USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive** function, which provisions the data stage of a Control Write Transfer
- Respond with a **USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus** function, which completes the handshake stage of the Control Transfer. The

application can either STALL or Acknowledge the handshake stage through the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function.

The following table shows the Audio 2.0 Function Driver Control Transfer related events and the required application control transfer actions.

| Audio 2.0 Function Driver Control Transfer Event | Required Application Action |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED | Identify the control type using the associated event data. If a data stage is expected, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to receive expected data. If a data stage is not required or if the request is not supported, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to Acknowledge or Stall the request. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RANGE_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED | Identify the control type using the associated event data. If a data stage is expected, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to receive expected data. If a data stage is not required or if the request is not supported, use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to Acknowledge or Stall the request. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | Action not required. |

The application must analyze the wIndex field of the event data (received with the control transfer event) to identify the entity that is being addressed. The application must be aware of all entities included in the application and their IDs. Once identified, the application can then type cast the event data to entity type the specific control request type. For example, if the Host sends a control request to set the clock source for the Audio 2.0 device, the following occurs in this order:

1. The Audio 2.0 Function Driver will generate a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED event.
2. The application must type cast the event data to a USB_AUDIO_V2_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST type and check the entityID field.
3. The entityID field will be identified by the application as a Clock Source.
4. The application must now type cast the event data type as a USB_AUDIO_V2_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL_REQUEST data type and check the controlSelector field.
5. If the controlSelector field is AUDIO_V2_CS_SAM_FREQ_CONTROL, the application can then call the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function to receive the clock source.

Based on the type of event, the application should analyze the event data parameter of the event handler. This data member should be type cast to an event specific data type. The following table shows the event and the data type to use while type casting. Note that the event data member is not required for all events.

| Audio 2.0 Function Driver Event | Related Event Data Type |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED | USB_AUDIO_V2_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST* |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RANGE_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED | USB_AUDIO_V2_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST* |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE * |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE * |

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE

*

Handling Audio Control Requests:

When the Audio 2.0 Function Driver receives an Audio 2.0 Class Specific Control Transfer Request, it passes this control transfer to the application as a Audio 2.0 Function Driverevent. The following code example shows how to handle an Audio 2.0 Control request.

```

void APP_USBDeviceAudioEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX iAudio ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT event ,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE * interfaceInfo;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE * readEventData;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE * writeEventData;
    USB_AUDIO_V2_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST* controlRequest;
    if ( iAudio == 0 )
    {
        switch (event)
        {
            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
                readEventData = (USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE *)pData;
                //We have received an audio frame from the Host.
                //Now send this audio frame to Audio Codec for Playback.

                break;

            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

                break;

            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED:
                //We have received a request from USB host to change the Interface-
                //Alternate setting.
                interfaceInfo = (USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE *)pData;
                appData.activeInterfaceAlternateSetting =
interfaceInfo->interfaceAlternateSetting;
                appData.state = APP_USB_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTING_RCVD;

                break;
            case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED:
                controlRequest = (USB_AUDIO_V2_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST*) setupPkt;
                USB_AUDIO_V2_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL_REQUEST* clockSourceRequest;

                switch(controlRequest->entityID)
                {
                    case APP_ID_CLOCK_SOURCE:
                        clockSourceRequest = (USB_AUDIO_V2_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL_REQUEST*) controlRequest;
                        switch(clockSourceRequest->controlSelector)
                        {
                            case AUDIO_V2_CS_SAM_FREQ_CONTROL:
                                {
                                    if ((controlRequest->bmRequestType & 0x80) == 0)
                                    {
                                        //A control write transfer received from Host. Now receive data
from Host.
                                        USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(appData.usbDevHandle, (void *)
&(appData.clockSource), 4 );
                                        appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_AUDIO_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL;
                                    }
                                }
                            else

```

```

        {
        /*Handle Get request*/
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(appData.usbDevHandle, (void
*) &(appData.clockSource), 4 );
        appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_CONTROL_NONE;
    }
}

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RANGE_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED:
break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:
USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(appData.usbDevHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK );
switch (appData.currentAudioControl)
{
    case APP_USB_AUDIO_MUTE_CONTROL:
    {
        appData.state = APP_MUTE_AUDIO_PLAYBACK;
        appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_CONTROL_NONE;
    }
    break;
    case APP_USB_AUDIO_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL:
    {
        // Handle Clock Source Control here.
        appData.state = APP_CLOCKSOURCE_SET;
        appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_CONTROL_NONE;
    }
    break;
    case APP_USB_AUDIO_CLOCKSELECT_CONTROL:
    {
        // Handle Clock Source Control here.
        appData.currentAudioControl = APP_USB_CONTROL_NONE;
    }
    break;
}
break;
case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:
break;
default:
    SYS_ASSERT ( false , "Invalid callback" );
    break;
} //end of switch ( callback )
}//end of if if ( iAudio == 0 )
}//end of function APP_AudioEventCallback

```

Transferring Data

Describes how to send/receive data to/from USB Host using this USB Audio 2.0 Device Driver.

Description

The USB Audio 2.0 Device Driver provides functions to send and receive data.

Receiving Data

The [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read](#) function schedules a data read. When the host transfers data to the device, the Audio 2.0 Function Driver receives the data and invokes the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event. This event indicates that audio data is now available in the application specified buffer.

The Audio 2.0 Function Driver supports buffer queuing. The application can schedule multiple read requests. Each request is assigned a unique buffer handle, which is returned with the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event. The

application can use the buffer handle to track completion to queued requests. Using this feature allows the application to implement audio buffering schemes such as ping-pong buffering.

Sending Data

The [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write](#) schedules a data write. When the host sends a request for the data, the Audio 2.0 Function Driver transfers the data and invokes the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) event.

The Audio 2.0 Function Driver supports buffer queuing. The application can schedule multiple write requests. Each request is assigned a unique buffer handle, which is returned with the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) event. The application can use the buffer handle to track completion to queued requests. Using this feature allows the application to implement audio buffering schemes such as ping-pong buffering.

Configuring the Library

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Audio 2.0 Function Driver instances. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING | Specifies the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES | Specifies the maximum number of Audio 2.0 Streaming interfaces in an Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED | Specifies the combined queue size of all Audio 2.0 function driver instances. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ . |

Description

The application designer must specify the following configuration parameters while using the USB Audio 2.0 Device Driver. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the `system_config.h` file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Audio 2.0 Function Driver instances.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB device Audio 2.0 Maximum Number of instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the Audio 2.0 Function Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two instances of the Audio 2.0 Function Driver (to create two composite Audio Device) on one USB Device, the macro should be set to 2. Note that implementing a USB Device that features multiple Audio 2.0 interfaces requires appropriate USB configuration descriptors.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING Macro

Specifies the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING
```

Description

Maximum number of Alternate Settings

This macro defines the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface. If the Audio 2.0 Device features multiple streaming interfaces, this configuration constant should be equal to the the maximum number of alternate required amongst the streaming interfaces.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES Macro

Specifies the maximum number of Audio 2.0 Streaming interfaces in an Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES
```

Description

Maximum Audio 2.0 Streaming Interfaces

This macro defines the maximum number of streaming interfaces in an Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance. In case of multiple Audio 2.0 Function Driver instances, this constant should be equal to the maximum number of interfaces amongst the Audio 2.0 Function Driver instances.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED Macro

Specifies the combined queue size of all Audio 2.0 function driver instances.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED
```

Description

USB device Audio 2.0 Combined Queue Size

This macro defines the number of entries in all queues in all instances of the Audio 2.0 function driver. This value can be obtained by adding up the read and write queue sizes of each Audio Function driver instance. In a simple single instance USB Audio 2.0 device application, that does not require buffer queuing, the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) macro can be

set to 2. Consider a case of a Audio 2.0 function driver instances, with has a read queue size of 2 and write queue size of 3, this macro should be set to 5 (2 + 3).

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_.

Building the Library

This section lists the files that are available in the USB Audio 2.0 Device Library.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_audio_v2_0.h | This header file must be included in every source file that needs to invoke USB Audio 2.0 Device Driver APIs. |
| usb_audio_v2_0.h | This header file must be included when the audio 2.0 descriptor macros are used. |

Required File(s)



All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_audio_v2_0.c | This file contains all of functions, macros, definitions, variables, datatypes, etc., that are specific to the USB Audio v2.0 Specification implementation of the Audio 2.0 Function Driver. |
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_audio2_read_write.c | Contains implementation of the audio 2.0 function driver read and write functions. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Audio 2.0 Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet | This function registers an event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel | This function cancels a scheduled Audio v2.0 Device data transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver events. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver Audio v2.0 read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver alternate interface setting event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver Audio v2.0 read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Audio v2.0 Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver event callback response type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver index. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INIT | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver initialization data structure. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT | USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio v2.0 result enumeration. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver event handler response type none. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver function pointer. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H . |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Device Audio Library

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Functions

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet Function

This function registers an event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX  
instanceIndex, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK** - The operation was successful
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID** - The specified instance does not exist.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID** - The eventHandler parameter is NULL

Description

This function registers a event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance. This function should be called by the application when it receives a SET CONFIGURATION event from the device layer. The application must register an event handler with the function driver in order to receive and respond to function driver specific events and control transfers. If the event handler is not registered, the device layer will stall function driver specific commands and the USB device may not function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

This function should be called when the function driver has been initialized as a result of a set configuration.

Example

```
// The following code shows an example registering an event handler. The  
// application specifies the context parameter as a pointer to an  
// application object (appObject) that should be associated with this  
// instance of the Audio function driver.  
  
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT result;  
  
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceAUDIOEventHandler  
{  
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex ,  
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT event ,  
    void* pData,  
    uintptr_t context  
}  
{  
    // Event Handling comes here  
  
    switch(event)  
    {  
        ...  
    }  
  
    return(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);  
}
```

```

result = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet ( USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INSTANCE_0 ,
&APP_USBDeviceAUDIOEventHandler, (uintptr_t) &appObject);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK != result)
{
    // Do error handling here
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | Instance of the Audio v2.0 Function Driver. |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instance ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler ,
    uintptr_t context
);

```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read Function

This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle, uint8_t interfaceNumber, void * data,
size_t size);

```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK** - The read request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL** - internal request queue is full. The read request could not be added.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED** - The specified instance is not configured yet.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID** - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is made available by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event. The amount of data read and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID**.

Remarks

While using the Audio Function Driver with PIC32MZ USB module, the audio buffer provided to the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read** function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the **__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))** attribute, as shown in the following example:

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// device had been configured. The example attempts to read
// data from interface 1.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
unit8_t interfaceNumber;
// Use this attribute for PIC32MZ __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))
unit8_t rxBuffer[192];
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT readRequestResult;

instanceIndex = 0; //specify the Audio v2.0 Function driver instance number.
interfaceNumber = 1; //Specify the Audio v2.0 Streaming interface number.

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read ( instanceIndex, &transferHandle,
                                              interfaceNumber, &rxBuffer, 192);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event. The transfer handle
// and the amount of data read will be returned along with the
// event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the read request was successful. |
| interfaceNum | The USB Audio v2.0 streaming interface number on which read request is to placed. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer where read data will be stored. In case of PIC32MZ device, this buffer should be located in coherent memory and should be aligned a 16 byte boundary. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE* transferHandle,
    uint8_t interfaceNum ,
    void * data ,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel Function

This function cancels a scheduled Audio v2.0 Device data transfer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX
instanceIndex, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle);
```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK** - The transfer will be canceled completely or partially.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR** - The transfer could not be canceled because it has either completed, the transfer handle is invalid or the last transaction is in progress.

Description

This function cancels a scheduled Audio v2.0 Device data transfer. The transfer could have been scheduled using the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read](#), [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write](#), or the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_SerialStateNotificationSend](#) function. If a transfer is still in the queue and its processing has not started, the transfer is canceled completely. A transfer that is in progress may or may not get canceled depending on the transaction that is presently in progress. If the last transaction of the transfer is in progress, the transfer will not be canceled. If it is not the last transaction in progress, the in-progress will be allowed to complete. Pending transactions will be canceled. The first transaction of an in progress transfer cannot be canceled.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state.

Example

```
// The following code example cancels an Audio transfer.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT result;

result = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel(instanceIndex, transferHandle);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK == result)
{
    // The transfer cancellation was either completely or
    // partially successful.
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| instanceIndex | AUDIO v2.0 Function Driver instance index. |
| transferHandle | Transfer handle of the transfer to be canceled. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle
);
```

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write Function

This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, uint8_t interfaceNumber, void * data,
size_t size);
```

Returns

- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK** - The read request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL** - internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED** - The specified instance is not configured yet.
- **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID** - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE** event. The amount of data written and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in writeCompleteData member of the pData parameter in the event handler.

The transfer handle expires when event handler for the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE** exits. If the write request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Remarks

While using the Audio Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the audio buffer provided to the **USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write** function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the **__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))** attribute. An example is shown here:

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to write audio data to the audio streaming
// interface. This assumes that device is configured and the audio
// streaming interface is 1.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex;
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
unit8_t interfaceNumber;
unit8_t txBuffer[192]; // Use this attribute for PIC32MZ __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT writeRequestResult;

instanceIndex = 0; //specify the Audio Function driver instance number.
interfaceNumber = 1; //Specify the Audio Streaming interface number.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write ( instanceIndex, &transferHandle,
                                                interfaceNumber, &txBuffer, 192);

if(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
```

```

}

// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event. The transfer handle
// and transfer size is provided along with this event.

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device Audio Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the write request was successful. |
| interfaceNum | The USB Audio streaming interface number on which the write request is to placed. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer contains the data to be written. In case of PIC32MZ device, this buffer should be located in coherent memory and should be aligned a 16 byte boundary. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. |

Function

```

USB\_DEVICE\_AUDIO\_V2\_RESULT USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_AUDIO\_V2\_INDEX instance ,
    USB\_DEVICE\_AUDIO\_V2\_TRANSFER\_HANDLE* transferHandle,
    uint8_t interfaceNum ,
    void * data ,
    size_t size
);

```

b) Data Types and Constants

[USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT Enumeration](#)

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver events.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RANGE_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a write operation scheduled by calling the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write function has completed. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA type. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a read operation scheduled by calling the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read function has completed. The pData member in the event handler will point to USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA type. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED | This event occurs when the Host requests the Audio v2.0 USB Device to set an alternate setting on an interface present in this audio function. An Audio v2.0 USB Device will typically feature a default interface setting and one or more alternate interface settings. The pData member in the event handler will point to the USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED type. This contains the index of the interface whose setting must be changed and the index of the alternate setting. The application may enable or disable audio functions based on the interface setting. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | This event occurs when the data stage of a control write transfer has completed. This would occur after the application would respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function, which may possibly have been called in response to a USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_ENTITY_SETTINGS_RECEIVED event. This event notifies the application that the data is received from Host and is available at the location passed by the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function. If the received data is acceptable to the application, it should acknowledge the data by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag. The application can reject the received data by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. The pData parameter will be NULL. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | This event occurs when the data stage of a control read transfer has completed. This would occur when the application has called the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to complete the data stage of a control transfer. The event indicates that the data has been transmitted to the host. The pData parameter will be NULL. |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio 2.0 Control specific Set Current Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RANGE_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED | This event occurs when the Host sends an Audio 2.0 Control specific Set Range Setting Attribute Control Transfer request to an Audio Device Control. The pData member in the event handler will point to type. The application must use the entityID, interface, endpoint and the wValue field in the event data to determine the entity and control type and then respond to the control transfer with a USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive functions. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN | This event occurs when the Audio v2.0 function driver receives a control transfer request that could not be decoded by Audio Function driver. The pData parameter will point to a USB_SETUP_PACKET type containing the setup packet. The application must analyze this Setup packet and use the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend , USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive , or the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to advance the control transfer or complete it. |

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Events

These events are specific to a USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver instance. An event may have some data associated with it. This is provided to the event handling function. Each event description contains details about this event data (pData) and other parameters passed along with the event, to the event handler.

Events associated with the Audio v2.0 Function Driver Specific Control Transfers require application response. The application should respond to these events by using the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive\(\)](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend\(\)](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) functions.

Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) will stall the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is not supported. Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus\(\)](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) will complete the status stage of the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is supported.

The following code shows an example of a possible event handling scheme.

```
// This code example shows all USB Audio v2.0 Function Driver possible
// events and a possible scheme for handling these events.
// In this case event responses are not deferred.
```

```
void APP_USBDeviceAudioEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT event ,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
```

```
// This event indicates that a Audio v2.0 Read Transfer request
// has completed. pData should be interpreted as a
// USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE pointer type.
// This contains the transfer handle of the read transfer
// that completed and amount of data that was read.

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

    // This event indicates that a Audio v2.0 Write Transfer request
    // has completed. pData should be interpreted as a
    // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE pointer type.
    // This contains the transfer handle of the write transfer
    // that completed and amount of data that was written.

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED:

    // This event occurs when the host sends Set Interface request
    // to the Audio v2.0 USB Device. pData will be a pointer to a
    // USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED. This
    // contains the interface number whose setting was
    // changed and the index of the alternate setting.
    // The application should typically enable the audio function
    // if the interfaceAlternateSetting member of pData is greater
    // than 0.

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_UNKNOWN:

    // This event indicates that the Audio v2.0 function driver has
    // received a control transfer which it cannot decode. pData
    // will be a pointer to USB_SETUP_PACKET type pointer. The
    // application should decode the packet and take the required
    // action using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(),
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() and USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive()
    // functions.

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:

    // This event indicates the data send request associated with
    // the latest USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function was
    // completed. pData will be NULL.

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:

    // This event indicates the data receive request associated with
    // the latest USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function was
    // completed. pData will be NULL. The application can either
    // acknowledge the received data or reject it by calling the
    // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function.

break;

case USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_CUR_ENTITY_SETTINGS RECEIVED:
    // This event indicates the Current entity request has been
    // received.
    USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST* controlRequest;
    controlRequest = (USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_INTERFACE_REQUEST*) setupPkt;
    switch(controlRequest->entityID)
    {
        case APP_ID_CLOCK_SOURCE:
```

```

USB_AUDIO_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL_REQUEST*
                           clockSourceRequest;
clockSourceRequest =
(USB_AUDIO_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL_REQUEST*) controlRequest;

if (clockSourceRequest->bRequest == CUR)
{
    switch(clockSourceRequest->controlSelector)
    {
        case CS_SAM_FREQ_CONTROL:
        {
            if ((controlRequest->bmRequestType & 0x80)
                  == 0)
            {
                //A control write transfer received
                //from Host. Now receive data from Host.
                USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(
                    appData.usbDevHandle,
                    void * ) &(appData.clockSource),
                    4 );
                appData.currentAudioControl =
                    APP_USB_AUDIO_CLOCKSOURCE_CONTROL;
            }
        else
        {
            //Handle Get request
            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(
                appData.usbDevHandle,
                (void * )&(appData.clockSource),
                4 );
            appData.currentAudioControl =
                APP_USB_CONTROL_NONE;
        }
    }
break;

case CS_CLOCK_VALID_CONTROL:
{
    if ((controlRequest->bmRequestType & 0x80)
          == 0x80)
    {
        //Handle Get request
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(
            appData.usbDevHandle,
            (void * )&(appData.clockValid),
            1);
    }
    else
    {
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(
            appData.usbDevHandle,
            USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);
    }
}
break;

default:
//This USB Audio Speaker application does
//not support any other feature unit request
//from Host. So Stall if any other feature
//unit request received from Host.
USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus (
    appData.usbDevHandle,
    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);
break;
}

```

Remarks

The application can defer responses to events triggered by control transfers. In that, the application can respond to the control transfer event after exiting the event handler. This allows the application some time to obtain the response data rather than having to respond to the event immediately. Note that a USB host will typically wait for an event response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the event and associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such time-out have to be avoided.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver Audio v2.0 read and write complete event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    uint16_t length;
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this • read or write request |
| uint16_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was • read or written |
| uint8_t interfaceNum; | Interface Number |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE, events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE Structure

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver alternate interface setting event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t interfaceNumber;
    uint8_t interfaceAlternateSetting;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| uint8_t interfaceNumber; | Interface number of the interface who setting is to be changed |
| uint8_t interfaceAlternateSetting; | Alternate setting number |

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Alternate Interface Setting Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Audio Function Driver Audio v2.0 read and write complete event data.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    uint16_t length;
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this • read or write request |
| uint16_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was • read or written |
| uint8_t interfaceNum; | Interface Number |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE, events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Device Audio v2.0 Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE (*
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX instanceIndex ,
USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT event , void * pData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature USB Device Audio Function Driver event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to an Audio Function Driver events handling function who's function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the Audio Function Driver. The function driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

instanceIndex - Instance index of the Audio v2.0 Function Driver that generated the event.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be type casted to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that registered the event handling function.

Remarks

The event handler function executes in the USB interrupt context when the USB Device Stack is configured for interrupt based operation. It is not advisable to call blocking functions or computationally intensive functions in the event handler. Where the response to a control transfer related event requires extended processing, the response to the control transfer should be deferred and the event handler should be allowed to complete execution.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE Type

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver event callback response type.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef void USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Event Handler Response Type

This is the return type of the Audio Function Driver event handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX Type

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver index.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX;
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Index

This definition uniquely identifies a Audio v2.0 Function Driver instance.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INIT Structure

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver initialization data structure.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
```

```

    size_t queueSizeRead;
    size_t queueSizeWrite;
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INIT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size_t queueSizeRead; | Size of the read queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • of the Audio function driver |
| size_t queueSizeWrite; | Size of the write queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • of the Audio function driver |

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

This data structure must be defined for every instance of the Audio function driver. It is passed to the Audio v2.0 function driver, by the Device Layer, at the time of initialization. The funcDriverInit member of the Device Layer Function Driver registration table entry must point to this data structure for an instance of the Audio function driver.

Remarks

The queue sizes that are specified in this data structure are also affected by the [USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) configuration macro.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT Enumeration

USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio v2.0 result enumeration.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_INTERFACE_ID,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_BUFFER,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST,
    USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_OK | The operation was successful |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL | The transfer queue is full and no new transfers can be scheduled |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID | The specified instance is not provisioned in the system |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED | The specified instance is not configured yet |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID | The event handler provided is NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_INTERFACE_ID | Interface number passed to the read or write function is invalid. |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_INVALID_BUFFER | A NULL buffer was specified in the read or write function |
| USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED | Transfer terminated because host halted the endpoint |

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST</code> | Transfer terminated by host because of a stall clear |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT_ERROR</code> | General Error |

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver USB Device Audio v2.0 Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver operation results.

Remarks

None.

`USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE` Type

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Transfer Handle. A Transfer Handle is owned by the application but its value is modified by the `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write` and `USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read` functions. The transfer handle is valid for the life time of the transfer and expires when the transfer related event had occurred.

Remarks

None.

`USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE` Macro

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver event handler response type none.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Event Handler Response None

This is the definition of the Audio v2.0 Function Driver event handler response type none.

Remarks

Intentionally defined to be empty.

`USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_FUNCTION_DRIVER` Macro

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver function pointer.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_FUNCTION_DRIVER
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Function Pointer

This is the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Function pointer. This should registered with the device layer in the function driver registration table.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle. A Invalid Transfer Handle is returned by the USB_DEVICE_Audio_V2_Write and USB_DEVICE_Audio_V2_Read functions when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H Macro**File**

[usb_device_audio_v2_0.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H.

Files**Files**

| Name | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_audio_v2_0.h | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver interface . |
| usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h | USB device Audio 2.0 Class configuration definitions template |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_device_audio_v2_0.h

USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver interface .

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver events. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT | USB Device Audio Function Driver USB Device Audio v2.0 result enumeration. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet | This function registers an event handler for the specified Audio function driver instance. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel | This function cancels a scheduled Audio v2.0 Device data transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Layer. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver event handler response type none. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver function pointer. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver Audio v2.0 read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver alternate interface setting event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Audio Function Driver Audio v2.0 read and write complete event data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INIT | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver initialization data structure. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Audio v2.0 Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver event callback response type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver index. |
| | USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |

Description

USB Device Audio Function Driver Interface

This file describes the USB Device Audio v2.0 Function Driver interface. This file should be included by the application if it needs to use the Audio v2.0 Function Driver API.

File Name

`usb_device_audio_v2.0.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

`usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h`

USB device Audio 2.0 Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</code> | This is macro <code>_USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</code> . |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INSTANCES_NUMBER</code> | Specifies the number of Audio 2.0 Function Driver instances. |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING</code> | Specifies the maximum number of Alternate Settings per streaming interface. |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES</code> | Specifies the maximum number of Audio 2.0 Streaming interfaces in an Audio 2.0 Function Driver instance. |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED</code> | Specifies the combined queue size of all Audio 2.0 function driver instances. |

Description

USB Device Audio 2.0 Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the Audio 2.0 Function Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name

`usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template_0_config_template.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB CDC Device Library

This section describes the USB CDC Device Library.

Introduction

This help section provides information on library design, configuration, usage and the Library Interface for the USB Communications Device Class (CDC) Device Library.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Communications Device Class (CDC) Device Library (also referred to as the CDC function driver or library) provides functions and methods that allow application designers to implement a USB CDC Device. The current version of the library supports the Abstract Control Model (ACM) of the CDC specification revision 1.2 and specifically implements a subset of the AT250 command set. This library must be used in conjunction with the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Layer.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB CDC Device Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Provides an architectural overview of the CDC Function Driver.

Description

The CDC Function Driver offers services to a USB CDC Device to communicate with the host by abstracting the USB specification details. It must be used along with the USB Device Layer and USB controller to communicate with the USB Host. Figure 1 shows a block diagram of the MPLAB Harmony USB Architecture and where the CDC Function Driver is placed.

Figure 1: CDC Function Driver

As shown in Figure 1, the USB Controller Driver takes the responsibility of managing the USB peripheral on the device. The USB Device Layer handles the device enumeration, etc. The USB Device layer forwards all USB CDC specific control transfers to the CDC Function Driver. The CDC Function Driver ACM sub-layer interprets the control transfers and requests application's intervention through event handlers and well defined set of API. The application must register a event handler with the CDC Function Driver in the Device Layer Set Configuration Event. The application should respond to CDC ACM events. Response to CDC ACM event that require control transfer response can be deferred by responding to the event after returning from the event handler. The application interacts directly with the CDC Function Driver to send/receive data and to send serial state notifications.

As per the CDC specification,a USB CDC Device is a collection of the following interfaces:

- Communication Interface (Device Management) on Endpoint 0
- Optional Communication Interface (Notification) on an interrupt endpoint
- Optional Data Interface (either a bulk or isochronous endpoint)

Figure 2: CDC Function Driver Architecture

Figure 2 shows the architecture of the CDC Function Driver. The device management on Endpoint 0 is handled by the device library(class specific requests are routed to the CDC Function Driver by the USB Device Layer). An instance of the CDC Function Driver actually consists of a data interface and a notification interface. The library is implemented in two .c files. The `usb_device_cdc.c` file implements the CDC data and serial state notification, while the `usb_device_cdc_acm.c` file implements the control transfer interpretation and event generation. The application must respond to control transfer related CDC ACM events by directly calling the Device Layer control transfer routines.

Abstract Control Model (ACM)

Describes the various Abstract Control Model (ACM) commands supported by this CDC Function Driver implementation.

Description

One of the basic supported models for communication by CDC is POTS (Plain Old Telephone Service). The POTS model is for devices that communicate via ordinary phone lines and generic COM port devices. The USB CDC specification refers to this basic model as PSTN (Public Switched Telephone Network).

Depending on the amount of data processing the device is responsible for POTS/PSTN is divided into several models. The processing of data can include modulation, demodulation, error correction and data compression.

Of the supported PSTN models, this CDC Function Driver implements ACM. In the ACM the device handles modulation, demodulation and handles V.25ter (AT) commands. This model (ACM) also supports requests and notifications to get and set RS-232 status, control, and asynchronous port parameters. Virtual COM port devices use ACM.

The following sections describe the management requests and notifications supported by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer.

Management Requests

The Host requests/sends some information in the form of management requests on the bidirectional Endpoint 0. The following table shows the CDC specification ACM sub class management requests and how these request are handled by the CDC Function Driver.

| Request Code | Required/Optional | Comments |
|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND | Required | Implemented by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer. This request is stalled. |
| GET_ENCAPSULATED_RESPONSE | Required | Implemented by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer. This request is stalled. |
| SET_COMM_FEATURE | Optional | Not Implemented. |
| GET_COMM_FEATURE | Optional | Not Implemented. |
| CLEAR_COMM_FEATURE | Optional | Not Implemented. |
| SET_LINE_CODING | Optional | Implemented by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer. Requires application response. |
| GET_LINE_CODING | Optional | Implemented by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer. Requires application response. |
| SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE | Optional | Implemented by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer. Requires application response. |
| SEND_BREAK | Optional | Implemented by the CDC Function Driver ACM layer. Requires application response. |

Library Overview

The USB CDC Device Library mainly interacts with the system, its clients and function drivers, as shown in the [Abstraction Model](#). The library interface routines are divided into sub-sections, which address one of the blocks or the overall operation of the USB CDC Device Library.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Functions | Provides event handler, read/write, and serial state notification functions. |

How the Library Works

Library Initialization

Describes how the CDC Function Driver is initialized.

Description

The CDC Function Driver instance for a USB device configuration is initialized by the Device Layer when the configuration is set by the host. This process does not require application intervention. Each instance of the CDC Function Driver should be registered with the Device layer through the [Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table](#). The CDC Function Driver does require a initialization data structure to be defined for each instance of the function driver. This initialization data structure should be of the type [USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT](#). This data structure specifies the read and write queue sizes. The funcDriverInit member of the function driver registration table entry for the CDC Function Driver instance should be set to point to the corresponding initialization data structure. The [USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER](#) object is a global object provided by the CDC Function Driver and points to the CDC Function Driver - Device Layer interface functions, which are required by the Device Layer. The following code an example of how multiple instances of CDC Function Driver can registered with the Device Layer.

```
/* This code shows an example of how two CDC function
 * driver instances can be registered with the Device Layer
 * via the Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table.
 * In this case Device Configuration 1 consists of two CDC
 * function driver instances. */
```

```

/* Define the CDC initialization data structure for CDC instance 0.
 * Set read queue size to 2 and write queue size to 3 */

const USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT cdcInit0 = {.queueSizeRead = 2, .queueSizeWrite = 3};

/* Define the CDC initialization data structure for CDC instance 1.
 * Set read queue size to 4 and write queue size to 1 */

const USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT cdcInit1 = {.queueSizeRead = 4, .queueSizeWrite = 1};
const USB_DEVICE_FUNC_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[2] =
{
    /* This is the first instance of the CDC Function Driver */
    {
        .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH,           // Supported speed
        .configurationValue = 1,                          // To be initialized for Configuration 1
        .interfaceNumber = 0,                            // Starting interface number.
        .numberOfInterfaces = 2,                         // Number of interfaces in this instance
        .funcDriverIndex = 0,                            // Function Driver instance index is 0
        .funcDriverInit = &cdcInit0,                      // Function Driver initialization data
    structure
        .driver = USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER       // Pointer to Function Driver - Device Layer
    interface functions
    },
    /* This is the second instance of the CDC Function Driver */
    {
        .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH,           // Supported speed
        .configurationValue = 1,                          // To be initialized for Configuration 1
        .interfaceNumber = 2,                            // Starting interface number.
        .numberOfInterfaces = 2,                         // Number of interfaces in this instance
        .funcDriverIndex = 1,                            // Function Driver instance index is 1
        .funcDriverInit = &cdcInit1,                      // Function Driver initialization data
    structure
        .driver = USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER       // Pointer to Function Driver - Device Layer
    interface functions
    },
};


```

Event Handling

Describes CDC Function Driver event handler registration and event handling.

Description

Registering a CDC Function Driver Event Handler

While creating USB CDC Device-based application, an event handler must be registered with the Device Layer (the Device Layer Event Handler) and every CDC Function Driver instance (CDC Function Driver Event Handler). The CDC Function Driver event handler receives CDC and CDC ACM events. This event handler should be registered before the USB device layer acknowledges the SET CONFIGURATION request from the USB Host. To ensure this, the event handler should be set in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event that is generated by the device layer. While registering the CDC Function Driver event handler, the CDC Function Driver allows the application to also pass a data object in the event handler register function. This data object gets associated with the instance of the CDC Function Driver and is returned by the CDC Function Driver when a CDC Function Driver event occurs. The following code shows an example of how this can be done.

```

/* This a sample Application Device Layer Event Handler
 * Note how the CDC Function Driver event handler APP_USBDeviceCDCEventHandler()
 * is registered in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event. The appData
 * object that is passed in the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet()
 * function will be returned as the userData parameter in the
 * when the APP_USBDeviceCDCEventHandler() function is invoked */

void APP_USBDeviceEventCallBack ( USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
                                 void * eventData, uintptr_t context )
{
    switch ( event )
    {

```

```

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED:

    // USB device is reset or device is deconfigured.
    // This means that USB device layer is about to deinitialize
    // all function drivers.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:

    /* check the configuration */
    if ( *((uint8_t *)eventData) == 1)
    {

        /* Register the CDC Device application event handler here.
         * Note how the appData object pointer is passed as the
         * user data */

        USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0,
                                       APP_USBDeviceCDCEventHandler, (uintptr_t)&appData);

        /* mark that set configuration is complete */
        appData.isConfigured = true;
    }
    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ATTACHED:
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DETACHED:
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:
default:
    break;
}
}

```

The CDC Function Driver event handler executes in an interrupt context when the device stack is configured for Interrupt mode. In Polled mode, the event handler is invoked in the context of the SYS_Tasks function. The application should not call computationally intensive functions, blocking functions, functions that are not interrupt safe, or functions that poll on hardware conditions from the event handler. Doing so will affect the ability of the USB device stack to respond to USB events and could potentially make the USB device non-compliant.

CDC Function Driver Events

The CDC Function Driver generates events to which the application must respond. Some of these events are management requests communicated through control transfers. Therefore, the application must use the Device Layer Control Transfer routines to complete the control transfer. Based on the generated event, the application may be required to:

- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) function, which completes the data stage of a Control Read Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function, which provisions the data stage of a Control Write Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function, which completes the handshake stage of the Control Transfer. The application can either STALL or Acknowledge the handshake stage via the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function. The following table shows the CDC Function Driver Control Transfer related events and the required application control transfer actions.

| CDC Function Driver Control Transfer Event | Required Application Action |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING | Call USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function with a buffer to receive the USB_CDC_LINE_CODING type data. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING | Call USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function with a buffer that contains the current USB_CDC_LINE_CODING type data. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | Action not required. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |

Based on the type of event, the application should analyze the pData member of the event handler. This data member should be type cast to an event specific data type. The following table shows the event and the data type to use while type casting. Note that the pData member is not required for all events

| CDC Function Driver Event | Related pData type |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE | USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE * |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK * |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE * |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE * |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE * |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | NULL |

The possible CDC Function Driver events are described here with the required application response, event specific data, and likely follow-up function driver event:

[USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING](#)

Application Response: This event occurs when the host issues a SET LINE CODING command. The application must provide a USB_CDC_LINE_CODING data structure to the device layer to receive the line coding data that the host will provide. The application must provide the buffer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_ControlReceive](#) function either in the event handler or in the application after returning from the event handler. The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT](#) event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED](#) event. This indicates that the data was received successfully. The application must either acknowledge or stall the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) or [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag, respectively.

[USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING](#)

Application Response: This event occurs when the host issues a GET LINE CODING command. The application must provide a USB_CDC_LINE_CODING data structure to the device layer that contains the line coding data to be provided to the Host. The application must provide the buffer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) function either in the event handler or in the application after returning from the event handler. The size of the buffer is indicated by the length parameter. The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT](#) event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT event. This indicates that the data was sent to the Host successfully.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE

Application Response: This event occurs when the host issues a SET CONTROL LINE STATE command. The application can then use the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function to indicate acceptance or rejection of the command. The [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function can be called from the event handler or in the application after returning from the event handler.

Event Specific Data (pData): The application must interpret the pData parameter as a pointer to a [USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE](#) data type that contains the control line state data.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK

Application Response: This event occurs when the Host issues a SEND BREAK command. The application can then use the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function to indicate acceptance or rejection of the command. The [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function can be called from the event handler or in the application after returning from the event handler.

Event Specific Data (pData): The application must interpret the pData parameter as a pointer to a [uint16_t](#) data type that contains the break duration data.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE

Application Response: This event occurs when a write operation scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData member in the event handler will point to the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) data type.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE

Application Response: This event occurs when a read operation scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData member in the event handler will point to the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE](#) type.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE

Application Response: This event occurs when a serial state notification send scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData member in the event handler will point to the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE](#) data type.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT

Application Response: This event occurs when the data stage of a control read transfer has completed in response to the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) function (in the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING](#) event). The application must acknowledge the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED

Application Response: This event occurs when the data stage of a control write transfer has completed in response to the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function (in the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING](#) event).

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData parameter will be NULL.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

CDC Function Driver Event Handling

The following code shows an event handling scheme example. The application always returns from the event handler with a `USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE` value.

```
// This code example shows all CDC Function Driver possible events
// and a possible scheme for handling these events. In this case
// event responses are not deferred.

uint16_t * breakData;
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING lineCoding;
USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE * controlLineStateData

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE USBDeviceCDCEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT event,
    void * data,
    uintptr_t userData
)
{
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING:
            // In this case, the application should read the line coding
            // data that is sent by the host.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, &lineCoding,
                                      sizeof(USB_CDC_LINE_CODING));
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING:
            // In this case, the application should send the line coding
            // data to the host.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, &lineCoding,
                                  sizeof(USB_DEVICE_CDC_LINE_CODING));
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE:
            // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
            // USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE pointer type. The application
            // acknowledges the parameters by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function with the
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK option.

            controlLineStateData = (USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE *)pData;
            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK:
            // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a uint16_t
            // pointer type to the break duration. The application
            // acknowledges the parameters by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function with the
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK option.

            breakDuration = (USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK *)pData;
            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

            break;
    }
}
```

```

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:

    // This event indicates the data send request associated with
    // the latest USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function was
    // completed. The application could use this event to track
    // the completion of the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING
    // request.

    break;
case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:

    // This means that the data stage is complete. The data in
    // setLineCodingData is valid or data in getLineCodingData was
    // sent to the host. The application can now decide whether it
    // supports this data. It is not mandatory to do this in the
    // event handler.

    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

    // This means USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write() operation completed.
    // The pData member will point to a
    // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE type of data.

    break;
case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:

    // This means USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read() operation completed.
    // The pData member will point to a
    // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE type of data.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE:

    // This means USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotification() operation
    // completed. The pData member will point to a
    // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE type of data.

    break;

default:
    break;
}

return(USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

```

Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT](#) enumeration for more details on each event.

Sending Data

Describes how to send data to the CDC Host.

Description

The application may need to send data or serial state notification to the USB CDC Host. This is done by using the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) and [USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend](#) functions, respectively.

Sending Data to the USB Host

The application can send data to the Host by using the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) function. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the write request. The request is completed when the Host has requested the data. The completion of the write transfer is indicated by a [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) event. A write request could

fail if the function driver instance transfer queue is full.

The [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) function also allows the application to send data to the host without ending the transfer. This is done by specifying the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_PENDING](#) flag. The application can use this option when the data to be sent is not readily available or when the application is memory constrained. The combination of the transfer flag and the transfer size affects how the function driver sends the data to the host:

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize (the IN endpoint size), and the flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function will append a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to complete the transfer
- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function will not append a ZLP and therefore, will not complete the transfer
- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function schedules (length/maxPacketSize) packets and one packet for the residual data
- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#)
- If size is less than maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function schedules one packet
- If size is less than maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#)

The following code shows a set of examples of various conditions attempting to send data with the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) command.

Example 1

```
// This example assume that the maxPacketSize is 64.
USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[34];

// In this example we want to send 34 bytes only.
writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 34,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);
if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}
```

Example 2

```
-----
// In this example we want to send 64 bytes only.
// This will cause a ZLP to be sent.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[64];

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 64,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);
if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}
```

Example 3

```
-----
// This example will return an error because size is less
// than maxPacketSize and the flag indicates that more
// data is pending.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance;
```

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[64];

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 32,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);
```

Example 4

```
//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 byte transfer.
// The 70 bytes will be sent out in a 64 byte transaction and a 6 byte
// transaction completing the transfer.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[70];

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 70,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
```

Example 5

```
//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 bytes to be sent
// but that we don't end the transfer as more data is coming. 64 bytes
// of the 70 will be sent out and the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE
// with 64 bytes. This indicates that the extra 6 bytes weren't
// sent because it would cause the end of the transfer. Thus the
// user needs to add these 6 bytes back to the buffer for the next group
// of data that needs to be sent out.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[70];

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 70,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event.
```

Sending a Serial State Notification

The application can send a Serial State Notification by using the USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateSend function. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the read request. The request is completed when the Host has requested the data. The completion of the transfer is indicated by a USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE event. The transfer request could fail if the function driver transfer queue is full. The following code shows an example of how this can be done.

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_DATA notificationData;

// This application function could possibly update the notificationData
// data structure.

APP_UpdateNotificationData(&notificationData);

// Now send the updated notification data to the host.
```

```

result = USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateDataSend(instanceIndex, &transferHandle,
                                            &notificationData);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != result)
{
    // Error handling here
}

```

Receiving Data

Describes how the CDC device can read data from the Host.

Description

The application can receive data from the host by using the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read](#) function. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the read request. The request is completed when the Host sends the required amount or less than required amount of data. The application must make sure that it allocates a buffer size that is at least the size or a multiple of the receive endpoint size. The return value of the function indicates the success of the request. A read request could fail if the function driver transfer queue is full. The completion of the read transfer is indicated by the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event. The request completes based on the amount of the data that was requested and size of the transaction initiated by the Host:

- If the size parameter is not a multiple of maxPacketSize or is '0', the function returns [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#) in transferHandle and returns [USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID](#) as a return value
- If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the Host sends less than maxPacketSize data in any transaction, the transfer completes and the function driver will issue a [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event along with the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) data structure
- If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the Host sends maxPacketSize amount of data, and total data received does not exceed size, the function driver will wait for the next packet

The following code shows an example of the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read](#) function:

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// driver was opened successfully.
```

```

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT readRequestResult;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_HANDLE instanceHandle;

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read(instanceHandle,
                                       &transferHandle, data, 128);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event.

```

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the CDC Function Driver.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_CDC_H | This is macro _USB_CDC_H. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_CDC_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_CDC_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of CDC instances. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED | Specifies the combined queue size of all CDC instances. |

Description

The application designer must specify the following configuration parameters while using the CDC Function Driver. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the `system_config.h` file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

_USB_CDC_H Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_CDC_H
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_CDC_H`.

_USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

[usb_device_cdc_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_`.

_USB_DEVICE_CDC_H Macro

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_CDC_H
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_DEVICE_CDC_H`.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of CDC instances.

File

[usb_device_cdc_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB device CDC Maximum Number of instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the CDC Function Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two

instances of the CDC Function Driver (to create two COM ports) on one USB Device, the macro should be set to 2. Note that implementing a USB Device that features multiple CDC interfaces requires appropriate USB configuration descriptors.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED Macro

Specifies the combined queue size of all CDC instances.

File

[usb_device_cdc_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED
```

Description

USB device CDC Combined Queue Size

This macro defines the number of entries in all queues in all instances of the CDC function driver. This value can be obtained by adding up the read and write queue sizes of each CDC Function driver instance. In a simple single instance USB CDC device application, that does not require buffer queuing and serial state notification, the USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro can be set to 2. Consider a case with two CDC function driver instances, CDC 1 has a read queue size of 2 and write queue size of 3, CDC 2 has a read queue size of 4 and write queue size of 1, this macro should be set to 10 (2 + 3 + 4 + 1).

Remarks

None.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the CDC Function Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_cdc.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Device CDC Function Driver API. |

Required File(s)



All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_cdc.c | This file implements the CDC Data Interface and Communications interface and should be included in the project if the CDC Device function is desired. |
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_cdc_acm.c | This file implements the CDC-ACM layer and should be included in the project if the CDC Device function is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB CDC Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet | This function registers a event handler for the specified CDC function driver instance. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend | This function schedules a request to send serial state notification to the host. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT | USB Device CDC Function Driver Initialization Data Structure |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK | USB Device CDC Function Driver Send Break Event Data |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT | USB Device CDC Function Driver Events |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device CDC Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Callback Response Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX | USB Device CDC Function Driver Index |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT | USB Device CDC Function Driver USB Device CDC Result enumeration. |

| | | |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS | USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Flags |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device CDC Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device CDC Function Driver Function pointer |
| | USB_CDC_LINESTATE_CARRIER | Bit code information in line state |
| | USB_CDC_LINESTATE_DTR | Bit code information in line state |
| | USB_CDC_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE | Identifies the descriptor types in the CDC. |
| | USB_CDC_INF_PROTOCOL | Identifies the protocol codes. |
| | USB_CDC_INTERFACE_TYPE | Identifies the CDC interface type. |
| | USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION | Identifies the notification codes available for CDC. |
| | USB_CDC_REQUEST | Identifies the CDC specific request codes. |
| | USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR | Identifies the CDC function header type. |
| | USB_CDC_SUBCLASS | Identifies the subclass codes for communication interface. |
| | USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE | This is type USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE. |
| | CS_INTERFACE | This is macro CS_INTERFACE. |
| | USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK. |
| | USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE. |
| | USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION. |
| | USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION. |
| | USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NONE | Identifies the CDC ACM sub-class capabilities. |
| | USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE | Identifies the CDC Interface Class, Subclass and protocol constants. |
| | USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE. |

| | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE. |
| | USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL | This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL. |
| | USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE. |
| | USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC | CDC specific request |
| | USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 0 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_1 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 1 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_2 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 2 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_3 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 3 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_4 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 4 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_5 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 5 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_6 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 6 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_7 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 7 |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB CDC Device Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Functions

[USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet Function](#)

This function registers a event handler for the specified CDC function driver instance.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK - The operation was successful

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance does not exist

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID - The eventHandler parameter is NULL

Description

This function registers a event handler for the specified CDC function driver instance. This function should be called by the client when it receives a SET CONFIGURATION event from the device layer. A event handler must be registered for function driver to

respond to function driver specific commands. If the event handler is not registered, the device layer will stall function driver specific commands and the USB device may not function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

This function should be called when the function driver has been initialized as a result of a set configuration.

Example

```
// This code snippet shows an example registering an event handler. Here
// the application specifies the context parameter as a pointer to an
// application object (appObject) that should be associated with this
// instance of the CDC function driver.

// Application states
typedef enum
{
    //Application's state machine's initial state.
    APP_STATE_INIT=0,
    APP_STATE_SERVICE_TASKS,
    APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION,
} APP_STATES;

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

APP_STATES appState;

// Get Line Coding Data
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING getLineCodingData;

// Control Line State
USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE controlLineStateData;

// Set Line Coding Data
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING setLineCodingData;

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT result;

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceCDCEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT event ,
    void* pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    // Event Handling comes here

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING:
            // This means the host wants to know the current line
            // coding. This is a control transfer request. Use the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function to send the data to
            // host.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle,
                &getLineCodingData, sizeof(USB_CDC_LINE_CODING));

        break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING:

            // This means the host wants to set the line coding.
```

```
// This is a control transfer request. Use the
// USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function to receive the
// data from the host

USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle,
    &setLineCodingData, sizeof(USB_CDC_LINE_CODING));

break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE:

    // This means the host is setting the control line state.
    // Read the control line state. We will accept this request
    // for now.
    controlLineStateData.dtr = ((USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE *)pData)->dtr;
    controlLineStateData.carrier = ((USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE *)pData)->carrier;
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:

    // The data stage of the last control transfer is
    // complete. For now we accept all the data

    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:

    // This means the GET LINE CODING function data is valid. We dont
    // do much with this data in this demo.
break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK:

    // This means that the host is requesting that a break of the
    // specified duration be sent.
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
    // This means that the host has sent some data
break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
    // This means that the host has sent some data
break;

default:
    break;
}

return USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}

// This is the application device layer event handler function.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceEventHandler(
{
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
}
{
```

```
USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPacket;
switch(event)
{
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:
        // This event is generated when VBUS is detected. Attach the device
        USB_DEVICE_Attach(usbDeviceHandle);
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:
        // This event is generated when VBUS is removed. Detach the device
        USB_DEVICE_Detach (usbDeviceHandle);
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:
        // This event indicates that Host has set Configuration in the Device.
        // Register CDC Function driver Event Handler.
        USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0,
APP_USBDeviceCDCEventHandler, (uintptr_t)0);
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST:
        // This event indicates a Control transfer setup stage has been completed.
        setupPacket = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)pData;

        // Parse the setup packet and respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(),
        // USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive or USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus().

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:
        // This event indicates that a Control transfer Data has been sent to Host.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED:
        // This event indicates that a Control transfer Data has been received from Host.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED:
        // This event indicates a control transfer was aborted.
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF:
        // This event indicates an SOF is detected on the bus. The
        USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE
        // macro should be defined to get this event.
        break;
    default:
        break;
}

void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    // Check the application's current state.
```

```

switch ( AppState )
{
    // Application's initial state.
    case APP_STATE_INIT:
        // Open the device layer
        usbDeviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,
                                         DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

        if(usbDeviceHandle != USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID)
        {
            // Register a callback with device layer to get event notification
            USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet(usbDeviceHandle,
                                         APP_USBDeviceEventHandler, 0);
            AppState = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION;
        }
        else
        {
            // The Device Layer is not ready to be opened. We should try
            // gain later.
        }
        break;

    case APP_STATE_SERVICE_TASKS:
        break;

        // The default state should never be executed.
    default:
        break;
}
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | Instance of the CDC Function Driver. |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler
    uintptr_t context
);

```

USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read Function

This function requests a data read from the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, void * data, size_t size);

```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK - The read request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - internal request queue is full. The write request could not

be added.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID - The specified transfer size was not a multiple of endpoint size or is 0.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED - The specified instance is not configured yet.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data read from the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is made available by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the **USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** event. The amount of data read and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in the pData parameter of the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the **USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value **USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID**.

If the size parameter is not a multiple of maxPacketSize or is 0, the function returns

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID in transferHandle and returns an error code as a return value. If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the host send less than maxPacketSize data in any transaction, the transfer completes and the function driver will issue a **USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** event along with the **USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA** data structure. If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the host sends maxPacketSize amount of data, and total data received does not exceed size, then the function driver will wait for the next packet.

Remarks

While the using the CDC Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the receive buffer provided to the **USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read** function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the **__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))** attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// driver was opened successfully.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT readRequestResult;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_HANDLE instanceHandle;

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read(instanceHandle,
                                       &transferHandle, data, 128);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device CDC Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the read request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer where read data will be stored. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read
(
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance,
    USB_CDC_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * data,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write Function

This function requests a data write to the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, const void * data, size_t size,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS flags);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK - The write request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID - The specified transfer size and flag parameter are invalid.
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED - The specified instance is not configured yet.
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data write to the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event. The amount of data written and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in writeCompleteData member of the pData parameter in the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

The behavior of the write request depends on the flags and size parameter. If the application intends to send more data in a request, then it should use the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#) flag. If there is no more data to be sent in the request, the application must use the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) flag. This is explained in more detail here:

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function will append a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to complete the transfer.
- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function will not append a ZLP and hence will not complete the transfer.
- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function returns an error code and sets the

transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function fails and return an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- If size is less than maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function schedules one packet.
- If size is less than maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- If size is 0 and the flag is set [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the function driver will schedule a Zero Length Packet. Completion of the write transfer is indicated by the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) event. The amount of data written along with the transfer handle is returned along with the event.

Remarks

While the using the CDC Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the transmit buffer provided to the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Below is a set of examples showing various conditions trying to
// send data with the Write command.
//
// This assumes that driver was opened successfully.
// Assume maxPacketSize is 64.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT writeRequestHandle;
USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instance;

//-----
// In this example we want to send 34 bytes only.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,
                                         &transferHandle, data, 34,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// In this example we want to send 64 bytes only.
// This will cause a ZLP to be sent.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instance,
                                         &transferHandle, data, 64,
                                         USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
```

```

}

//-----
// This example will return an error because size is less
// than maxPacketSize and the flag indicates that more
// data is pending.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instanceHandle,
    &transferHandle, data, 32,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 byte transfer.
// The 70 bytes will be sent out in a 64 byte transaction and a 6 byte
// transaction completing the transfer.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instanceHandle,
    &transferHandle, data, 70,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 bytes and the flag
// is set to data pending. This will result in an error. The size of data
// when the data pending flag is specified should be a multiple of the
// endpoint size.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write(instanceHandle,
    &transferHandle, data, 70,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event.

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device CDC Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the write request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer that contains the data to written. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |
| flags | Flags that indicate whether the transfer should continue or end. Refer to the description for more details. |

Function

```

USB\_DEVICE\_CDC\_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_CDC\_INDEX instance,
    USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_TRANSFER\_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    const void * data,
    size_t size,
    USB\_DEVICE\_CDC\_TRANSFER\_FLAGS flags

```

);

USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend Function

This function schedules a request to send serial state notification to the host.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX
instanceIndex, USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, USB_CDC_SERIAL_STATE *
notificationData);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK - The request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - Internal request queue is full. The request could not be added.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED - The specified instance is not configured yet.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function places a request to send serial state notification data to the host. The function will place the request with the driver, the request will get serviced when the data is requested by the USB host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE event. The amount of data transmitted and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in the serialStateNotificationCompleteData member of pData parameter of the event handler. The transfer handle expires when the event handler for the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE event exits. If the send request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Remarks

While the using the CDC Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the notification data buffer provided to the `USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend` function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured

Example

```
USB_CDC_SERIAL_STATE notificationData;

// This application function could possibly update the notificationData
// data structure.

APP_UpdateNotificationData(&notificationData);

// Now send the updated notification data to the host.

result = USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend
    (instanceIndex, &transferHandle, &notificationData);

if(USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK != result)
{
    // Error handling here. The transferHandle will contain
```

```
// USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID in this case.  
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device CDC Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a output only variable that will contain transfer handle. |
| notificationData | USB_DEVICE_CDC_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION type of notification data to be sent to the host. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend  
(  
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex,  
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,  
    USB_CDC_SERIAL_STATE * notificationData  
)
```

b) Data Types and Constants

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {  
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;  
    size_t length;  
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT status;  
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE,  
USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this <ul style="list-style-type: none">• read or write request |
| size_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was <ul style="list-style-type: none">• read or written |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE and USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE,
USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read or write request |
| size_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read or written |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE and USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE,
USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read or write request |
| size_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read or written |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE and USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT Structure

USB Device CDC Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    size_t queueSizeRead;
    size_t queueSizeWrite;
    size_t queueSizeSerialStateNotification;
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size_t queueSizeRead; | Size of the read queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of the CDC function driver |
| size_t queueSizeWrite; | Size of the write queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of the CDC function driver |
| size_t queueSizeSerialStateNotification; | Size of the serial state notification <ul style="list-style-type: none"> queue size |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

This data structure must be defined for every instance of the CDC function driver. It is passed to the CDC function driver, by the Device Layer, at the time of initialization. The funcDriverInit member of the Device Layer Function Driver registration table entry must point to this data structure for an instance of the CDC function driver.

Remarks

The queue sizes that are specified in this data structure are also affected by the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) configuration macro.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK Structure

USB Device CDC Function Driver Send Break Event Data

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint16_t breakDuration;
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| uint16_t breakDuration; | Duration of break signal |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Send Break Event Data

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT Enumeration

USB Device CDC Function Driver Events

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING | This event occurs when the host issues a SET LINE CODING command. The application must provide a USB_CDC_LINE_CODING data structure to the device layer to receive the line coding data that the host will provide. The application must provide the buffer by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function either in the event handler or in the application, after returning from the event handler function. The pData parameter will be NULL. The application can use the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER DATA RECEIVED event to track completion of the command. |

| | |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING | This event occurs when the host issues a GET LINE CODING command. The application must provide a USB_CDC_LINE_CODING data structure to the device layer that contains the line coding data to be provided to the host. The application must provide the buffer by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function either in the event handler or in the application, after returning from the event handler function. The application can use the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT event to track completion of the command. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE | This event occurs when the host issues a SET CONTROL LINE STATE command. The application must interpret the pData parameter as USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE pointer type. This data structure contains the control line state data. The application can then use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to indicate acceptance or rejection of the command. The USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function can be called from the event handler or in the application, after returning from the event handler. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK | This event occurs when the host issues a SEND BREAK command. The application must interpret the pData parameter as a USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK pointer type. This data structure contains the break duration data. The application can then use the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function to indicate acceptance or rejection of the command. The USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function can be called from the event handler or in the application, after returning from the event handler. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a write operation scheduled by calling the USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write function has completed. The pData parameter should be interpreted as a USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE pointer type. This will contain the transfer handle associated with the completed write transfer and the amount of data written. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a read operation scheduled by calling the USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read function has completed. The pData parameter should be interpreted as a USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE pointer type. This will contain the transfer handle associated with the completed read transfer and the amount of data read. |

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a serial state notification scheduled using the USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend function, was sent to the host. The pData parameter should be interpreted as a USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE pointer type and will contain the transfer handle associated with the completed send transfer and the amount of data sent. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | This event occurs when the data stage of a control read transfer has completed. This event would occur after the application uses the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to respond to the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING event. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | This event occurs when the data stage of a control write transfer has completed. This would occur after the application would respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING_EVENT and the data has been received. The application should respond to this event by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag to acknowledge the received data or the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag to reject it and stall the control transfer |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED | This event occurs when a control transfer that this instance of CDC function driver responded to was aborted by the host. The application can use this event to reset its CDC function driver related control transfer state machine |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Events

These events are specific to the USB Device CDC Function Driver instance. Each event description contains details about the parameters passed with event. The contents of pData depends on the generated event.

Events associated with the CDC Function Driver Specific Control Transfers require application response. The application should respond to these events by using the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) functions.

Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) will stall the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is not supported. Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) will complete the status stage of the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is supported

The following code snippet shows an example of a possible event handling scheme.

```
// This code example shows all CDC Function Driver events
// and a possible scheme for handling these events. In this example
// event responses are not deferred. usbDeviceHandle is obtained while
// opening the USB Device Layer through the USB_DEVICE_Open function.
```

```
uint16_t * breakData;
USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING lineCoding;
USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE * controlLineStateData;

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE USBDeviceCDCEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT event,
```

```
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t userData
)
{
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING:

            // In this case, the application should read the line coding
            // data that is sent by the host. The application must use the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to receive the
            // USB_CDC_LINE_CODING type of data.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(usbDeviceHandle, &lineCoding,
sizeof(USB_CDC_LINE_CODING));
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING:

            // In this case, the application should send the line coding
            // data to the host. The application must send the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to send the data.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, &lineCoding, sizeof(USB_CDC_LINE_CODING));
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE:

            // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
            // USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE pointer type. The application
            // acknowledges the parameters by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with the
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK option.

            controlLineStateData = (USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE *)pData;
            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SEND_BREAK:

            // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a uint16_t
            // pointer type to the break duration. The application
            // acknowledges the parameters by calling the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function with the
            // USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK option.

            breakDuration = (uint16_t *)pData;
            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:

            // This event indicates the data send request associated with
            // the latest USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function was
            // completed. The application could use this event to track
            // the completion of the USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_GET_LINE_CODING
            // request.

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED:

            // This event indicates the data that was requested using the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function is available for the
            // application to peruse. The application could use this event
            // to track the completion of the
            // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SET_LINE_CODING_EVENT event. The
    }
}
```

```

// application can then either accept the line coding data (as
// shown here) or decline it by using the
// USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag in the
// USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function.

USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(usbDeviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

    // This event indicates that a CDC Write Transfer request has
    // completed. pData should be interpreted as a
    // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE pointer type. This
    // contains the transfer handle of the write transfer that
    // completed and amount of data that was written.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:

    // This event indicates that a CDC Read Transfer request has
    // completed. pData should be interpreted as a
    // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE pointer type. This
    // contains the transfer handle of the read transfer that
    // completed and amount of data that was written.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE:

    // This event indicates that a CDC Serial State Notification
    // Send request has completed. pData should be interpreted as a
    // USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE
    // pointer type. This will contain the transfer handle
    // associated with the send request and the amount of data that
    // was sent.

    break

default:
    break;
}

return(USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

```

Remarks

The USB Device CDC control transfer related events allow the application to defer responses. This allows the application some time to obtain the response data rather than having to respond to the event immediately. Note that a USB host will typically wait for event response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the event and associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such time outs have to be avoided.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Device CDC Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE (* USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX
instanceIndex, USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT event, void * pData, uintptr_t context);

```

Description

USB Device CDC Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Device CDC Function Driver event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a CDC Function Driver events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the CDC Function Driver. The function driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

instanceIndex - Instance index of the CDC Function Driver that generated the event.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be type cast to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

The event handler function executes in the USB interrupt context when the USB Device Stack is configured for interrupt based operation. It is not advisable to call blocking functions or computationally intensive functions in the event handler. Where the response to a control transfer related event requires extended processing, the response to the control transfer should be deferred and the event handler should be allowed to complete execution.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE Type

USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Callback Response Type

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef void USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Handler Response Type

This is the return type of the CDC Function Driver event handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX Type

USB Device CDC Function Driver Index

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX;
```

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Index

This uniquely identifies a CDC Function Driver instance.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT Enumeration

USB Device CDC Function Driver USB Device CDC Result enumeration.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_OK | The operation was successful |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID | The transfer size is invalid. Refer to the description <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • of the read or write function for more details |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL | The transfer queue is full and no new transfers can be <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scheduled |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID | The specified instance is not provisioned in the system |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED | The specified instance is not configured yet |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID | The event handler provided is NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED | Transfer terminated because host halted the endpoint |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST | Transfer terminated by host because of a stall clear |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT_ERROR | General CDC Function driver error |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver USB Device CDC Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Device CDC Function Driver operation results. These values are returned by USB Device CDC Library functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS Enumeration

USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Flags

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING
```

```
}
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE | This flag indicates there is no further data to be sent in this transfer and that the transfer should end. If the size of the transfer is a multiple of the maximum packet size for related endpoint configuration, the function driver will send a zero length packet to indicate end of the transfer to the host. |
| USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING | This flag indicates there is more data to be sent in this transfer. If the size of the transfer is a multiple of the maximum packet size for the related endpoint configuration, the function driver will not send a zero length packet. If the size of the transfer is greater than (but not a multiple of) the maximum packet size, the function driver will only send maximum packet size amount of data. If the size of the transfer is greater than endpoint size but not an exact multiple of endpoint size, only the closest endpoint size multiple bytes of data will be sent. This flag should not be specified if the size of the transfer is less than maximum packet size. |

Description

USB Device CDC Transfer Flags

These flags are used to indicate status of the pending data while sending data to the host by using the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#) function.

Remarks

The relevance of the specified flag depends on the size of the buffer. Refer to the individual flag descriptions for more details.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Handle. A Transfer Handle is owned by the application but its value is modified by the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#), [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read](#) and the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend](#) functions. The transfer handle is valid for the life time of the transfer and expires when the transfer related event had occurred.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE Macro

USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None.

File

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Handler Response None

This is the definition of the CDC Function Driver Event Handler Response Type none.

Remarks

Intentionally defined to be empty.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Device CDC Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition.

File

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device CDC Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle. A Invalid Transfer Handle is returned by the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write](#), [USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read](#) and the [USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend](#) functions when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER Macro

USB Device CDC Function Driver Function pointer

File

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER
```

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Function Pointer

This is the USB Device CDC Function Driver Function pointer. This should registered with the device layer in the function driver registration table.

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_LINESTATE_CARRIER Macro**File**

```
usb_cdc.h
```

C

```
#define USB_CDC_LINESTATE_CARRIER 0
```

Description

Bit code information in line state

USB_CDC_LINESTATE_DTR Macro**File**

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_LINESTATE_DTR 1
```

Description

Bit code information in line state

USB_CDC_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE Enumeration

Identifies the descriptor types in the CDC.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_DESC_CS_INTERFACE = 0x24,
    USB_CDC_DESC_CS_ENDPOINT = 0x25
} USB_CDC_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE;
```

Description

CDC descriptor type.

This enumeration identifies the descriptor types in the CDC.

Remarks

This value goes into the bDescriptorType of CDC functional descriptor.

USB_CDC_INF_PROTOCOL Enumeration

Identifies the protocol codes.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_NO_CLASS_SPECIFIC = 0x00,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_V250 = 0x01,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_PCCA = 0x02,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_PCCA_ANNEX_O = 0x03,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_GSM = 0x04,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_3GPP = 0x05,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_CDMA = 0x06,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_ETH_EMULATION = 0x07,
    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_EXTERNAL = 0xFE,
```

```

    USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_VENDOR_SPECIFIC = 0xFF
} USB_CDC_INF_PROTOCOL;

```

Description

CDC protocol codes

This enumeration identifies the possible protocol codes for CDC.

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_INTERFACE_TYPE Enumeration

Identifies the CDC interface type.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_INTERFACE_DATA = 0,
    USB_CDC_INTERFACE_NOTIFICATION
} USB_CDC_INTERFACE_TYPE;

```

Description

CDC interface type.

This enumeration identifies the CDC interface type. CDC has one mandatory data interface and an optional notification interface.

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION Enumeration

Identifies the notification codes available for CDC.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_NETWORK_CONNECTION = 0x00,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_RESPONSE_AVAILABLE = 0x01,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_AUX_JACK_HOOK_STATE = 0x08,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_RING_DETECT = 0x09,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_SERIAL_STATE = 0x20,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_CALL_STATE_CHANGE = 0x28,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_LINE_STATE_CHANGE = 0x29,
    USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION_CONNECTION_SPEED_CHANGE = 0x2A
} USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION;

```

Description

CDC notification codes

This enumeration identifies the possible notification codes available for CDC.

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_REQUEST Enumeration

Identifies the CDC specific request codes.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND = 0x00,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_ENCAPSULATED_RESPONSE = 0x01,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_COMM_FEATURE = 0x02,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_COMM_FEATURE = 0x03,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLEAR_COMM_FEATURE = 0x04,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_AUX_LINE_STATE = 0x10,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_HOOK_STATE = 0x11,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_PULSE_SETUP = 0x12,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SEND_PULSE = 0x13,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_PULSE_TIME = 0x14,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_RING_AUX_JACK = 0x15,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_LINE_CODING = 0x20,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_LINE_CODING = 0x21,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE = 0x22,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SEND_BREAK = 0x23,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_RINGER_PARMS = 0x30,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_RINGER_PARMS = 0x31,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_OPERATIONAL_PARMS = 0x32,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_OPERATIONAL_PARMS = 0x33,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_LINE_PARMS = 0x34,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_LINE_PARMS = 0x35,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_DIAL_DIGITS = 0x36,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_UNIT_PARAMETER = 0x37,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_UNIT_PARAMETER = 0x38,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLEAR_UNIT_PARAMETER = 0x39,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_PROFILE = 0x3A,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_ETHERNET_MULTICAST_FILTERS = 0x40,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_ETHERNET_POWER_MANAGEMENT_FILTER = 0x41,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_ETHERNET_POWER_MANAGEMENT_FILTER = 0x42,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_ETHERNET_PACKET_FILTER = 0x43,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_ETHERNET_STATISTIC = 0x44,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_ATM_DATA_FORMAT = 0x50,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_ATM_DEVICE_STATISTICS = 0x51,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_SET_ATM_DEFAULT_VC = 0x52,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_GET_ATM_VC_STATISTICS = 0x53,
    USB_CDC_REQUEST_NONE = 0xFF
} USB_CDC_REQUEST;

```

Description

CDC request codes

This enumeration identifies the possible CDC specific request codes.

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR Enumeration

Identifies the CDC function header type.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_HEADER = 0x00,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_CALL_MANAGEMENT = 0x01,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MANAGEMENT = 0x02,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DIRECT_LINE = 0x03,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_TELEPHONE_RINGER = 0x04,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_TELEPHONE_CALL_AND_LINE_STATE_REPORTING = 0x05,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_UNION = 0x06,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_COUNTRY_SELECT = 0x07,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_TELEPHONE_OPERATIONAL_MODES = 0x08,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_USB_TERMINAL = 0x09,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_NETWORK_CHANNEL_TERMINAL = 0x0A,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_PROTOCOL_UNIT = 0x0B,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_EXTENSION_UNIT = 0x0C,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_MULTI_CHANNEL_MANAGEMENT = 0x0D,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_CAPI_CONTROL = 0x0E,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_ETHERNET_NETWORKING = 0x0F,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_ATM_NETWORKING = 0x10,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_WIRELESS_HANDSET = 0x11,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE = 0x12,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_MDLM_DETAIL = 0x13,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DEVICE_MANAGEMENT = 0x14,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_OBEX = 0x15,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_COMMAND_SET = 0x16,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_COMMAND_SET_DETAIL = 0x17,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_TELEPHONE_CONTROL = 0x18,
    USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_OBEX_SERVICE_IDENTIFY = 0x19
} USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR;

```

Description

CDC function header type.

This enumeration identifies the CDC function header type.

Remarks

This value goes into the bDescriptorSubtype of CDC functional descriptor.

USB_CDC_SUBCLASS Enumeration

Identifies the subclass codes for communication interface.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_DIRECT_LINE_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x01,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x02,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x03,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x04,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CAPI_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x05,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_ETH_NW_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x06,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_ATM_NW_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x07,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_WL_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x08,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_DEV_MANAGEMENT_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x09,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_MOBILE_DL_CONTROL_MODEL = 0x0A,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_OBEX = 0x0B,
    USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_ETH_EMULATION_MODEL = 0x0C
}

```

```
} USB_CDC_SUBCLASS;
```

Description

CDC Communication interface subclass codes

This enumeration identifies the possible subclass codes for CDC communication interface

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE Type

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef uint8_t USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE;
```

Description

This is type USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE.

CS_INTERFACE Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define CS_INTERFACE 0x24
```

Description

This is macro CS_INTERFACE.

USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK ( 1 << 2 )
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK.

USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE ( 1 << 0 )
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE.

USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION ( 1 << 1 )
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION.

USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION ( 1 << 3 )
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION.

USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NONE Macro

Identifies the CDC ACM sub-class capabilities.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NONE ( 0 )
```

Description

CDC ACM capabilities.

This enumeration identifies the CDC ACM sub-class capabilities.

Remarks

This value goes into the bDescriptorSubtype of CDC functional descriptor.

USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE Macro

Identifies the CDC Interface Class, Subclass and protocol constants.

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE 0x02
```

Description

CDC Interface Class Subclass and Protocol constants.

These constants identify the CDC Interface Class, Subclass and protocol constants.

Remarks

None.

USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE 0x02
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE.

USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE 0x0A
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE.

USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL 0x00
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL.

USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE Macro

File

[usb_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE 0x00
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE.

USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC Macro**File**[usb_cdc.h](#)**C**

```
#define USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC 0x20
```

Description

CDC specific request

USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE Macro**File**[usb_cdc.h](#)**C**

```
#define USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE 0x00
```

Description

This is macro USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE.

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0 Macro**File**[usb_device_cdc.h](#)**C**

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0 0
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 0

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_1 Macro**File**[usb_device_cdc.h](#)**C**

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_1 1
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 1

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_2 Macro**File**[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_2 2
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 2

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_3 Macro**File**

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_3 3
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 3

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_4 Macro**File**

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_4 4
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 4

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_5 Macro**File**

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_5 5
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 5

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_6 Macro**File**

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_6 6
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 6

USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_7 Macro**File**

[usb_device_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_7 7
```

Description

Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 7

Files**Files**

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_cdc.h | USB Device CDC Function Driver Interface |
| usb_cdc.h | USB CDC class definitions |
| usb_device_cdc_config_template.h | USB device CDC Class configuration definitions template |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_device_cdc.h

USB Device CDC Function Driver Interface

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT | USB Device CDC Function Driver Events |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT | USB Device CDC Function Driver USB Device CDC Result enumeration. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS | USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Flags |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet | This function registers a event handler for the specified CDC function driver instance. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend | This function schedules a request to send serial state notification to the host. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device CDC Function Driver Layer. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_CDC_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_CDC_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device CDC Function Driver Function pointer |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 0 |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_1 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 1 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_2 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 2 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_3 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 3 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_4 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 4 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_5 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 5 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_6 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 6 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_7 | Use this to specify CDC Function Driver Instance 7 |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device CDC Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK | USB Device CDC Function Driver Send Break Event Data |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT | USB Device CDC Function Driver Initialization Data Structure |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device CDC Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Event Callback Response Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX | USB Device CDC Function Driver Index |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device CDC Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |

Description

USB Device CDC Function Driver Interface

This file describes the USB Device CDC Function Driver interface. The application should include this file if it needs to use the CDC Function Driver API.

File Name

usb_device_cdc.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_cdc.h

USB CDC class definitions

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| | USB_CDC_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE | Identifies the descriptor types in the CDC. |
| | USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR | Identifies the CDC function header type. |
| | USB_CDC_INF_PROTOCOL | Identifies the protocol codes. |

| | | |
|--|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_CDC_INTERFACE_TYPE | Identifies the CDC interface type. |
| | USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION | Identifies the notification codes available for CDC. |
| | USB_CDC_REQUEST | Identifies the CDC specific request codes. |
| | USB_CDC_SUBCLASS | Identifies the subclass codes for communication interface. |

Macros

| Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| _USB_CDC_H | This is macro _USB_CDC_H. |
| CS_INTERFACE | This is macro CS_INTERFACE. |
| USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_BREAK. |
| USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE. |
| USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION. |
| USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION | This is macro USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION. |
| USB_CDC_ACM_SUPPORT_NONE | Identifies the CDC ACM sub-class capabilities. |
| USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE | Identifies the CDC Interface Class, Subclass and protocol constants. |
| USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE. |
| USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE. |
| USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL | This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL. |
| USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE. |
| USB_CDC_LINESTATE_CARRIER | Bit code information in line state |
| USB_CDC_LINESTATE_DTR | Bit code information in line state |
| USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC | CDC specific request |
| USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE | This is macro USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE. |

Types

| Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE | This is type USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE. |

Description

USB CDC class definitions

This file describes the CDC class specific definitions. This file is included by [usb_device_cdc.h](#) and [usb_host_cdc.h](#) header files. The application can include this file if it needs to use any USB CDC Class definitions.

File Name

usb_cdc.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_device_cdc_config_template.h

USB device CDC Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of CDC instances. |
| | USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED | Specifies the combined queue size of all CDC instances. |

Description

USB Device CDC Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the CDC Function Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name

usb_device_cdc_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB HID Device Library

This section describes the USB HID Device Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB Human Interface Device (HID) Device Library.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Human Interface Device (HID) Device Library (also referred to as the HID Function Driver or Library) provides a high-level abstraction of the Human Interface Device (HID) class under the Universal Serial Bus (USB) communication with a convenient C language interface. This library supports revision 1.11 of the USB HID specification released by the USB Implementers forum. This library is part of the MPLAB Harmony USB Device stack.

The USB HID Device Class supports devices that are used by humans to control the operation of computer systems. The HID class of devices include a wide variety of human interface, data indicator, and data feedback devices with various types of output directed to the end user. Some common examples of HID class devices include:

- Keyboards
- Pointing devices such as a standard mouse, joysticks, and trackballs
- Front-panel controls like knobs, switches, buttons, and sliders
- Controls found on telephony, gaming or simulation devices such as steering wheels, rudder pedals, and dial pads
- Data devices such as bar-code scanners, thermometers, analyzers

The USB HID Device Library offers services to the application to interact and respond to the host requests. Additional information about the HID class can be obtained from the HID specification available from the USB Implementers Forum at: www.usbif.org.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the HID Function Driver and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Provides an architectural overview of the USB HID Function Driver.

Description

The HID Function Driver offers services to a USB HID device to communicate with the host by abstracting the HID specification details. It must be used along with the USB Device Layer and USB Controller Driver to communicate with the USB Host. Figure 1 shows a block diagram of the MPLAB Harmony USB Architecture and where the HID Function Driver is placed.

Figure 1: HID Function Driver

The HID Function Driver together with USB Device Layer and the USB Controller Driver forms the basic library entity through which a HID device can communicate with the USB Host. The USB Controller Driver takes the responsibility of managing the USB peripheral on the device. The USB Device Layer handles the device enumeration, etc. The USB Device layer forwards all HID-specific control transfers to the HID Function Driver. The HID Function Driver interprets the control transfers and requests application's intervention through event handlers and a well-defined set of API functions. The application must register a event handler with the HID Function Driver in the Device Layer Set Configuration Event. While the application must respond to the HID Function Driver events, it can do this either in the HID Function Driver event handler or after the event handler routine has returned. The application interacts with HID Function Driver routines to send and receive HID reports over the USB.

Figure 2 shows the architecture of the HID Function Driver. The HID Function Driver maintains the state of each instance. It receives HID class-specific control transfers from the USB Device Layer. Class-specific control transfers that require application response are forwarded to the application as function driver events. The application responds to these class specific control transfer event by directly calling Device Layer control transfer routines. Depending on the type of device, the HID Function Driver can use the control endpoint and/or interrupt endpoints for data transfers. The USB HID Device Driver exchanges data with the Host through data objects called reports. The report data format is described by the HID report descriptor, which is provided to the Host when requested. Refer to the HID specification available from www.usb.org for more details on the USB HID Device class and how report descriptors can be created. The HID Function Driver allows report descriptors to be specified for every instance. This allow the application to implement a composite HID device.

Figure 2: Architecture of the HID Function Driver

Library Overview

The USB HID Device Library mainly interacts with the system, its clients and function drivers, as shown in the [Abstraction Model](#).

The library interface routines are divided into sub-sections, which address one of the blocks or the overall operation of the USB HID Device Library.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Functions | Provides event handler, report send/receive, and transfer cancellation functions. |

How the Library Works

Library Initialization

Describes how the HID Function Driver is initialized.

Description

The HID Function Driver instance for a USB device configuration is initialized by the Device Layer when the configuration is set by the Host. This process does not require application intervention. Each instance of the HID Function be registered with the Device Layer through the [Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table](#). The HID function driver requires a initialization data structure that contains details about the report descriptor and the reports send/receive queue size associated with the specific instance of the HID Function Driver. The funcDriver member of the registration entry must be set to

USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER. This object is a global object provided by the HID Function Driver and points to the HID Function Driver - Device Layer interface functions, which are required by the Device Layer. The following code shows an example of how a HID Function Driver instance (implementing a USB HID Mouse) can be registered with the Device Layer.

```
/* This code shows an example of registering a HID function driver  
 * with the Device Layer. While registering the function driver, an initialization  
 * data structure must be specified. In this example, hidInit is the HID function  
 * driver initialization data structure. */
```

```

/* This hid_rpt01 report descriptor describes a 3 button 2
 * axis mouse pointing device */
const uint8_t hid_rpt01[] =
{
    0x06, 0x00, 0xFF,      // Usage Page = 0xFF00 (Vendor Defined Page 1)
    0x09, 0x01,             // Usage (Vendor Usage 1)
    0xA1, 0x01,             // Collection (Application)
    0x19, 0x01,             // Usage Minimum
    0x29, 0x40,             // Usage Maximum      //64 input usages total (0x01 to 0x40)
    0x15, 0x01,             // Logical Minimum (data bytes in the report may have minimum value =
0x00)
    0x25, 0x40,             // Logical Maximum (data bytes in the report may have maximum value =
0x00FF = unsigned 255)
    0x75, 0x08,             // Report Size: 8-bit field size
    0x95, 0x40,             // Report Count: Make sixty-four 8-bit fields (the next time the
parser hits an "Input", "Output",
                           // or "Feature" item)
    0x81, 0x00,             // Input (Data, Array, Abs): Instantiates input packet fields based on
the previous report size,
                           // count, logical min/max, and usage.
    0x19, 0x01,             // Usage Minimum
    0x29, 0x40,             // Usage Maximum      //64 output usages total (0x01 to 0x40)
    0x91, 0x00,             // Output (Data, Array, Abs): Instantiates output packet fields.  Uses
same report size and
                           // count as "Input" fields, since nothing new or different was
specified to the parser since
                           // the "Input" item.
    0xC0                   // End Collection
};

/* HID Function Driver Initialization data structure. This
 * contains the size of the report descriptor and a pointer
 * to the report descriptor. If there are multiple HID instances
 * each with different report descriptors, multiple such data
 * structures may be needed */

USB_DEVICE_HID_INITIALIZATION hidInit =
{
    sizeof(hid_rpt01), // Size of the report
    (uint8_t *)&hid_rpt01 // Pointer to the report
    1, // Send queue size is 1. We will not queue up reports.
    0 // Receive queue size 0. We will not receive reports.
};

/* The HID function driver instance is now registered with
 * device layer through the function driver registration
 * table. */

const USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
}

```

```

    .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH,           // Supported speed
    .configurationValue = 1,                         // To be initialized for Configuration 1
    .interfaceNumber = 0,                           // Starting interface number
    .numberOfInterfaces = 1,                        // Number of Interfaces
    .funcDriverIndex = 0,                           // Function Driver instance index is 0
    .funcDriverInit = &hidInit,                      // Function Driver Initialization
    .driver = USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER       // Pointer to the function driver - Device
Layer Interface functions
}
};


```

Event Handling

Describes HID Function Driver event handler registration and event handling.

Description

Registering a HID Function Driver Event Handler

While creating a USB HID Device-based application, an event handler must be registered with the Device Layer (the Device Layer Event Handler) and every HID Function Driver instance (HID Function Driver Event Handler). The HID Function Driver event handler receives HID events. This event handler should be registered before the USB Device Layer acknowledges the SET CONFIGURATION request from the USB Host. To ensure this, the event handler should be set in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event that is generated by the device layer. While registering the HID Function Driver event handler, the HID Function Driver allows the application to also pass a data object in the event handler register function. This data object gets associated with the instance of the HID Function Driver and is returned by the driver when a HID Function Driver event occurs. The following code shows an example of how this can be done.

```

/* This a sample Application Device Layer Event Handler
 * Note how the HID Function Driver event handler APP_USBDeviceHIDEEventHandler()
 * is registered in the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED event. The appData
 * object that is passed in the USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet()
 * function will be returned as the userData parameter in the
 * when the APP_USBDeviceHIDEEventHandler() function is invoked */

void APP_USBDeviceEventCallBack ( USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
                                  void * eventData, uintptr_t context )
{
    uint8_t * configurationValue;
    switch ( event )
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED:

            // USB device is reset or device is deconfigured.
            // This means that USB device layer is about to deinitialize
            // all function drivers.

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:

            /* check the configuration */
            configurationValue = (uint8_t*)eventData;
            if ( *configurationValue == 1 )
            {

                /* Register the HID Device application event handler here.
                 * Note how the appData object pointer is passed as the
                 * user data */

                USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0,
                                              APP_USBDeviceHIDEEventHandler, (uintptr_t)&appData);

                /* mark that set configuration is complete */
                appData.isConfigured = true;
            }
    }
}

```

```

    }
    break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ATTACHED:
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DETACHED:
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:
    default:
        break;
}
}

```

The HID Function Driver event handler executes in an interrupt context when the device stack is configured for Interrupt mode.

In Polled mode, the event handler is invoked in the context of the SYS_Tasks function. The application should not call computationally intensive functions, blocking functions, functions that are not interrupt safe, or functions that poll on hardware conditions from the event handler. Doing so will affect the ability of the USB device stack to respond to USB events and could potentially make the USB device non-compliant.

HID Function Driver Events:

The HID Function Driver generates events to which the application must respond. Some of these events are control requests communicated through control transfers. The application must therefore complete the control transfer. Based on the generated event, the application may be required to:

- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) function, which completes the data stage of a Control Read Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function, which provisions the data stage of a Control Write Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function which completes the handshake stage of the Control Transfer. The application can either STALL or Acknowledge the handshake stage via the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus](#) function.

The following table shows the HID Function Driver control transfer related events and the required application control transfer action.

| HID Function Driver Control Transfer Event | Required Application Action |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT | Call USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function with a buffer containing the requested report. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT | Call USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function with a buffer to receive the report. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT | Call the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function with the pointer to the current USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE type data. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE | Call the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to send the current idle rate. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_SET_DESCRIPTOR | Call the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function with a buffer to receive the report. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | No action required. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED | Acknowledge or stall using the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED | No action required. |

The application can respond to HID Function Driver control transfer-related events in the function driver event handler. In a case where the data required for the response is not immediately available, the application can respond to the control transfer events after returning from the event handler. This defers the response to the control transfer event. However, please note that a USB host will typically wait for control transfer response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the transfer and

associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such timeouts have to be avoided.

The application should analyze the pData member of the event handler and check for event specific data. The following table shows the pData parameter data type for each HID function driver event.

| Event Type | pData Parameter Data Type |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE | uint8_t* |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL | USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_PROTOCOL | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED * |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED | NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_ABORTED | NULL |

The possible HID Function Driver events are described here along with the required application response, event specific data and likely follow up function driver event:

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT

Application Response: This event is generated when the USB HID Host is requesting a report over the control interface. The application must provide the report by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlSend](#) function, either in the event handler, or in the application (after event handler function has exited). The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT](#) event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data (eventData): The application must interpret the pData parameter as a pointer to a

[USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT](#) data type, which contains details about the requested report.

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the

[USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT](#) event. This indicates that the data was sent to the Host successfully. The application must acknowledge the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT

Application Response: This event is generated when the USB HID Host wants to send a report over the control interface. The application must provide a buffer to receive the report by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlReceive](#) function either in the event handler or in the application (after the event handler function has exited). The application can use the [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED](#) event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data (eventData): The application must interpret the pData parameter as a pointer to a

[USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT](#) data type, which contains details about the report that the Host intends to send.

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the

[USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED](#) event. This indicates that the data was received successfully. The application must either acknowledge or stall the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) or [USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag, respectively.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE

Application Response: This event is generated when the USB HID Host wants to read the current idle rate for the specified report. The application must provide the idle rate through the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlSend` function, either in the event handler, or in the application (after the event handler function has exited). The application must use the `controlTransferHandle` parameter provided in the event while calling the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlSend` function. The application can use the `USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT` event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data (eventData): The application must interpret the `pData` parameter as a pointer to a `uint8_t` data type, which contains a report ID of the report for which the idle rate is requested.

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the

`USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT` event. This indicates that the data was sent to the Host successfully. The application must acknowledge the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus` function with the `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK` flag.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE

Application Response: This event is generated when the USB HID Host sends a Set Idle request to the device. The application must inspect the `eventData` and determine if the idle rate is to be supported. The application must either acknowledge (if the idle rate is supported) or stall the handshake stage of the control transfer (if the idle rate is not supported) by calling the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus` function with the `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK` or `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR` flag, respectively.

Event Specific Data (eventData): The application must interpret the `pData` parameter as a pointer to a `USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE` data type that contains details about the report ID and the idle duration.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL

Application Response: This event is generated when the USB HID Host sends a Set Protocol request to the device . The application must inspect the `eventData` and determine if the protocol is to be supported. The application must either acknowledge (if the protocol is supported) or stall the handshake stage of the control transfer (if the protocol is not supported) by calling the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus` function with `SB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK` or `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR` flag, respectively.

Event Specific Data (eventData): The application must interpret the `pData` parameter as a pointer to a `USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE` data type that contains details about the protocol to be set.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_PROTOCOL

Application Response: This event is generated when the USB HID Host issues a Get Protocol Request. The application must provide the current protocol through the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlSend` function either in the event handler or in the application (after the event handler has exited). The application can use the `USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT` event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data (eventData): None.

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the `USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT` event. This indicates that the data was sent to the host successfully. The application must acknowledge the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus` function with the `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK` flag.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR

Application Response: This event is generated when the HID Host issues a Set Descriptor request. The application must provide a buffer to receive the descriptor through the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlReceive` function, either in the event handler, or in the application (after the event handler has exited). The application can use the `USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED` event to track completion of the command.

Event Specific Data: None

Likely Follow-up event: This event will likely be followed by the `USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED` event. This indicates that the data was received successfully. The application must either acknowledge or stall the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus` function with `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK` or the `USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR` flag, respectively.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT

Application Response: This event occurs when a report send operation scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The application must interpret the pData parameter as a pointer to a [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT](#) data type that contains details about the report that was sent.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT RECEIVED

Application Response: This event occurs when a report receive operation scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The application must interpret the pData parameter as a pointer to a [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED](#) data type that contains details about the report that was received.

Likely Follow-up event: None

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT

Application Response: This event occurs when the data stage of a control read transfer has completed in response to the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlSend](#) function. The application must acknowledge the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag.

Event Specific Data (pData): None.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED

Application Response: This event occurs when the data stage of a control write transfer has completed in response to the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlReceive](#) function. The application must either acknowledge or stall the handshake stage of the control transfer by calling [USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) or [USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag, respectively.

Event Specific Data (pData): None

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED

Application Response: This event occurs when the a control transfer request is aborted by the Host. The application can use this event to update its HID class-specific control transfer state machine.

Event Specific Data (pData): None

Likely Follow-up event: None. The following code shows an example HID Function Driver event handling scheme.

The following code shows an example HID Function Driver event handling scheme.

```
// This code example shows all USB HID Driver events and a possible
// scheme for handling these events. In this example event responses are not
// deferred.
```

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE USB_AppHIDEEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t userData
)
{
    uint8_t currentIdleRate;
    uint8_t someHIDReport[128];
    uint8_t someHIDDescriptor[128];
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE         usbDeviceHandle;
    USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE * currentProtocol;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT      * getReportEventData;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE        * setIdleEventData;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR   * setDescriptorEventData;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT       * setReportEventData;
```

```
switch(event)
{
    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT:
        // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
        // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT pointer. The application
        // must send the requested report by using the
        // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function.
        getReportEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT *)pData;
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, someHIDReport,
getReportEventData->reportLength);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_PROTOCOL:

        // In this case, pData will be NULL. The application
        // must send the current protocol to the host by using
        // the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function.
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, &currentProtocol,
sizeof(USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE));

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE:

        // In this case, pData will be a uint8_t pointer type to the
        // report ID for which the idle rate is being requested. The
        // application must send the current idle rate to the host by
        // using the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function.
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, &currentIdleRate, 1);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT:

        // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
        // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT type pointer. The
        // application can analyze the request and then obtain the
        // report by using the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function.
        setReportEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT *)pData;
        USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(deviceHandle, someHIDReport,
setReportEventData->reportLength);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL:

        // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
        // USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE type pointer. The application can
        // analyze the data and decide to stall or accept the setting.
        // This shows an example of accepting the protocol setting.
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(deviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE:

        // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
        // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE type pointer. The
        // application can analyze the data and decide to stall
        // or accept the setting. This shows an example of accepting
        // the protocol setting.
        setIdleEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE *)pData;
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(deviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
}
```

```
        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_DESCRIPTOR:
        // In this case, the pData should be interpreted as a
        // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR type pointer. The
        // application can analyze the request and then obtain the
        // descriptor by using the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function.
        setDescriptorEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR *)pData;
        USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(deviceHandle, someHIDReport,
setReportEventData->reportLength);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED:
        // In this case, control transfer data was received. The
        // application can inspect that data and then stall the
        // handshake stage of the control transfer or accept it
        // (as shown here).
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(deviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:
        // This means that control transfer data was sent. The
        // application would typically acknowledge the handshake
        // stage of the control transfer.

        USB_DEVICE_HID_ControlStatus(instanceIndex, controlTransferHandle,
            USB_DEVICE_HID_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED:
        // This means that control transfer data was sent. The
        // application would typically acknowledge the handshake
        // stage of the control transfer.

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT RECEIVED:
        // This means a HID report receive request has completed.
        // The pData member should be interpreted as a
        // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT RECEIVED pointer type.

        break;

    case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT:
        // This means a HID report send request has completed.
        // The pData member should be interpreted as a
        // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT pointer type.

        break;
    }

    return(USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}
```

Sending a Report

Describes how to send a report.

Description

The USB HID Device sends data to the USB HID Host as reports. The USB HID Device application should use the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend](#) function to send the report. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the read request. The request is completed when the Host has requested the data. A report send request could fail if the driver instance transfer queue is full. The completion of the write transfer is indicated by a [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT](#) event. The transfer handle and the amount of data sent is returned in the reportSent member of the eventData data structure along with the event.

The following code shows an example of how a USB HID Mouse application sends a report to the host.

```
/* In this code example, the application uses the
* USB_HID_MOUSE_ReportCreate to create the mouse report
* and then uses the USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend() function
* to send the report */

USB_HID_MOUSE_ReportCreate(appData.xCoordinate, appData.yCoordinate,
                           appData.mouseButton, &appData.mouseReport);

/* Send the mouse report. */
USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend(appData.hidInstance,
                         &appData.reportTransferHandle, (uint8_t*)&appData.mouseReport,
                         sizeof(USB_HID_MOUSE_REPORT));
```

Receiving a Report

Describes how to receive a report.

Description

The application can receive a report from the Host by using the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive](#) function. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the read request. The request is completed when the Host sends the report. The application must make sure that it allocates a buffer size that is at least the size of the report. The return value of the function indicates the success of the request. A read request could fail if the driver transfer queue is full. The completion of the read transfer is indicated by a [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED](#) event. The reportReceived member of the eventData data structure contains details about the received report. The following code shows an example of how a USB HID Keyboard can schedule a receive report operation to get the keyboard LED status.

```
/* The following code shows how the
* USB HID Keyboard application schedules a
* receive report operation to receive the
* keyboard output report from the host. This
* report contains the keyboard LED status. The
* size of the report is 1 byte */

result = USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive(appData.hidInstance,
                                      &appData.receiveTransferHandle,
                                      (uint8_t *)&appData.keyboardOutputReport,1);

if(USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK != result)
{
    /* Do error handling here */
}
```

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the HID Function Driver.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of HID instances. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMINED | DOM-IGONORE-BEGIN |

Description

The following configuration parameters must be defined while using the HID Function Driver. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the `system_config.h` file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of HID instances.

File

[usb_device_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Device HID Maximum Number of Instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the HID Function Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two instances of the HID Function Driver (to create composite device) on one USB Device, the macro should be set to 2. Note that implementing a USB Device that features multiple HID interfaces requires appropriate USB configuration descriptors.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMINED Macro

File

[usb_device_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMINED
```

Description

DOM-IGNORE-BEGIN

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the HID Function Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using `#include`) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_hid.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Device HID Function Driver API. |

Required File(s)



MHC All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must *always* be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_hid.c | This file implements the HID Function driver interface and should be included in the project if the HID Device function is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB HID Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet | This function registers a event handler for the specified HID function driver instance. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive | This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to receive a report from host to device. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend | This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to send a report from device to host. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel | This function cancels a scheduled HID Device data transfer. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT | USB Device HID Function Driver Events |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE | USB Device HID Get Idle Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT | USB Device HID Get Report Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED | USB Device HID Report Received Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT | USB Device HID Report Sent Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE | USB Device HID Set Idle Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT | USB Device HID Set Report Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL | USB Device HID Set Protocol Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX | USB device HID Function Driver Index. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device HID Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device HID Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device HID Function Driver Event Callback Response Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT | USB Device HID Function Driver USB Device HID Result enumeration. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device HID Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device HID Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

| | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INIT | USB Device HID Function Driver Initialization Data Structure |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER | This is a pointer to a group of HID Function Driver callback function pointers. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 | USB Device HID Function Driver Index Constants |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Device HID library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Functions

[USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet Function](#)

This function registers a event handler for the specified HID function driver instance.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK - The operation was successful

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance does not exist.

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID - The eventHandler parameter is NULL

Description

This function registers a event handler for the specified HID function driver instance. This function should be called by the client when it receives a SET CONFIGURATION event from the device layer. A event handler must be registered for function driver to respond to function driver specific commands. If the event handler is not registered, the device layer will stall function driver specific commands and the USB device may not function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

This function should be called when the function driver has been initialized as a result of a set configuration.

Example

```
// This code snippet shows an example registering an event handler. Here
// the application specifies the context parameter as a pointer to an
// application object (appObject) that should be associated with this
// instance of the HID function driver.
```

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT result;
```

```

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceHIDEEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    // Event Handling comes here

    switch(event)
    {
        ...
    }

    return(USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

result = USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet (0, &APP_EventHandler, (uintptr_t) &appObject);

if(USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK != result)
{
    SYS_ASSERT ( false , "Error while registering event handler" );
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | Instance of the HID Function Driver. |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instance
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler
    uintptr_t context
);

```

USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive Function

This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to receive a report from host to device.

File

`usb_device_hid.h`

C

```

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive(USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE * handle, void * buffer, size_t size);

```

Returns

`USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK` - The receive request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.

`USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL` - internal request queue is full. The receive request could not be added.

`USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED` - The specified instance is not configured yet.

`USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID` - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to receive a report from host to device. On completion of the transfer the library generates USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED event to the application. A handle to the request is passed in the transferHandle parameter. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED exits. If the receive request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Remarks

While the using the HID Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the report data buffer provided to the `USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive` function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

USB device layer must be initialized.

Example

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE hidTransferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT result;

// Register APP_HIDEEventHandler function
USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet( USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 ,
                                APP_HIDEEventHandler );

// Prepare report and request HID to send the report.
result = USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive( USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 ,
                                       &hidTransferHandle ,
                                       &appReport[0], sizeof(appReport));

if( result != USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK )
{
    //Handle error.

}

//Implementation of APP_HIDEEventHandler

USB_DEVICE_HIDE_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_HIDEEventHandler
{
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
}
{
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED reportReceivedEventData;
    // Handle HID events here.
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED:
            if( (reportReceivedEventData->reportSize == sizeof(appReport) )
                && reportReceivedEventData->report == &appReport[0])
            {
                // Previous transfer was complete.
            }
            break;
        ....
    }
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instanceIndex | HID instance index. |
| transferHandle | HID transfer handle. |
| buffer | Pointer to buffer where the received report has to be received stored. |
| size | Buffer size. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive
(
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * buffer,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend Function

This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to send a report from device to host.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend(USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE * handle, void * buffer, size_t size);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK - The send request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
 USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - Internal request queue is full. The send request could not be added.
 USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED - The specified instance is not configured yet.
 USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function places a request to send a HID report with the USB Device HID Function Driver Layer. The function places a requests with driver, the request will get serviced when report is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT event. The amount of data sent, a pointer to the report and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in the pData parameter of the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT exits. If the send request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Remarks

While the using the HID Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the report data buffer provided to the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend](#) function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

USB device layer must be initialized.

Example

```

USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE hidTransferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT result;

// Register APP_HIDEEventHandler function
USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet( USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 ,
                                APP_HIDEEventHandler );

// Prepare report and request HID to send the report.
result = USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend( USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 ,
                                    &hidTransferHandle ,
                                    &appReport[0], sizeof(appReport));

if( result != USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK)
{
    //Handle error.

}

//Implementation of APP_HIDEEventHandler

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_HIDEEventHandler
{
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
}
{
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT * reportSentEventData;

    // Handle HID events here.
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT:

            reportSentEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT *)pData;
            if(reportSentEventData->reportSize == sizeof(appReport))
            {
                // The report was sent completely.
            }
            break;

            . . .

    }
    return(USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device HID Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the send request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer containing the report to be sent. |
| size | Size (in bytes) of the report to be sent. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend
(
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,

```

```
void * buffer,
size_t size
)
```

USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel Function

This function cancels a scheduled HID Device data transfer.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel(USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX usbDeviceHandle,
USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK - The transfer will be canceled completely or partially.

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID - Invalid transfer handle

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - Invalid HID instance index

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR - The transfer could not be canceled because it has either completed, the transfer handle is invalid or the last transaction is in progress.

Description

This function cancels a scheduled HID Device data transfer. The transfer could have been scheduled using the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive](#), [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend](#) function. If a transfer is still in the queue and its processing has not started, then the transfer is canceled completely. A transfer that is in progress may or may not get canceled depending on the transaction that is presently in progress. If the last transaction of the transfer is in progress, then the transfer will not be canceled. If it is not the last transaction in progress, the in-progress will be allowed to complete. Pending transactions will be canceled. The first transaction of an in progress transfer cannot be canceled.

Remarks

The buffer specific to the transfer handle should not be released unless the transfer abort event is notified through callback.

Preconditions

The USB Device should be in a configured state.

Example

```
// The following code snippet cancels a HID transfer.

USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT result;

result = USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel(instanceIndex, transferHandle);

if(USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK == result)
{
    // The transfer cancellation was either completely or
    // partially successful.
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| instanceIndex | HID Function Driver instance index. |
| transferHandle | Transfer handle of the transfer to be canceled. |

Function

[USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT](#) [USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel](#)

```
(  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle  
)
```

b) Data Types and Constants

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT Enumeration

USB Device HID Function Driver Events

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_PROTOCOL,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT,  
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED  
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT | This event occurs when the host issues a GET REPORT command. This is a HID class specific control transfer related event. The application must interpret the pData parameter as USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT pointer type. If the report request is supported, the application must send the report to the host by using the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function either in the event handler or after the event handler routine has returned. The application can track the completion of the request by using the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT event. If the report request is not supported, the application must stall the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE | This event occurs when the host issues a GET IDLE command. This is a HID class specific control transfer related event. The pData parameter will be a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE pointer type containing the ID of the report for which the idle parameter is requested. If the request is supported, the application must send the idle rate to the host by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function. This function can be called either in the event handler or after the event handler routine has returned. The application can track the completion of the request by using the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT event. If the request is not supported, the application must stall the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_PROTOCOL | This event occurs when the host issues a GET PROTOCOL command. This is a HID class specific control transfer related event. The pData parameter will be NULL. If the request is supported, the application must send a USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE data type object, containing the current protocol, to the host by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function. This function can be called either in the event handler or after the event handler routine has returned. The application can track the completion of the request by using the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT event. If the request is not supported, the application must stall the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT | This event occurs when the host issues a SET REPORT command. This is a HID class specific control transfer related event. The application must interpret the pData parameter as a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT pointer type. If the report request is supported, the application must provide a buffer, to receive the report, to the host by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function either in the event handler or after the event handler routine has returned. The application can track the completion of the request by using the USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_RECEIVED event. If the report request is not supported, the application must stall the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE | This event occurs when the host issues a SET IDLE command. This is a HID class specific control transfer related event. The pData parameter will be a pointer type. The application can analyze the idle duration and acknowledge or reject the setting by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function. This function can be called in the event handler or after the event handler exits. If application can reject the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. It can accept the request by calling this function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL | This event occurs when the host issues a SET PROTOCOL command. This is a HID class specific control transfer related event. The pData parameter will be a pointer to a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL data type. If the request is supported, the application must acknowledge the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag. If the request is not supported, the application must stall the request by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with a USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT | This event indicates that USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend function completed a report transfer on interrupt endpoint from host to device. The pData parameter will be a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT type. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT RECEIVED | This event indicates that USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive function completed a report transfer on interrupt endpoint from device to host. The pData parameter will be a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED type |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED | This event occurs when the data stage of a control write transfer has completed. This happens after the application uses the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function to respond to a HID Function Driver Control Transfer Event that requires data to be received from the host. The pData parameter will be NULL. The application should call the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function with the USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK flag if the received data is acceptable or should call this function with USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR flag if the received data needs to be rejected. |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA SENT | This event occurs when the data stage of a control read transfer has completed. This happens after the application uses the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function to respond to a HID Function Driver Control Transfer Event that requires data to be sent to the host. The pData parameter will be NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED | This event occurs when an ongoing control transfer was aborted. The application must stop any pending control transfer related activities. |

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Events

These events are specific to the USB Device HID Function Driver instance. Each event description contains details about the parameters passed with event. The contents of pData depends on the generated event.

Events that are associated with the HID Function Driver Specific Control Transfers require application response. The application should respond to these events by using the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#), [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) and [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) functions.

Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) will stall the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is not supported. Calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with a [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) will complete the status stage of the control transfer request. The application would do this if the control transfer request is supported

The following code snippet shows an example of a possible event handling scheme.

```
// This code example shows all HID Function Driver events and a possible
// scheme for handling these events. In this example event responses are not
// deferred.
```

```
USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE USB_AppHIDEEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX instanceIndex,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t userData
)
{
    uint8_t currentIdleRate;
    uint8_t someHIDReport[128];
    uint8_t someHIDDescriptor[128];
    USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;
    USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE currentProtocol;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_DESCRIPTOR
    USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT
                                * getReportEventData;
                                * setIdleEventData;
                                * setDescriptorEventData;
                                * setReportEventData;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT:

            // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a
            // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT pointer. The application
            // must send the requested report by using the
            // USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function.

            getReportEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT *)pData;
            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, someHIDReport,
getReportEventData->reportLength);

            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_PROTOCOL:

            // In this case, pData will be NULL. The application
            // must send the current protocol to the host by using
            // the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function.

            USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(usbDeviceHandle, &currentProtocol,
sizeof(USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE));
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE:

            // In this case, pData will be a
            // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE pointer type containing the
```

```
// ID of the report for which the idle rate is being requested.  
// The application must send the current idle rate to the host  
// by using the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function.  
  
USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(deviceHandle, &currentIdleRate, 1);  
break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT:  
  
    // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a  
    // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT type pointer. The  
    // application can analyze the request and then obtain the  
    // report by using the USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive() function.  
  
    setReportEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT *)pData;  
    USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive(deviceHandle, someHIDReport,  
setReportEventData->reportLength);  
    break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL:  
  
    // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a  
    // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL type pointer. The application can  
    // analyze the data and decide to stall or accept the setting.  
    // This shows an example of accepting the protocol setting.  
  
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(deviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);  
    break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE:  
  
    // In this case, pData should be interpreted as a  
    // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE type pointer. The  
    // application can analyze the data and decide to stall  
    // or accept the setting. This shows an example of accepting  
    // the protocol setting.  
  
    setIdleEventData = (USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE *)pData;  
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(deviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);  
    break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED:  
  
    // In this case, control transfer data was received. The  
    // application can inspect that data and then stall the  
    // handshake stage of the control transfer or accept it  
    // (as shown here).  
  
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(deviceHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);  
    break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA SENT:  
  
    // This means that control transfer data was sent. The  
    // application would typically acknowledge the handshake  
    // stage of the control transfer.  
  
    break;  
  
case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED:  
  
    // This is an indication only event. The application must  
    // reset any HID control transfer related tasks when it receives  
    // this event.  
  
    break;
```

```

case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED:
    // This means a HID report receive request has completed.
    // The pData member should be interpreted as a
    // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED pointer type.

    break;

case USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT:
    // This means a HID report send request has completed.
    // The pData member should be interpreted as a
    // USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT pointer type.

    break;
}

return(USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

```

Remarks

Some of the events allow the application to defer responses. This allows the application some time to obtain the response data rather than having to respond to the event immediately. Note that a USB host will typically wait for event response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the event and associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such timeouts have to be avoided.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE Structure

USB Device HID Get Idle Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```

typedef struct {
    uint8_t reportID;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| uint8_t reportID; | The protocol code |

Description

USB Device HID Get Idle Event Data

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_IDLE event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT Structure

USB Device HID Get Report Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```

typedef struct {

```

```

    uint8_t reportType;
    uint8_t reportID;
    uint16_t reportLength;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------|---------------|
| uint8_t reportType; | Report type |
| uint8_t reportID; | Report ID |
| uint16_t reportLength; | Report Length |

Description

USB Device HID Get Report Event Data Type.

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_GET_REPORT event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED Structure

USB Device HID Report Received Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```

typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle |
| size_t length; | Report size received |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device HID Report Received Event Data Type.

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT Structure

USB Device HID Report Sent Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle |
| size_t length; | Report size transmitted |
| USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device HID Report Sent Event Data Type.

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_REPORT_SENT event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE Structure

USB Device HID Set Idle Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t duration;
    uint8_t reportID;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------|---------------|
| uint8_t duration; | Idle duration |
| uint8_t reportID; | Report ID |

Description

USB Device HID Set Idle Event Data Type.

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_IDLE event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT Structure

USB Device HID Set Report Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t reportType;
    uint8_t reportID;
    uint16_t reportLength;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------|---------------|
| uint8_t reportType; | Report type |
| uint8_t reportID; | Report ID |
| uint16_t reportLength; | Report Length |

Description

USB Device HID Set Report Event Data Type.

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_REPORT event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL Structure

USB Device HID Set Protocol Event Data Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE protocolCode;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE protocolCode; | The protocol code |

Description

USB Device HID Set Protocol Event Data

This defines the data type of the data generated to the HID event handler on a USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_SET_PROTOCOL event.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX Type

USB device HID Function Driver Index.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX;
```

Description

USB Device HID Driver Index Numbers

This uniquely identifies a HID Function Driver instance.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

USB Device HID Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device HID Function Driver Transfer Handle. A Transfer Handle is owned by the application but its value is modified by the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend](#) and [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive](#) functions. The transfer handle is valid for the life time of the transfer and expires when the transfer related event has occurred.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Device HID Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE (* USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX  
instanceIndex, USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT event, void * pData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Device HID Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Device HID Function Driver event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a HID Function Driver events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the HID Function Driver. The function driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

instanceIndex - Instance index of the HID Function Driver that generated the event.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be type casted to a event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that registered the event handling function.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE Type

USB Device HID Function Driver Event Callback Response Type

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef void USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Event Handler Response Type

This is the return type of the HID Function Driver event handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT Enumeration

USB Device HID Function Driver USB Device HID Result enumeration.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST,
    USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_OK</code> | The operation was successful |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL</code> | The transfer queue is full. No new transfers can be <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scheduled |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED</code> | The specified instance is not configured yet |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID</code> | The specified instance is not provisioned in the system |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST</code> | Transfer terminated by host because of a stall clear |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT_ERROR</code> | General Error |

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver USB Device HID Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Device HID Function Driver operation results. These values USB Device HID Library functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE Macro

USB Device HID Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Event Handler Response None

This is the definition of the HID Function Driver Event Handler Response Type none.

Remarks

Intentionally defined to be empty.

USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Device HID Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device HID Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle. A Invalid Transfer Handle is returned by the [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive](#) and [USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend](#) functions when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INIT Structure

USB Device HID Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    size_t hidReportDescriptorSize;
    void * hidReportDescriptor;
    size_t queueSizeReportSend;
    size_t queueSizeReportReceive;
} USB_DEVICE_HID_INIT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| size_t hidReportDescriptorSize; | Size of the HID report descriptor |

| | |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>void * hidReportDescriptor;</code> | Pointer to HID report descriptor |
| <code>size_t queueSizeReportSend;</code> | Report send queue size |
| <code>size_t queueSizeReportReceive;</code> | Report receive queue size |

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

This data structure must be defined for every instance of the HID function driver. It is passed to the HID function driver, by the Device Layer, at the time of initialization. The funcDriverInit member of the Device Layer Function Driver registration table entry must point to this data structure for an instance of the HID function driver.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER Macro

This is a pointer to a group of HID Function Driver callback function pointers.

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER
```

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Device Layer callback function pointer group

This is a pointer to a group of HID Function Driver callback function pointers. The application must use this pointer while registering an instance of the HID function driver with the Device Layer via the function driver registration table i.e. the driver member of the function driver registration object in the device layer function driver registration table should be set to this value.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 Macro

USB Device HID Function Driver Index Constants

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 0
```

Description

USB Device HID Function Driver Index Constants

This constants can be used by the application to specify HID function driver instance indexes.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1 Macro

File

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1 1
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2 Macro**File**

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2 2
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3 Macro**File**

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3 3
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4 Macro**File**

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4 4
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5 Macro**File**

[usb_device_hid.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5 5
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6 Macro**File**

```
usb_device_hid.h
```

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6 6
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6.

USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7 Macro**File**

```
usb_device_hid.h
```

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7 7
```

Description

This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7.

Files**Files**

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_hid.h | USB HID Function Driver |
| usb_device_hid_config_template.h | USB device HID class configuration definitions template, |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_device_hid.h

USB HID Function Driver

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT | USB Device HID Function Driver Events |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT | USB Device HID Function Driver USB Device HID Result enumeration. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet | This function registers a event handler for the specified HID function driver instance. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive | This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to receive a report from host to device. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend | This function submits the buffer to HID function driver library to send a report from device to host. |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel | This function cancels a scheduled HID Device data transfer. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device HID Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER | This is a pointer to a group of HID Function Driver callback function pointers. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 | USB Device HID Function Driver Index Constants |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7 | This is macro USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device HID Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE | USB Device HID Get Idle Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT | USB Device HID Get Report Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED | USB Device HID Report Received Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT | USB Device HID Report Sent Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE | USB Device HID Set Idle Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL | USB Device HID Set Protocol Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT | USB Device HID Set Report Event Data Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INIT | USB Device HID Function Driver Initialization Data Structure |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device HID Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device HID Function Driver Event Callback Response Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX | USB device HID Function Driver Index. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device HID Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |

Description

USB HID Function Driver

This file contains the API definitions for the USB Device HID Function Driver. The application should include this file if it needs to use the HID Function Driver API.

File Name

usb_hid_function_driver.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_device_hid_config_template.h

USB device HID class configuration definitions template,

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of HID instances. |
| | USB_DEVICE_HID_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMINED | DOM-IGNORE-BEGIN |

Description

USB Device HID Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the HID Function Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name

usb_device_hid_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

Generic USB Device Library

This section describes the Generic USB Device Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony Generic USB Device Library.

Description

A USB Device that does not follow any of the standard USB device class specifications is referred to as Generic (or a Vendor) USB Device. Such a device may be needed in cases where a standard USB device class does not meet application requirements with respect to transfer type, throughput or available interfaces. Generic USB Devices also typically require custom USB Host drivers.

The MPLAB Harmony USB Device Layer API features Endpoint API and events that facilitate development of a Generic USB Device. These API and events allow the application to do the following:

- Configure, enable, and disable endpoints
- Schedule Bulk, Interrupt and, Isochronous transfers
- Respond to control transfers
- Receive control and other transfer type related events

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the Generic USB Device Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Library Overview

Provides an overview of the Generic USB Device Driver.

Description

The Generic Function Driver features API to set application event handlers and transfer data over non-zero endpoints. The function driver is initialized by the Device Layer when a Set Configuration request is received by the device. This process does not require application intervention. As a part of this initialization process, all the endpoints belonging to the Generic Function Driver Interfaces will be enabled and configured. When the application receives the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED, these endpoints are ready for data transfers.

The application design must ensure that the Generic Function Driver is registered in the Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table.

Abstraction Model

Provides an architectural overview of the Generic USB Device Driver.

Description

The Generic USB Device Library consists of USB Device Layer Endpoint API and events. The API allows the application to configure, enable, and disable endpoints. Endpoints can be configured for bulk, isochronous, and interrupt transfers. The events allow the application to track the completion of transfers and respond to control transfer events. It should be noted that the Generic USB Device Library in the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack does not have its own implementation, but rather, uses a subset of the Device Layer API to access the USB, as shown in the following diagram.

As seen in the figure, the application must implement the logic to implement the Generic USB Device behavior. It must respond to interface, class, and other control transfers. It must configure endpoints when the Host sets the configuration. Thus, the application implements the function driver for the Generic USB Function Driver.

The Generic USB Device Endpoint function and events provided by the Device Layer API abstract the details of configuring the USB peripheral. The Device Layer responds to standard USB requests as a part of the device enumeration process. The Device Layer control transfer functions and events allow the application to complete control transfers that are targeted to an endpoint, interface or others. The Device Layer endpoint read and write API provide a USB transaction or transfer level interface.

Transactions or transfers can be queued.

How the Library Works

This topic describes the basic architecture of the Generic USB Device Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Library Initialization

Describes how the Generic USB Device Library is initialized.

Description

Unlike the standard USB function drivers in the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Stack, in the case of a Generic USB Device, the USB Device Layer does not automatically enable or disable endpoints that belong to the Generic interface. This must be done by the application when the device is configured by the Host.

A USB Device can have multiple Generic interfaces. Each of these interfaces must have corresponding entries in the USB Device Layer function driver registration table. For Generic interfaces, the driver and funcDriverInit member of the function driver registration table entry should be set to NULL. The following code shows an example of how this is done.

```
/* This code shows an example function driver registration table entry
 * for a Generic USB Device Interface. Note that the function driver entry point
 * member is NULL. This instructs the Device Layer to pass all interface related
 * control transfers to the application. */
const USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
    {
        .configurationValue = 1 ,           // Configuration descriptor index
        .driver = NULL,                  // No APIs exposed to the device layer
        .funcDriverIndex = 0 ,            // Zero Instance index
        .funcDriverInit = NULL,           // No init data
        .interfaceNumber = 0 ,            // Start interface number of this instance
        .numberOfInterfaces = 1 ,          // Total number of interfaces contained in this instance
        .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL|USB_SPEED_HIGH // USB Speed
    }
};
```

The endpoint read and endpoint write queue sizes are specified by the queueSizeEndpointRead and queueSizeEndpointWrite members of the **USB_DEVICE_INIT** device layer initialization data structure. These read and write queue sizes define the size of the read and write buffer object pools. Objects from these pools are then queued up at each read and write endpoint, when an endpoint read or write is requested. The total number of buffer objects is specified by the

[USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) configuration constant.

Event Handling

This topic explains how the application should handle Generic USB Device events.

Description

The USB Device Layer generates two different types of events for a Generic USB Device.

- Control transfer events
- Endpoint data transfer events

While handing Device Layer events, it is recommended that computationally intensive operations or hardware access should not be performed with in the event handler. Doing so may affect the capability of the Device Stack to respond to changes on the USB and could cause the Device to become non-compliant.

A Generic USB Device application must handle the above events along with the other Device Layer events.

Control Transfer Events

Describes control transfer events and provides a code example.

Description

These events occur when the Device Layer has received a control transfer that is targeted to an interface or an endpoint which is managed by the Generic USB Device Application. The [USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST](#) event is generated when the Setup stage of the control transfer has been received. The application must investigate the 8-byte setup command that accompanies this event. The following flowchart explains the interaction.

The application can then either choose to continue the control transfer or stall it. The control transfer is stalled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag. In case of zero data stage control transfers, the application can complete the control transfer by calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK](#) flag. In case of control transfers that contain a data stage, the application must use the [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) or the [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function to send and receive data from the Host, respectively.

In a case where data is to be received from the host, the device layer generates

[USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED](#) event when the data stage has completed. The application can analyze the received data and can then either choose to acknowledge or stall the control transfer by the calling the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function with the [USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR](#) flag. This is shown in the following flow chart.

The following code shows an example of handling control transfer in a Generic USB Device. Note that the control transfer events are generated by the Device Layer.

```
/* This code shows an example of how the control transfer events
 * can be handled in a Generic USB Device. The example device will accept the
 * Set Interface Control Request and replies to the Get Interface Control Request
 * with the current alternate setting. */
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST:
    /* This means we have received a setup packet */
    setupPacket = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)eventData;
    if(setupPacket->bRequest == USB_REQUEST_SET_INTERFACE)
    {
        /* If we have got the SET_INTERFACE request, we just acknowledge
         * for now. In this example, there is one alternate setting which
         * is already active. */
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(appData.usbDevHandle,USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
    }
    else if(setupPacket->bRequest == USB_REQUEST_GET_INTERFACE)
    {
        /* We have only one alternate setting and this setting 0. So
         * we send this information to the host. */
        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(appData.usbDevHandle, &appData.altSetting, 1);
    }
    else
    {
```

```

    /* We have received a request that we cannot handle. Stall it*/
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(appData.usbDevHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_ERROR);
}
break;
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:
    /* This is a notification event which the application can use to free
     * buffer that was used in a USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function. */
    break;
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED:
    /* This event means that data has been received in the control transfer
     * and the application must either stall or acknowledge the data stage
     * by calling the USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus() function. Here we simply
     * acknowledge the received data. This is an example only. */
    USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus(appData.usbDevHandle, USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK);
break;

```

Endpoint Data Transfer Events

Describes endpoint data transfer events and provides a code example.

Description

The USB Device Layer provides notification events to indicate completion of transfers. These events are generated by the Device Layer and are made available in the Device Layer event handler. The `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE` event occurs when a transfer scheduled by the `USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead` function has completed. The `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event occurs when a transfer scheduled by the `USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite` function has completed. The event data accompanying these events contains the transfer handle and number of bytes that were transferred.

The following code shows an example of handling these events.

```

/* The following code shows an example handling of the
 * endpoint transfer events. Here the code updates a transfer
 * pending flag indicating to the application that transfers have
 * completed. */
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE:
    /* Endpoint read is complete */
    appData.epDataReadPending = false;
    break;
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
    /* Endpoint write is complete */
    appData.epDataWritePending = false;
    break;

```

Endpoint Management

Describes how the application can enable and disable endpoints.

Description

Unlike standard USB function drivers, such as CDC, MSD, Audio, and HID, the Device Layer does not automatically manage endpoints for a Generic USB Device interface. This means that the application must maintain all endpoint that belong to a Generic USB Device Interface. Maintaining the endpoint involves the following:

- Enabling the endpoints for the desired transfer type when the host sets the configuration,
- Disabling the endpoint when the device receives a USB reset or when the Host changes the configuration
- Enabling and clearing endpoint stall conditions



The application should never access Endpoint 0 directly. Doing so may cause the Device Stack to malfunction, which could cause the USB device to be non-compliant.

Warning

Endpoints can be enabled or disabled with the `USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable` and `USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable` functions. The `USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled` function can be used to check if an endpoint is enabled. The application should enable the endpoint when host sets the configuration which contains interfaces that use the endpoint. The endpoints should otherwise be

disabled. The endpoint function should not be called in the Device Layer event handler. Instead, they should be called in the application task routine. The following code shows an example of how an endpoint is enabled.

```
/* The following code shows an example of how the endpoint enable functions
 * are called to enable a Receive and Transmit Bulk endpoints. Note that the size
 * of the endpoint must be specified and this size should match the endpoint size
 * mentioned in the endpoint descriptor */
if (USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled(appData.usbDevHandle, appData.endpointRx) == false )
{
    /* Enable Read Endpoint */
    USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable(appData.usbDevHandle, 0, appData.endpointRx,
                             USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_BULK, sizeof(receivedDataBuffer));
}
if (USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled(appData.usbDevHandle, appData.endpointTx) == false )
{
    /* Enable Write Endpoint */
    USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable(appData.usbDevHandle, 0, appData.endpointTx,
                             USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_BULK, sizeof(transmitDataBuffer));
}
```

An endpoint should be disabled when the host has changed the device configuration and the new configuration does not contain any interfaces that use this endpoint. The endpoint can also be disabled when the application receives `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET` or when the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DECONFIGURED` event has occurred. The following code shows an example of disabling the endpoint.

```
/* In this example, the endpoints are disabled when
 * when the device has not been configured. This can happen
 * if the configuration set is 0 or if the device is reset. */
if (!appData.deviceIsConfigured)
{
    /* This means the device got deconfigured. Change the
     * application state back to waiting for configuration. */
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION;

    /* Disable the endpoint*/
    USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable(appData.usbDevHandle, appData.endpointRx);
    USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable(appData.usbDevHandle, appData.endpointTx);
    appData.epDataReadPending = false;
    appData.epDataWritePending = false;
}
```

The application can use the `USB_DEVICE_EndpointStall` and `USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear` functions to enable stall and clear the stall on endpoints. The `USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled` function can be called to check stall status of the endpoint.

Endpoint Data Transfer

Describes how the application can transfer data over endpoints.

Description

The application should call the `USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead` and `USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite` functions to transfer data over an enabled endpoint. Calling this function causes a USB transfer to be scheduled on the endpoint. The transfer is added to the endpoint queue and is serviced as the host schedules the transaction on the bus. The `USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead` and `USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite` functions return a unique transfer handle which can be tracked by the transfer. These transfer handles are returned along with the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE` (when an endpoint read transfer is complete) and `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE` (when an endpoint write is complete) events.

The following code shows an example of sending data over an endpoint.

```
/* This code shows an example of using the USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite
 * function to send data over the endpoint. The completion of the write is
 * indicated by the USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE event. The
 * transfer handle is returned in appData.writeTransferHandle */
USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite ( appData.usbDevHandle, &appData.writeTransferHandle,
                           appData.endpointTx, &transmitDataBuffer[0], sizeof(transmitDataBuffer),
                           USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE );

void APP_USBDeviceEventHandler(USB_DEVICE_EVENT event, void * eventData, uintptr_t context)
{
```

```

/* This is the Device Layer event handler */
case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
    /* Endpoint write is complete */
    appData.epDataWritePending = false;
    break;
}

```

The [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite](#) function allows the application to send data to the host without ending the transfer. This is done by specifying [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_PENDING](#) as the transfer flag in the call to the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite](#) function. The application can use this option when the data to be sent is not readily available or when the application is memory constrained. The combination of the transfer flag and the transfer size affects how the data is sent to the host:

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize (the IN endpoint size) and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function will append a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to complete the transfer
- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function will not append a ZLP and therefore and hence will not complete the transfer
- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is set as [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function schedules (length/maxPacketSize) packets and one packet for the residual data
- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is set as [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#)
- If size is less than maxPacketSize and flag is set [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function schedules one packet
- If size is less than maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function returns an error code and sets the transferHandle parameter to [USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#)

Refer to [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite](#) function API description for more details and code examples.

The application should use the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead](#) function to read data from an endpoint. The size of the buffer that is specified in this function should always be a multiple of the endpoint size. The following code shows an example of using the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead](#) function.

```

/* This code shows to use the USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead function
 * to read from an endpoint. The transfer handle is returned in
 * appData.readTransferHandle. The size of receivedDataBuffer should
 * be a multiple of the receive endpoint size. */

USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead(appData.usbDevHandle, &appData.readTransferHandle,
                       appData.endpointRx, &receivedDataBuffer[0], sizeof(receivedDataBuffer) );
void APP_USBDeviceEventHandler(USB_DEVICE_EVENT event, void * eventData, uintptr_t context)
{
    /* This is the Device Layer event handler */
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE:
        /* Endpoint write is complete */
        appData.epDataReadPending = false;
        break;
}

```

In a case where a transfer is in progress, the [USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead](#) and [USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite](#) functions can queue up transfers. The maximum number of read transfers that can be queued (on any receive endpoint) is specified by the endpointQueueSizeRead member of the [USB_DEVICE_INIT](#) data structure. The maximum number of write transfers that can be queued (on any transmit endpoint) is specified by the endpointQueueSizeWrite member of the [USB_DEVICE_INIT](#) data structure. The [USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) configuration macro should be set to total of read and write transfers that need to be queued.

For example, consider a Generic USB Device that contains two OUT (read) endpoint (EP1 and EP2) and one IN write endpoint (EP1). The application will queue a maximum of three read transfers on EP1, a maximum of five read transfers on EP2 and a maximum of four write transfers on EP1. Therefore, the total read transfer that will be queued is eight ($3 + 5$) and total write transfers that will be queued is four. The endpointQueueSizeRead member of the [USB_DEVICE_INIT](#) data structure should be set to eight. The endpointQueueSizeWrite member of the [USB_DEVICE_INIT](#) data structure should be set to four. The [USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED](#) configuration macro should be set to 12 ($8 + 4$).

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the Generic USB Device Library.

Description

The application designer must specify the following configuration parameters while implementing the Generic USB Device. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the `system_config.h` file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

| Configuration Macro Name | Description | Comments |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED</code> | Size of buffer object pool for Endpoint Read and Endpoint Write functions. | This macro defines the total number of transfers that can be queued across all Generic USB Device endpoints. The number of read transfers that can be queued is specified by the <code>endpointQueueSizeRead</code> member of the <code>USB_DEVICE_INIT</code> data structure. The number of write transfers that can be queued is specified by the <code>endpointQueueSizeWrite</code> member of the <code>USB_DEVICE_INIT</code> data structure. |

Building the Library

This section lists the files to be included in the project to implement a Generic USB Device Library.

Description

The Generic USB Device library does not have its own implementation. It is implemented using Device Layer API which are implemented in the Device Layer Files.

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is `<install-dir>/framework/usb`.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using `#include`) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>usb_device.h</code> | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the Device Layer API needed to implement the Generic USB Device. |

Required File(s)

 **MHC** All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/src/dynamic/usb_device.c</code> | This file contains the Device Layer API implementation. |
| <code>/src/dynamic/usb_device_endpoint_functions.c</code> | This file contains the endpoint transfer and management routines that are needed to implement the Generic USB Device. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The Generic USB Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

The API for implementing the Generic USB Device is contained the USB Device Library. Please refer to the [Library Interface](#) section in the USB Device Layer Library for more details.

USB MSD Device Library

This section describes the USB MSD Device Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB Mass Storage Device (MSD) Library.

Description

The USB Mass Storage Device Library (also referred to as the MSD Function Driver) allows applications to create USB Mass Storage device such as USB Pen Drives or USB-based SD Card readers. Applications can also leverage the ready support for Mass Storage Devices by popular Host personal computer operating systems by using the MSD Function Driver interfaces as a means to access the device functionality. The MSD Function Driver also features the following:

- Supports Bulk Only Transport (BOT) protocol
- Allows implementation of multiple Logical Unit Number (LUN) storage devices
- Uses the MPLAB Harmony Block Driver interface to connect to storage media drivers

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB MSD Device Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Provides an architectural overview of the USB MSD Device Library driver.

Description

The following diagram illustrates the functional interaction between the application, the MSD Function Driver, the media drivers, and the USB Device Layer.

As seen in the previous figure, the application does not have to interact with MSD function driver. Also, the MSD Function Driver does not have application functions that can be called. The media drivers control the storage media. The application interacts with the media drivers to update or access the information on the storage media. The MSD Function Driver interacts with the media drivers to process data read and write requests that it receives from the Host. This data is always accessed in blocks.

The MPLAB Harmony System module initializes the Device Layer and media drivers. A media driver is plugged into the MSD Function Driver by providing a media driver entry point in the MSD Function Driver initialization data structure. In the case of a multi-LUN storage, multiple media drivers can be plugged into the MSD Function Driver, with each one being capable of accessing different storage media types. The Device Layer initializes the MSD Function Driver when the Host sets the configuration that contains the Mass Storage interfaces. The MSD Function Driver Tasks routine is invoked in the context of the Device Layer Tasks routine. The MSD Function Driver interfaces should be registered in the USB Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table.

Library Overview

The USB MSD Device Library mainly interacts with the system, its clients and function drivers, as shown in the [Abstraction Model](#).

The library interface routines are divided into sub-sections, which address one of the blocks or the overall operation of the USB MSD Device Library.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| System Configuration Functions | Provides event handler, report send/receive, and transfer cancellation functions. |

How the Library Works

This section explains how the MSD Function Driver should be added to the USB Device application and how a media driver should be plugged into it. Considerations while creating new media drivers to operate with the MSD function driver are also discussed.

Library Initialization

Describes how to initialize the MSD Function Driver.

Description

The MSD Function Driver instance for a USB Device configuration is initialized by the USB Device Layer when the Host sets that configuration. This process does not require application intervention. Each instance of the MSD Function Driver should be registered with the USB Device Layer through the [Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table](#). While registering the MSD Function Driver, the driver member of the Function Driver Registration Table entry should be set to [USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER](#). This is an opaque function driver entry point provided by the MSD Function Driver for the Device Layer to use.

The MSD Function Driver requires an initialization data structure to be defined for each instance of the function driver. This initialization data structure should be of the type [USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT](#). This initialization data structure contains the following:

- The number of Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) in this MSD Function Driver instance
- A pointer to the [USB_MSD_CBW](#) type data structure. This pointer is used by the MSD Function Driver to receive the Command Block Wrapper (CBW) from the Host. For a PIC32MZ device, this array should be placed in coherent memory and should be aligned on a 4-byte boundary.
- A pointer to the [USB_MSD_CSW](#) type data structure. This pointer is used by the MSD Function Driver to send the Command Status Wrapper (CSW) to the Host. For a PIC32MZ device, this array should be placed in coherent memory and should be aligned on a 4-byte boundary.
- A pointer to the array of media driver initialization data structure. There should be one structure for every LUN. This is a [USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA](#) type of data structure. There exists a one-to-one mapping between the LUN and the media driver initialization data structure.

The following figure shows a pictorial representation of the MSD Function Driver initialization data structure.

The [USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA](#) data structure allows a media driver to be plugged into the MSD Function Driver. Any media driver that needs to be plugged into the MSD Function Driver needs to implement the interface (function pointer signatures) specified by the [USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS](#) type. For every LUN, a SCSI Inquiry Response data structure needs to be made available.

Use the following guidelines while implementing the media driver:

- Read functions should be non-blocking
- Write functions should be non-blocking
- The media driver should provide an event to indicate when a block transfer has complete. It should allow the event handler to be registered.
- Where required, the write function should erase and write to the storage area in one operation. The MSD Function Driver does not explicitly call the erase operation.
- The media driver should provide a media geometry object when required. This media geometry object allows the MSD Function

Driver to understand the media characteristics. This object is of the type, SYS_FS_MEDIA_GEOMETRY.

The following code shows an example of plugging the MPLAB Harmony NVM Driver into the MSD Function Driver. The coherency and alignment attributes that are applied to the sectorBuffer, msdCBW, and msdCSW data objects is needed for operation on PIC32MZ devices.

```

*****
 * Sector buffer needed by for the MSD LUN.
 ****
uint8_t sectorBuffer[512] __attribute__((coherent)) __attribute__((aligned(4)));

*****
 * CBW and CSW structure needed by the MSD
 * function driver instance.
 ****
USB_MSD_CBW msdCBW __attribute__((coherent)) __attribute__((aligned(4)));
USB_MSD_CSW msdCSW __attribute__((coherent)) __attribute__((aligned(4)));

*****
 * Because the PIC32MZ flash row size if 2048
 * and the media sector size if 512 bytes, we
 * have to allocate a buffer of size 2048
 * to backup the row. A pointer to this row
 * is passed in the media initialization data
 * structure.
 ****
uint8_t flashRowBackupBuffer [DRV_NVM_ROW_SIZE];
****

 * MSD Function Driver initialization
 ****

USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA msdMediaInit[1] =
{
{
    DRV_NVM_INDEX_0,
    512,
    sectorBuffer,
    flashRowBackupBuffer,
    (void *)diskImage,
    {
        0x00,      // peripheral device is connected, direct access block device
        0x80,      // removable
        0x04,      // version = 00=> does not conform to any standard, 4=> SPC-2
        0x02,      // response is in format specified by SPC-2
        0x20,      // n-4 = 36-4=32= 0x20
        0x00,      // sccs etc.
        0x00,      // bque=1 and cmdque=0, indicates simple queuing 00 is obsolete,
                   // but as in case of other device, we are just using 00
        0x00,      // 00 obsolete, 0x80 for basic task queuing
        {
            'M','i','c','r','o','c','h','i'
        },
        {
            'M','a','s','s','i','S','t','o','r','a','g','e','e','l','e','c','t','r','o','n','i','c','s'
        },
        {
            '0','0','0','1'
        }
    },
    {
        DRV_NVM_IsAttached,
        DRV_NVM_BLOCK_Open,
        DRV_NVM_BLOCK_Close,
        DRV_NVM_GeometryGet,
        DRV_NVM_BlockRead,
        DRV_NVM_BlockEraseWrite,
        DRV_NVM_IsWriteProtected,
        DRV_NVM_BLOCK_EventHandlerSet,
    }
}
}

```

```

        DRV_NVM_BlockStartAddressSet
    }
}
};

/* **** MSD Function Driver initialization **** */
USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT msdInit =
{
    /* Number of LUNS */
    1,
    /* Pointer to a CBW structure */
    &msdCBW,
    /* Pointer to a CSW structure */
    &msdCSW,
    /* Pointer to a table of Media Initialization data structures */
    &msdMediaInit[0]
};

/* **** USB Device Function Registration Table **** */
const USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
{
    .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL | USB_SPEED_HIGH,           // Device Speed
    .configurationValue = 1,                            // Configuration value
    .interfaceNumber = 0,                             // Start interface number
    .numberOfInterfaces = 1,                          // Number of interfaces owned
    .funcDriverIndex = 0,                            // Function driver index
    .funcDriverInit = (void*)&msdInit,                // Pointer to initialization data structure
    .driver = USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER          // Pointer to function driver
}
};

```

Data Transfer

Describes how the MSD Function Driver accesses the media.

Description

The MSD Function Driver opens the media drivers for read/write operations when the function driver is initialized by the Device Layer. This happens when the Host sets a configuration containing MSD interfaces. The Open operation is complete in the MSD Function Driver Tasks routines (called by the Device Layer).

The MSD Function Driver registers its own block operation event handler with the media drivers. Media Read and Write functions are called when the function driver receives a Sector Read or Sector Write request from the Host. The request will be tracked in the function driver Task routine. While the function driver waits for the media to complete the block operation, the function driver will NAK the data stage of the MSD data transfer request.

The MSD Function Driver does not provide any events to the application. It is possible that the application may also open the media driver while they are already opened by the MSD Function Driver. If the application and the MSD Function Driver try to write to the same media driver, the result could be unpredictable. It is recommended that the application restrict write access to the media driver while the USB device is plugged into the Host.

The application does not have to intervene in the functioning of the MSD Function Driver. Basically, the MSD Function Driver does provide any application callable functions.

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the MSD Function Driver.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Number of MSD function Driver instances required in the USB Device. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER | Defines the number of LUNs per MSD function driver instance. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |

Description

The following configuration parameters must be defined while using the MSD Function Driver. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the system_config.h file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

USB_DEVICE_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Number of MSD function Driver instances required in the USB Device.

File

[usb_device_msd_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER 1
```

Description

MSD Function Driver Instances Number

This configuration constant defines the number of MSD Function Driver instances in the USB Device. This value should be atleast 1 if the MSD function is required. In case where multiple MSD function drivers are required, it should be noted the MSD function driver supports multiple LUNs. This allows one MSD function driver instance to manage multiple media. Using multiple LUNs can be considered as an alternative to using multiple MSD function driver instances.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER Macro

Defines the number of LUNs per MSD function driver instance.

File

[usb_device_msd_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER 1
```

Description

Number of LUNs

This constant sets maximum possible number of Logical Unit (LUN) an instance of MSD can support. This value should be atleast 1. In cases where multiple MSD Function Driver instances are required, this constant should be set to the maximum number of LUNs required by any MSD Function Driver instanceThe following figure shows a pictorial representation of the MSD function driver initialization data structure.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

[usb_device_msd_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_`.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the MSD Function Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is `<install-dir>/framework/usb`.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using `#include`) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_msd.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Device MSD Function Driver API. |

Required File(s)



All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must *always* be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_device_msd.c | This file implements the MSD Function driver interface and should be included in the project if the MSD Device function is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB CDC Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Layer Library](#)

Based on application needs, the library may depend on the related storage media libraries, such as:

- Secure Digital (SD) Card Driver Library
- NVM Driver Library

Library Interface**Data Types and Constants**

| | Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT | This structure contains required parameters for MSD function driver initialization. |
|  | USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS | Pointer to the media driver functions for media instances to be used with the MSD function driver. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA | This structure holds media related data of a particular logical unit. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device MSD Function Driver Function pointer |
| | _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB MSD Device Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) System Configuration Functions**Data Types and Constants*****USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT Structure***

This structure contains required parameters for MSD function driver initialization.

File

[usb_device_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t numberOfLogicalUnits;
    USB_MSD_CBW * msdCBW;
    USB_MSD_CSW * msdCSW;
    USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA * mediaInit;
} USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| uint8_t numberOfLogicalUnits; | Number of logical units supported. |
| USB_MSD_CBW * msdCBW; | Pointer to a Command Block Wrapper structure allocated to this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of the MSD function driver. In case of PIC32MZ device, this should be placed in non cacheable section of RAM and should be aligned at a 4 byte boundary. |
| USB_MSD_CSW * msdCSW; | Pointer to a Command Status Wrapper structure allocated to this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of the MSD function driver. In case of PIC32MZ device, this should be placed in non cacheable section of RAM and should be aligned at a 4 byte boundary. |
| USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA * mediaInit; | Pointer to a table of media initialization data. This should contain an entry for every logical unit. |

Description

USB MSD init structure.

This structure contains interface number, bulk-IN and bulk-OUT endpoint addresses, endpointSize, number of logical units supported and pointer to array of structure that contains media initialization.

Remarks

This structure must be configured by the user at compile time.

USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS Structure

Pointer to the media driver functions for media instances to used with the the MSD function driver.

File

[usb_device_msd.h](#)

C

```
struct USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS {
    bool (* isAttached)(const DRV_HANDLE handle);
    DRV_HANDLE (* open)(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX index, const DRV_IO_INTENT intent);
    void (* close)(DRV_HANDLE hClient);
    SYS_MEDIA_GEOMETRY * (* geometryGet)(DRV_HANDLE hClient);
    void (* blockRead)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t * blockOperationHandle, void * data, uint32_t blockStart, uint32_t nBlocks);
    void (* blockWrite)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t * blockOperationHandle, void * data, uint32_t blockStart, uint32_t nBlocks);
    bool (* isWriteProtected)(DRV_HANDLE drvHandle);
    void (* blockEventHandlerSet)(const DRV_HANDLE drvHandle, const void * eventHandler, const uintptr_t context);
    void (* blockStartAddressSet)(const DRV_HANDLE drvHandle, const void * addressOfStartBlock);
};
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bool (*isAttached)(const DRV_HANDLE handle); | In case of pluggable media, such as SD Card, this function returns true when the media is inserted, initialized and ready to be used. In case of non-pluggable media, such as Internal Flash memory, this function can return true when the media is ready to be used. The MSD host may not detect the media until this function returns true. This function pointer cannot be NULL |
| DRV_HANDLE (*open)(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX index, const DRV_IO_INTENT intent); | The MSD Function Driver calls this function to obtain a handle and gain access to functionality of the specified instance of the media driver. The MSD function driver will attempt to open the driver with DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE and DRV_IO_INTENT_NONBLOCKING. The MSD host may not detect the media until the MSD function driver obtains a valid driver handle. The function driver will use this handle in all other functions to communicate with the media driver. This function pointer cannot be NULL |
| void (*close)(DRV_HANDLE hClient); | The MSD function driver calls this function when the function driver gets deinitialized as result of device detach or a change in configuration. The MSD function driver will open the media driver again to obtain a fresh driver handle when it gets initialized again. This function pointer cannot be NULL. |
| SYS_MEDIA_GEOMETRY * (*geometryGet)(DRV_HANDLE hClient); | The MSD function driver calls this function when the function driver needs to know the storage capacity of the media. The MSD function driver uses the size of read region and number of read blocks to report the media capacity to the MSD host. This function pointer cannot be NULL. |
| void (*blockRead)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t * blockOperationHandle, void * data, uint32_t blockStart, uint32_t nBlocks); | The MSD function driver calls this function when it needs to read a block of data. This function pointer cannot be NULL. |
| void (*blockWrite)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t * blockOperationHandle, void * data, uint32_t blockStart, uint32_t nBlocks); | The MSD function driver calls this function when it needs to write a block of data. This function pointer can be NULL if the media is write protected. |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bool (* isWriteProtected)(DRV_HANDLE drvHandle); | The MSD function driver calls this function to find out if the media is write-protected. This function pointer cannot be NULL. |
| void (* blockEventHandlerSet)(const DRV_HANDLE drvHandle, const void * eventHandler, const uintptr_t context); | The MSD function driver calls this function to register an block event call back function with the media driver. This event call back will be called when a block related operation has completed. This function pointer should not be NULL. |
| void (* blockStartAddressSet)(const DRV_HANDLE drvHandle, const void * addressOfStartBlock); | If not NULL and if the blockStartAddress parameter in the USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA data structure for this media is not 0, then the MSD function driver calls this function immediately after opening the media driver. For media such a NVM, where the storage media is a part of the program memory flash, this function sets the start of the storage area on the media. This function is not required for media such as SD Card. |

Description

Media Driver Function Pointer Data Structure

This structure contains function pointers, pointing to the media driver functions. The MSD function driver calls these functions at run time to access the media. This data structure should be specified during compilation and is a part of the MSD function driver initialization data structure. It is processed by the function driver when the function driver is initialized by the Device Layer.

Remarks

None.

[USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA](#) Structure

This structure holds media related data of a particular logical unit.

File

[usb_device_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    SYS_MODULE_INDEX instanceIndex;
    uint32_t sectorSize;
    uint8_t * sectorBuffer;
    uint8_t * blockBuffer;
    void * block0StartAddress;
    SCSI_INQUIRY_RESPONSE inquiryResponse;
    USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS mediaFunctions;
} USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SYS_MODULE_INDEX instanceIndex; | Instance index of the media driver to opened for this LUN |
| uint32_t sectorSize; | Sector size for this LUN. If 0, means that sector size will be available from media geometry. |
| uint8_t * sectorBuffer; | Pointer to a byte buffer whose size is the size of the sector on this <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • media. In case of a PIC32MZ device, this buffer should be coherent and • should be aligned on a 16 byte boundary |
| uint8_t * blockBuffer; | In a case where the sector size of this media is less than the size of <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the write block, a byte buffer of write block size should be provided to • the function driver. For example, the PIC32MZ NVM flash driver has a • flash program memory row size of 4096 bytes which is more than the • standard 512 byte sector. In such a case the application should set this • pointer to 4096 byte buffer |
| void * block0StartAddress; | Block 0 Start Address on this media. If non zero, then this address will be passed to blockStartAddressSet function. This should be set to start of the storage address on the media. |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>SCSI_INQUIRY_RESPONSE inquiryResponse;</code> | Pointer to SCSI inquiry response for this LUN |
| <code>USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS mediaFunctions;</code> | Function pointers to the media driver functions |

Description

USB Device MSD Media Initialization Data Member

It holds pointer to inquiry response, instance index and pointer to a structure that contains all media callback functions.

Remarks

An object of this structure must be configured by the user at compile time.

USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER Macro

USB Device MSD Function Driver Function pointer

File

[usb_device_msd.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER
```

Description

USB Device MSD Function Driver Function Pointer

This is the USB Device MSD Function Driver Function pointer. This should registered with the device layer in the function driver registration table.

Remarks

None.

_USB_DEVICE_MSD_H Macro

File

[usb_device_msd.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_msd.h | USB device MSD function driver interface header |
| usb_device_msd_config_template.h | USB Device MSD configuration template header file |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_device_msd.h

USB device MSD function driver interface header

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device MSD Function Driver Function pointer |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS | Pointer to the media driver functions for media instances to be used with the MSD function driver. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT | This structure contains required parameters for MSD function driver initialization. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA | This structure holds media related data of a particular logical unit. |

Description

USB MSD function driver interface header

USB device MSD function driver interface header. This file should be included in the application if USB MSD functionality is required.

File Name

usb_device_msd.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_device_msd_config_template.h

USB Device MSD configuration template header file

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Number of MSD function Driver instances required in the USB Device. |
| | USB_DEVICE_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER | Defines the number of LUNs per MSD function driver instance. |

Description

USB Device MSD function driver compile time options

This file contains USB device MSD function driver compile time options(macros) that has to be configured by the user. This file is a template file and must be used as an example only. This file must not be directly included in the project.

File Name

usb_device_msd_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Device Printer Library

Introduction

This help section provides information on library design, configuration, usage and the Library Interface for the USB Printer Class Device Library.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Printer Device Library (also referred to as the Printer function driver or library) provides functions and methods that allow application designers to implement a USB Printer Device. The current version of the library supports a unidirectional as well as bi-directional printer interface types. This library must be used in conjunction with the MPLAB Harmony USB Device Layer.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB Printer Device Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Provides an architectural overview of the Printer Function Driver.

Description

The Printer Function Driver offers services to a USB Printer Device to communicate with the host by abstracting the USB specification details. It must be used along with the USB Device Layer and USB controller to communicate with the USB Host. Figure 1 shows a block diagram of the MPLAB Harmony USB Architecture and where the Printer Function Driver is placed.

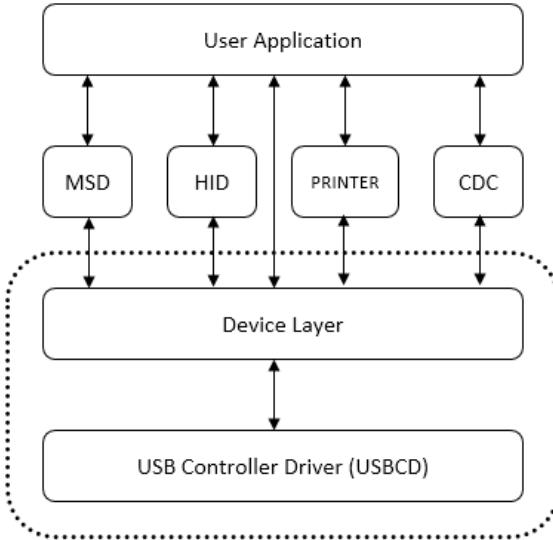


Figure 1: Printer Function Driver

As shown in Figure 1, the USB Controller Driver takes the responsibility of managing the USB peripheral on the device. The USB Device Layer handles the device enumeration, etc. The USB Device layer forwards all USB Printer specific control transfers to the Printer Function Driver. Though the Printer Function Driver layer interprets and handles majority of the control transfers, some requests are sent to application layer through event handlers and well-defined set of API. The application must register an event handler with the Printer Function Driver in the Device Layer Set Configuration Event ([USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet\(\)](#)). The application should respond to Printer events. Response to Printer event that require control transfer response can be deferred by responding to the event after returning from the event handler. The application interacts directly with the Printer Function Driver to send/receive data through configured Bulk endpoints.

As per the Printer specification, a USB Printer Device support three possible interfaces, but only one can be enabled at any given

time. The interfaces are defined as follows:

- Unidirectional Interface: The unidirectional interface supports only the sending of data to the printer via a Bulk OUT endpoint.
- Bi-directional Interface: The bi-directional interface supports sending data to the printer via a Bulk OUT endpoint and receiving status and other information from the printer via a Bulk IN endpoint.
- IEEE 1284.4 compatible Bi-directional Interface: The 1284.4 interface supports sending data to the printer via a Bulk OUT endpoint and receiving status and other information from the printer via a Bulk IN endpoint, just as the bi-directional interface does. The 1284.4 interface additionally specifies that data will be transmitted to and from the device using the 1284.4 protocol.

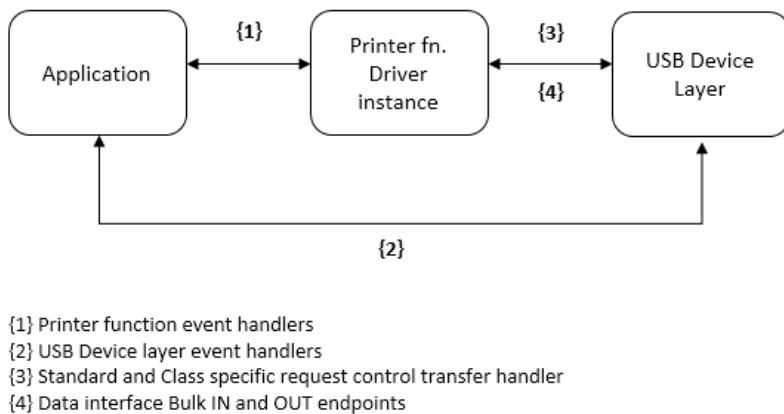


Figure 2: Printer Function Driver Architecture

Figure 2 shows the architecture of the Printer Function Driver.

The device management on Endpoint 0 is handled by the device library (class specific requests are routed to the Printer Function Driver by the USB Device Layer). An instance of the Printer Function Driver consists of the bulk data interface.

The Printer function library is implemented in `usb_device_printer.c` file.

This file implements the Printer data handling, the control transfer interpretation and event generation. The application must respond to control transfer related Printer events by directly calling the Device Layer control transfer routines.

Library Overview

The USB Printer Device Library mainly interacts with the system, its clients and function drivers, as shown in the [Abstraction Model](#).

The library interface routines are divided into sub-sections, which address one of the blocks or the overall operation of the USB Printer Device Library.

Description

How the Library Works

Library Initialization

Describes how the Printer Function Driver is initialized.

Description

The Printer Function Driver instance for a USB device configuration is initialized by the Device Layer when the configuration is set

by the host. This process does not require application intervention. Each instance of the Printer Function Driver should be registered with the Device layer through the Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table. The Printer Function Driver does require an initialization data structure to be defined for each instance of the function driver. This initialization data structure should be of the type `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT`. This data structure specifies the read/write queue sizes and IEEE 1284 device ID string. The `funcDriverInit` member of the function driver registration table entry for the Printer Function Driver instance should be set to point to the corresponding initialization data structure. The `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER` object is a global object provided by the Printer Function Driver and points to the Printer Function Driver - Device Layer interface functions, which are required by the Device Layer.

The following code an example of how multiple instances of Printer Function Driver can registered with the Device Layer.

This below sample code shows an example of how a Printer function driver instances can be registered with the Device Layer via the Device Layer Function Driver Registration Table. In this case Device Configuration 1 consists of one instance of Printer function driver.

```
/* Define the Printer initialization data structure for a Printer instance.
 * Set read queue size to 1 and write queue size to 1 */

const USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT printerInit =
{
    .queueSizeRead = 1,
    .queueSizeWrite = 1,
    .length = DEVICE_ID_STRING_LENGTH,
    .deviceID_String = DEVICE_ID_STRING
};

const USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE funcRegistrationTable[1] =
{
    /* Function 0 */
    {
        .configurationValue = 1,                                // Configuration value
        .interfaceNumber = 0,                                    // First interface number of this
                                                               // function
        .speed = USB_SPEED_FULL,                               // Function Speed
        .numberOfInterfaces = 1,                               // Number of interfaces
        .funcDriverIndex = 0,                                  // Index of Printer Function Driver
        .driver = (void*)USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER, // USB Printer function data exposed to
                                                               // device layer
        .funcDriverInit = (void*)&printerInit                // Function driver initialization data
    },
};
}
```

Event Handling

Describes Printer Function Driver event handler registration and event handling.

Description

Registering a Printer Function Driver Event Handler

While creating an USB Printer Device-based application, an event handler must be registered with the Device Layer (the Device Layer Event Handler) and every Printer Function Driver instance (Printer Function Driver Event Handler). The Printer Function Driver event handler receives Printer events. This event handler should be registered before the USB device layer acknowledges the SET CONFIGURATION request from the USB Host. To ensure this, the event handler should be set in the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED` event that is generated by the device layer. While registering the Printer Function Driver event handler, the Printer Function Driver allows the application to also pass a data object in the event handler register function.

This data object gets associated with the instance of the Printer Function Driver and is returned by the Printer Function Driver when a Printer Function Driver event occurs. The following code shows an example of how this can be done.

This below code is a sample of Application Device Layer Event Handler.

Note how the Printer Function Driver event handler `APP_USBDevicePrinterEventHandler` is registered in the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED` event.

The appData object that is passed in the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet](#) function will be returned as the userData parameter in the when the APP_USBDevicePrinterEventHandler function is invoked.

```
*****
 * Application USB Device Layer Event Handler.
 ****
void APP_USBDeviceEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED *configuredEventData;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:

            /* Check the configuration. We only support configuration 1 */
            configuredEventData = (USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED*)eventData;

            if ( configuredEventData->configurationValue == 1 )
            {
                /* Update LED to show configured state */
                LED_On();

                /* Register the Printer Device application event handler here.
                 * Note how the appData object pointer is passed as the
                 * user data */

                USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0,
                    APP_USBDevicePrinterEventHandler, (uintptr_t)&appData);

                /* Mark that the device is now configured */
                appData.isConfigured = true;
            }
            break;
    }
}
```

The Printer Function Driver event handler executes in an interrupt context when the device stack is configured for Interrupt mode. In Polled mode, the event handler is invoked in the context of the SYS_Tasks function. The application should not call computationally intensive functions, blocking functions, functions that are not interrupt safe, or functions that poll on hardware conditions from the event handler. Doing so will affect the ability of the USB device stack to respond to USB events and could potentially make the USB device non-compliant.

Printer Function Driver Events

The Printer Function Driver generates events to which the application must respond. Some of these events are management requests communicated through control transfers. Therefore, the application must use the Device Layer Control Transfer routines to complete the control transfer. Based on the generated event, the application may be required to:

- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlSend](#) function, which completes the data stage of a Control Read Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive](#) function, which provisions the data stage of a Control Write Transfer
- Respond with a [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function, which completes the handshake stage of the Control Transfer. The application can either STALL or Acknowledge the handshake stage via the [USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus](#) function. The following table shows the Printer Function Driver Control Transfer related events and the required application control transfer actions.

| Printer Function Driver Control Transfer Event | Required Application Action |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_GET_PORT_STATUS | Call USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function to send the response data for GET_PORT_STATUS request. |

Based on the type of event, the application should analyze the pData member of the event handler. This data member should be type cast to an event specific data type. The following table shows the event and the data type to use while type casting.

Note that the pData member is not required for all events

| Printer Function Driver Event | Related pData type |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE |

The possible Printer Function Driver events are described here with the required application response, event specific data, and likely follow-up function driver event:

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE

Application Response: This event occurs when a write operation scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write\(\)](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData member in the event handler will point to the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) data type.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE

Application Response: This event occurs when a read operation scheduled by calling the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read](#) function has completed. This event does not require the application to respond with any function calls.

Event Specific Data (pData): The pData member in the event handler will point to the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE](#) type.

Likely Follow-up event: None.

Printer Function Driver Event Handling

The following code shows an event handling scheme example. The application always returns from the event handler with a [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE](#) value.

The below code example shows all Printer Function Driver possible events and a possible scheme for handling these events. In this case event responses are not deferred.

```
*****
 * USB PRINTER Device Events - Application Event Handler
*****
```

```
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDevicePrinterEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX index,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t userData
)
{
    APP_DATA * appDataObject;
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE * eventDataRead;
    uint8_t prntrStatus;
    appDataObject = (APP_DATA *)userData;
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_GET_PORT_STATUS:
            /* This means the host wants to know the printer's current status,
```

```

* in a format which is compatible with the status register of a
* standard PC parallel port. This is a control transfer request.
* Use the USB_DEVICE_ControlSend() function to send the data to
* host. */
prntrStatus = (uint8_t)((appDataObject->portStatus.errorStatus << 3) & 0x08) |
    ((appDataObject->portStatus.selectStatus << 4) & 0x10) |
    ((appDataObject->portStatus.paperEmptyStatus << 5) & 0x20));

USB_DEVICE_ControlSend( appDataObject->deviceHandle, &prntrStatus, 1 );
break;

case USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
/* This means that the host has sent some data*/
eventDataRead = (USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE *)pData;
appDataObject->isReadComplete = true;
appDataObject->numBytesRead = eventDataRead->length;
break;

case USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
/* This means that the data write got completed */
appDataObject->isWriteComplete = true;
break;
default:
break;
}
return USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}

```

Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT](#) enumeration for more details on each event.

Sending Data

Describes how to send data to the Printer Host.

Description

The application may need to send data to the USB Printer Host incase the Printer device supports Bi-directional interface type. This is done by using the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write](#) function.

Sending Data to the USB Host

The application can send data to the Host by using the [USB_DEVICE_Printer_Write](#) function. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the write request. The request is completed when the Host has requested the data. The completion of the write transfer is indicated by a [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) event.

A write request could fail if the function driver instance transfer queue is full.

The [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write](#) function also allows the application to send data to the host without ending the transfer. This is done by specifying the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_PENDING](#) flag. The application can use this option when the data to be sent is not readily available or when the application is memory constrained. The combination of the transfer flag and the transfer size affects how the function driver sends the data to the host:

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize (the IN endpoint size), and the flag is set as

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function will append a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to complete the transfer

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function will not append a ZLP and therefore, will not complete the transfer

- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function schedules length/maxPacketSize) packets and one packet for the residual data.

- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize, and the flag is set as

`USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING`, the write function returns an error code and sets the `transferHandle` parameter to `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`

- If size is less than `maxPacketSize`, and the flag is set as `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE`, the write function schedules one packet
- If size is less than `maxPacketSize`, and the flag is set as `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING`, the write function returns an error code and sets the `transferHandle` parameter to `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`

The following code shows a set of examples of various conditions attempting to send data with the `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write` function.

Example 1

```
// This example assume that the maxPacketSize is 64.
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[34];
// In this example we want to send 34 bytes only.
writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 34,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);
if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
```

Example 2

```
-----
// In this example we want to send 64 bytes only.
// This will cause a ZLP to be sent.
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[64];
writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 64,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);
if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
```

Example 3

```
-----
// This example will return an error because size is less
// than maxPacketSize and the flag indicates that more
// data is pending.
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[64];
writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 32,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);
```

Example 4

```
-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 byte transfer.
// The 70 bytes will be sent out in a 64 byte transaction and a 6 byte
// transaction completing the transfer.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT writeRequestResult;
uint8_t data[70];
writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 70,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);
```

```
if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
```

Example 5

```
-----  

// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 bytes to be sent  

// but that we don't end the transfer as more data is coming. 64 bytes  

// of the 70 will be sent out and the USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE  

// with 64 bytes. This indicates that the extra 6 bytes weren't  

// sent because it would cause the end of the transfer. Thus the  

// user needs to add these 6 bytes back to the buffer for the next group  

// of data that needs to be sent out.  

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;  

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance;  

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT writeRequestResult;  

uint8_t data[70];  

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,&transferHandle, data, 70,  

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);  

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event.
```

Receiving Data

Describes how the Printer device can read data from the Host.

Description

The application can receive data from the host by using the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read](#) function. This function returns a transfer handle that allows the application to track the read request. The request is completed when the Host sends the required amount or less than required amount of data. The application must make sure that it allocates a buffer size that is at least the size or a multiple of the receive endpoint size. The return value of the function indicates the success of the request. A read request could fail if the function driver transfer queue is full. The completion of the read transfer is indicated by the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event. The request completes based on the amount of the data that was requested and size of the transaction initiated by the Host.

- If the size parameter is not a multiple of maxPacketSize or is '0', the function returns [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#) in transferHandle and returns [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID](#) as a return value
- If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the Host sends less than maxPacketSize data in any transaction, the transfer completes and the function driver will issue a [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event along with the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) data structure
- If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the Host sends maxPacketSize amount of data, and total data received does not exceed size, the function driver will wait for the next packet

The following code shows an example of the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read](#) function:

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// driver was opened successfully.
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT readRequestResult;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_HANDLE instanceHandle;
```

```

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read(instanceHandle,
&transferHandle, data, 64);

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
//Do Error handling here
}
// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event.

```

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the Printer Function Driver.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_PRINTER_H | This is macro _USB_PRINTER_H. |
| | _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Printer instances. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED | Specifies the combined queue size of all Printer instances. |

Description

The application designer must specify the following configuration parameters while using the Printer Function Driver. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the system_config.h file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

_USB_PRINTER_H Macro

File

[usb_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_PRINTER_H
```

Description

This is macro _USB_PRINTER_H.

_USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H Macro

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H
```

Description

This is macro _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Printer instances.

File

[usb_device_printer_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB device Printer Maximum Number of instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the Printer Function Driver. Do not modify this value. Always set this value to 1, only one instance.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED Macro

Specifies the combined queue size of all Printer instances.

File

[usb_device_printer_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED
```

Description

USB device Printer Combined Queue Size

This macro defines the number of entries in all queues in all instances of the Printer function driver. This value can be obtained by adding up the read and write queue sizes of each Printer Function driver instance. In a simple single instance USB Printer device application, that does not require buffer queuing and serial state notification, the

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro can be set to 2. Consider a case with two Printer function driver instances, Printer 1 has a read queue size of 2 and write queue size of 3, Printer 2 has a read queue size of 4 and write queue size of 1, this macro should be set to 10 (2 + 3 + 4 + 1).

Remarks

None.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the Printer Function Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_printer.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Device Printer Function Driver API. |

Required File(s)



MHC All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /usb/src/usb_device_printer.c | This file implements the Printer control and data interface/event function and should be included in the project if the Printer Device function is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| N/A | N/A There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Printer Device Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Device Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Printer Device Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet | This function registers a event handler for the specified PRINTER function driver instance. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device Printer Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device PRINTER Function Driver Layer. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT | USB Device Printer Function Driver Events |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Printer Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Callback Response Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX | USB Device Printer Function Driver Index |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT | This structure contains required parameters for Printer function driver initialization. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_PORT_STATUS | Printer status required by class-specific request. |

| | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT | USB Device Printer Function Driver USB Device Printer Result enumeration. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS | USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Flags |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | USB_PRINTER_COMMAND | Identified the USB Printer Commands used by the stack. |
| | USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE | Base class for printers Do not modify this value |
| | USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL | Printer Interface Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x01 - Unidirectional interface • 0x02 - Bi-directional interface • 0x03 - 1284.4 compatible bi-directional interface |
| | USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE | Subclass codes for Printer devices Do not modify this value |
| | USB_PRINTER_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC | bmRequestType for Printer class specific request |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device Printer Function Driver Function pointer |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0 | Use this to specify Printer Function Driver Instance 0 |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device Printer Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

Description

a) Functions

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet Function](#)

This function registers a event handler for the specified PRINTER function driver instance.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX
instanceIndex, USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK - The operation was successful

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance does not exist

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID - The eventHandler parameter is NULL

Description

This function registers a event handler for the specified PRINTER function driver instance. This function should be called by the client when it receives a SET CONFIGURATION event from the device layer. A event handler must be registered for function driver to respond to function driver specific commands. If the event handler is not registered, the device layer will stall function driver specific commands and the USB device may not function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

This function should be called when the function driver has been initialized as a result of a set configuration.

Example

```
// This code snippet shows an example registering an event handler. Here
// the application specifies the context parameter as a pointer to an
// application object (appObject) that should be associated with this
// instance of the PRINTER function driver.

// Application states
typedef enum
{
    //Application's state machine's initial state.
    APP_STATE_INIT=0,
    APP_STATE_SERVICE_TASKS,
    APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION,
} APP_STATES;

USB_DEVICE_HANDLE usbDeviceHandle;

APP_STATES appState;

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT result;

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDevicePrinterEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instanceIndex ,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT event ,
    void* pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    // Event Handling comes here

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
            // This means that the host has sent some data to the device
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
            // This means that the host has received some data from device
            break;

        default:
            break;
    }

    return USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}

// This is the application device layer event handler function.

USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBDeviceEventHandler
(
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT event,
    void * pData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPacket;
    switch(event)
```

```
{  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_DETECTED:  
        // This event is generated when VBUS is detected. Attach the device  
        USB_DEVICE_Attach(usbDeviceHandle);  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_POWER_REMOVED:  
        // This event is generated when VBUS is removed. Detach the device  
        USB_DEVICE_Detach (usbDeviceHandle);  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONFIGURED:  
        // This event indicates that Host has set Configuration in the Device.  
        // Register PRINTER Function driver Event Handler.  
        USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0,  
APP_USBDevicePRINTEREventHandler, (uintptr_t)0);  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_SETUP_REQUEST:  
        // This event indicates a Control transfer setup stage has been completed.  
        setupPacket = (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)pData;  
  
        // Parse the setup packet and respond with a USB_DEVICE_ControlSend(),  
        // USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive or USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus().  
  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA_SENT:  
        // This event indicates that a Control transfer Data has been sent to Host.  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_DATA RECEIVED:  
        // This event indicates that a Control transfer Data has been received from Host.  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ABORTED:  
        // This event indicates a control transfer was aborted.  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SUSPENDED:  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESUMED:  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_ERROR:  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESET:  
        break;  
  
    case USB_DEVICE_EVENT_SOF:  
        // This event indicates an SOF is detected on the bus. The  
        USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE  
        // macro should be defined to get this event.  
        break;  
    default:  
        break;  
}  
}  
  
void APP_Tasks ( void )  
{  
    // Check the application's current state.  
    switch ( appState )  
{
```

```

// Application's initial state.
case APP_STATE_INIT:
    // Open the device layer
    usbDeviceHandle = USB_DEVICE_Open( USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0,
        DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

    if(usbDeviceHandle != USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID)
    {
        // Register a callback with device layer to get event notification
        USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet(usbDeviceHandle,
            APP_USBDeviceEventHandler, 0);
        appState = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_CONFIGURATION;
    }
    else
    {
        // The Device Layer is not ready to be opened. We should try
        // gain later.
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_SERVICE_TASKS:
    break;

    // The default state should never be executed.
default:
    break;
}
}

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | Instance of the PRINTER Function Driver. |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler
    uintptr_t context
);

```

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read Function

This function requests a data read from the USB Device Printer Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, void * data, size_t size);

```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK -The read request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL -internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID -The specified transfer size was not a multiple of

endpoint size or is 0.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED -The specified instance is not configured yet.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID -The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data read from the USB Device PRINTER Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is made available by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event. The amount of data read and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in the pData parameter of the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the **USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID.

If the size parameter is not a multiple of maxPacketSize or is 0, the function returns

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID in transferHandle and returns an error code as a return value. If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the host send less than maxPacketSize data in any transaction, the transfer completes and the function driver will issue a **USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE** event along with the **USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA** data structure. If the size parameter is a multiple of maxPacketSize and the host sends maxPacketSize amount of data, and total data received does not exceed size, then the function driver will wait for the next packet.

Remarks

While the using the PRINTER Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the receive buffer provided to the **USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read** function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the **__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))** attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Shows an example of how to read. This assumes that
// driver was opened successfully.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT readRequestResult;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_HANDLE instanceHandle;

readRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read(instanceHandle,
                                            &transferHandle, data, 128);

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != readRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the read request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE event.
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device PRINTER Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the read request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer where read data will be stored. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |

Function

```
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read
(
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * data,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write Function

This function requests a data write to the USB Device PRINTER Function Driver Layer.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, const void * data, size_t size,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS flags);
```

Returns

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK - The write request was successful. transferHandle contains a valid transfer handle.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL - internal request queue is full. The write request could not be added.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID - The specified transfer size and flag parameter are invalid.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED - The specified instance is not configured yet.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID - The specified instance was not provisioned in the application and is invalid.

Description

This function requests a data write to the USB Device PRINTER Function Driver Layer. The function places a request with driver, the request will get serviced as data is requested by the USB Host. A handle to the request is returned in the transferHandle parameter. The termination of the request is indicated by the USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event. The amount of data written and the transfer handle associated with the request is returned along with the event in writeCompleteData member of the pData parameter in the event handler. The transfer handle expires when event handler for the USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE exits. If the read request could not be accepted, the function returns an error code and transferHandle will contain the value [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

The behavior of the write request depends on the flags and size parameter. If the application intends to send more data in a request, then it should use the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#) flag. If there is no more data to be sent in the request, the application must use the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) flag. This is explained in more detail here:

- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE](#), the write function will append a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to complete the transfer.
- If size is a multiple of maxPacketSize and flag is set as [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING](#), the write function will not append a ZLP and hence will not complete the transfer.
- If size is greater than but not a multiple of maxPacketSize and flags is

set as `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE`, the write function returns an error code and sets the `transferHandle` parameter to `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`.

- If size is greater than but not a multiple of `maxPacketSize` and flags is set as `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING`, the write function fails and return an error code and sets the `transferHandle` parameter to `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`.

- If size is less than `maxPacketSize` and flag is set as `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE`, the write function schedules one packet.

- If size is less than `maxPacketSize` and flag is set as `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING`, the write function returns an error code and sets the `transferHandle` parameter to `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`.

- If size is 0 and the flag is set `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE`, the function driver will schedule a Zero Length Packet. Completion of the write transfer is indicated by the `USB_DEVICE_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event. The amount of data written along with the transfer handle is returned along with the event.

Remarks

While the using the PRINTER Function Driver with the PIC32MZ USB module, the transmit buffer provided to the `USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write` function should be placed in coherent memory and aligned at a 16 byte boundary. This can be done by declaring the buffer using the `__attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)))` attribute. An example is shown here

```
uint8_t data[256] __attribute__((coherent, aligned(16)));
```

Preconditions

The function driver should have been configured.

Example

```
// Below is a set of examples showing various conditions trying to
// send data with the Write command.
//
// This assumes that driver was opened successfully.
// Assume maxPacketSize is 64.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT writeRequestHandle;
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instance;

//-----
// In this example we want to send 34 bytes only.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 34,
                                              USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// In this example we want to send 64 bytes only.
// This will cause a ZLP to be sent.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instance,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 64,
                                              USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
```

```

    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// This example will return an error because size is less
// than maxPacketSize and the flag indicates that more
// data is pending.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instanceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 32,
                                              USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 byte transfer.
// The 70 bytes will be sent out in a 64 byte transaction and a 6 byte
// transaction completing the transfer.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instanceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 70,
                                              USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE);

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

//-----
// In this example we want to place a request for a 70 bytes and the flag
// is set to data pending. This will result in an error. The size of data
// when the data pending flag is specified should be a multiple of the
// endpoint size.

writeRequestResult = USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write(instanceHandle,
                                              &transferHandle, data, 70,
                                              USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING);

if(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK != writeRequestResult)
{
    //Do Error handling here
}

// The completion of the write request will be indicated by the
// USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event.

```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| instance | USB Device PRINTER Function Driver instance. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to a USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of variable. This variable will contain the transfer handle in case the write request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer that contains the data to written. |
| size | Size of the data buffer. Refer to the description section for more details on how the size affects the transfer. |
| flags | Flags that indicate whether the transfer should continue or end. Refer to the description for more details. |

Function

```

USB\_DEVICE\_PRINTER\_RESULT USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write
(
    USB\_DEVICE\_PRINTER\_INDEX instance,
    USB\_PRINTER\_DEVICE\_TRANSFER\_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    const void * data,
    size\_t size,

```

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS](#) flags

);

b) Data Types and Constants

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT Enumeration

USB Device Printer Function Driver Events

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_GET_PORT_STATUS,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_GET_PORT_STATUS | This event occurs when a host requests GET_PORT_STATUS class specific request. |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a write operation is completed. |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a read operation is completed. |

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Events

These events are specific to the USB Device Printer Function Driver instance. Each event description contains details about the parameters passed with event. The contents of pData depends on the generated event.

Remarks

The USB Device Printer control transfer related events allow the application to defer responses. This allows the application some time to obtain the response data rather than having to respond to the event immediately. Note that a USB host will typically wait for event response for a finite time duration before timing out and canceling the event and associated transactions. Even when deferring response, the application must respond promptly if such time outs have to be avoided.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this • read or write request |
| size_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was • read or written |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) and [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE Structure

USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle;
    size_t length;
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT status;
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE, USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE handle; | Transfer handle associated with this • read or write request |
| size_t length; | Indicates the amount of data (in bytes) that was • read or written |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT status; | Completion status of the transfer |

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) and [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) events.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Device Printer Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE (*
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX instanceIndex,
USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT event, void * pData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Device Printer Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Device Printer Function Driver event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a Printer Function Driver events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the Printer Function Driver. The function driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

instanceIndex - Instance index of the Printer Function Driver that generated the event.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be type cast to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

The event handler function executes in the USB interrupt context when the USB Device Stack is configured for interrupt based operation. It is not advisable to call blocking functions or computationally intensive functions in the event handler. Where the response to a control transfer related event requires extended processing, the response to the control transfer should be deferred and the event handler should be allowed to complete execution.

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE](#) Type

USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Callback Response Type

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef void USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Handler Response Type

This is the return type of the Printer Function Driver event handler.

Remarks

None.

[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX](#) Type

USB Device Printer Function Driver Index

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX;
```

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Index

This uniquely identifies a Printer Function Driver instance.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT Structure

This structure contains required parameters for Printer function driver initialization.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    size_t queueSizeRead;
    size_t queueSizeWrite;
    uint16_t length;
    uint8_t deviceID_String[USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_DEVICE_ID_STRING_LENGTH];
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size_t queueSizeRead; | Size of the read queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of the Printer function driver |
| size_t queueSizeWrite; | Size of the write queue for this instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of the Printer function driver |
| uint16_t length; | IEEE 1284 device ID string (including length in the first two bytes in big endian format). |

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Initialization Data Structure

This data structure must be defined for a Printer function driver. This is passed to the Printer function driver, by the Device Layer, at the time of initialization. This structure contains the IEEE Standard 1284 string parameters required by the Devide ID.

Remarks

This structure must be configured by the user at compile time.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_PORT_STATUS Structure

Printer status required by class-specific request.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    uint8_t errorStatus;
    uint8_t selectStatus;
    uint8_t paperEmptyStatus;
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_PORT_STATUS;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| uint8_t errorStatus; | 1 = No Error, 0 = Error |
| uint8_t selectStatus; | 1 = Selected, 0 = Not Selected |
| uint8_t paperEmptyStatus; | 1 = Paper Empty, 0 = Paper Not Empty |

Description

USB device Printer Port Status.

This structure defines the Printer status.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT Enumeration

USB Device Printer Function Driver USB Device Printer Result enumeration.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_OK | The operation was successful |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_SIZE_INVALID | The transfer size is invalid. Refer to the description <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • of the read or write function for more details |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TRANSFER_QUEUE_FULL | The transfer queue is full and no new transfers can be <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scheduled |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_INVALID | The specified instance is not provisioned in the system |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_INSTANCE_NOT_CONFIGURED | The specified instance is not configured yet |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID | The event handler provided is NULL |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_ENDPOINT_HALTED | Transfer terminated because host halted the endpoint |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR_TERMINATED_BY_HOST | Transfer terminated by host because of a stall clear |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT_ERROR | General Function driver error |

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver USB Device Printer Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Device Printer Function Driver operation results. These values are returned by USB Device Printer Library functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS Enumeration

USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Flags

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE,
    USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING
} USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_DATA_COMPLETE | This flag indicates there is no further data to be sent in this transfer and that the transfer should end. If the size of the transfer is a multiple of the maximum packet size for related endpoint configuration, the function driver will send a zero length packet to indicate end of the transfer to the host. |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS_MORE_DATA_PENDING | This flag indicates there is more data to be sent in this transfer. If the size of the transfer is a multiple of the maximum packet size for the related endpoint configuration, the function driver will not send a zero length packet. If the size of the transfer is greater than (but not a multiple of) the maximum packet size, the function driver will only send maximum packet size amount of data. If the size of the transfer is greater than endpoint size but not an exact multiple of endpoint size, only the closest endpoint size multiple bytes of data will be sent. This flag should not be specified if the size of the transfer is less than maximum packet size. |

Description

USB Device Printer Transfer Flags

These flags are used to indicate status of the pending data while sending data to the host by using the `USB_DEVICE_Printer_Write` function.

Remarks

The relevance of the specified flag depends on the size of the buffer. Refer to the individual flag descriptions for more details.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Handle. A Transfer Handle is owned by the application but its value is modified by the `USB_DEVICE_Printer_Write` and `USB_DEVICE_Printer_Read` functions. The transfer handle is valid

for the life time of the transfer and expires when the transfer related event had occurred.

Remarks

None.

USB_PRINTER_COMMAND Enumeration

Identified the USB Printer Commands used by the stack.

File

[usb_printer.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_PRINTER_GET_DEVICE_ID = 0x0,
    USB_PRINTER_GET_PORT_STATUS = 0x1,
    USB_PRINTER_SOFT_RESET = 0x2
} USB_PRINTER_COMMAND;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_PRINTER_GET_DEVICE_ID = 0x0 | class-specific request returns a device ID string that is compatible with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IEEE 1284 |
| USB_PRINTER_GET_PORT_STATUS = 0x1 | class-specific request returns the printer's current status |
| USB_PRINTER_SOFT_RESET = 0x2 | class-specific request flushes all buffers and resets the Bulk endpoints <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to their default states |

Description

USB Printer Command.

Identified the USB Printer Commands used by the stack.

Remarks

None.

USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE Macro

File

[usb_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE 0x07
```

Description

Base class for printers Do not modify this value

USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL Macro

File

[usb_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL 0x01
```

Description

Printer Interface Type

- 0x01 - Unidirectional interface
- 0x02 - Bi-directional interface
- 0x03 - 1284.4 compatible bi-directional interface

USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE Macro

File

[usb_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE 0x01
```

Description

Subclass codes for Printer devices Do not modify this value

USB_PRINTER_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC Macro

File

[usb_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_PRINTER_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC 0x21
```

Description

bmRequestType for Printer class specific request

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE Macro

USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Handler Response None

This is the definition of the Printer Function Driver Event Handler Response Type none.

Remarks

Intentionally defined to be empty.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER Macro

USB Device Printer Function Driver Function pointer

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER
```

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Function Pointer

This is the USB Device Printer Function Driver pointer. This should registered with the device layer in the function driver registration table.

Remarks

None.

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0 Macro

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0 0
```

Description

Use this to specify Printer Function Driver Instance 0

USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Device Printer Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_device_printer.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Device Printer Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle. A Invalid Transfer Handle is returned by the USB_DEVICE_Printer_Write and USB_DEVICE_Printer_Read functions when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_device_printer.h | USB Device Printer Function Driver Interface |
| usb_printer.h | USB Printer class definitions |
| usb_device_printer_config_template.h | USB device Printer Class configuration definitions template |

Description

usb_device_printer.h

USB Device Printer Function Driver Interface

Enumerations

| Name | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT | USB Device Printer Function Driver Events |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT | USB Device Printer Function Driver USB Device Printer Result enumeration. |
| USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS | USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Flags |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet | This function registers a event handler for the specified PRINTER function driver instance. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read | This function requests a data read from the USB Device Printer Function Driver Layer. |
| ≡ | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write | This function requests a data write to the USB Device PRINTER Function Driver Layer. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H | This is macro _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Handler Response Type None. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER | USB Device Printer Function Driver Function pointer |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0 | Use this to specify Printer Function Driver Instance 0 |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Device Printer Function Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Read and Write Complete Event Data. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT | This structure contains required parameters for Printer function driver initialization. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_PORT_STATUS | Printer status required by class-specific request. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Device Printer Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Event Callback Response Type |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX | USB Device Printer Function Driver Index |
| | USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Device Printer Function Driver Transfer Handle Definition. |

Description

USB Device Printer Function Driver Interface

This file describes the USB Device Printer Function Driver interface. The application should include this file if it needs to use the Printer Function Driver API.

File Name

`usb_device_printer.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_printer.h

USB Printer class definitions

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| | <code>USB_PRINTER_COMMAND</code> | Identified the USB Printer Commands used by the stack. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <code>_USB_PRINTER_H</code> | This is macro <code>_USB_PRINTER_H</code> . |
| | <code>USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE</code> | Base class for printers Do not modify this value |
| | <code>USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL</code> | Printer Interface Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x01 - Unidirectional interface • 0x02 - Bi-directional interface • 0x03 - 1284.4 compatible bi-directional interface |
| | <code>USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE</code> | Subclass codes for Printer devices Do not modify this value |
| | <code>USB_PRINTER_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC</code> | <code>bmRequestType</code> for Printer class specific request |

Description

USB Printer class definitions

This file describes the Printer class specific definitions. This file is included by `usb_device_Printer.h` and `usb_host_Printer.h` header files. The application can include this file if it needs to use any USB Printer Class definitions.

File Name

`usb_Printer.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_device_printer_config_template.h

USB device Printer Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INSTANCES_NUMBER</code> | Specifies the number of Printer instances. |
| | <code>USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED</code> | Specifies the combined queue size of all Printer instances. |

Description

USB Device Printer Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the Printer Function Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific

system_config.h.

File Name

usb_device_printer_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Host Libraries

This section provides information on the USB Host libraries that are available in MPLAB Harmony.

Description

USB Host Library - Getting Started

This section provides information for getting started with the USB Host Library.

Introduction

Provides an introduction to the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Library

Description

The MPLAB Harmony USB Host Library (referred to as the USB Host Library) provides embedded application developers with a framework to design and develop USB Host Support for a wide variety of USB Device Classes. Low-Speed and Full-Speed USB Devices can be supported with PIC32MX and SAM microcontrollers. High-Speed devices can be supported with PIC32MZ and SAM microcontrollers. The USB Host Library facilitates support of standard USB devices through client drivers that implement standard the USB Device class specification. The library is modular, thus allowing application developers to readily support composite USB devices.

The USB Host Library is a part of the MPLAB Harmony installation and is accompanied by demonstration applications that highlight library usage. These demonstration applications can also be modified or updated to build custom applications. The USB Host Library also features the following:

- Class Driver Support (CDC, Audio, HID, and MSD)
- Designed to support USB devices with multiple configurations at different speeds
- Supports low-speed, full-speed and high-speed operation
- Supports multiple USB peripherals (allows multiple host stacks)
- Modular and Layered architecture
- Completely non-blocking
- Supports both polled and interrupt operation
- Works readily in an RTOS environment
- Designed to readily integrate with other Harmony Middleware

This document serves as a getting started guide and provides information on the following:

- USB Host Stack Architecture
- USB Host Library - Application Interaction



Note: It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the USB 2.0 specification (available at www.usbif.org). While certain topics in USB may be discussed in this document, it is recommended that the reader refer to the specification documentation for a complete description.

USB Host Library Architecture

Describes the USB Host Library Architecture.

Description

The USB Host Library Architecture features a modular and layered architecture as illustrated in the following figure.

USB Host Library Architecture

As seen in the figure, the USB Device Library consists of the following three major components.

Host Controller Driver (HCD)

The HCD manages the state of the USB peripheral and provides the Host Layer with structured methods to access data on the USB. The HCD is a MPLAB Harmony driver and uses the MPLAB Harmony framework components (USB Peripheral Library and the Interrupt System Service) of its operation. The HCD is initialized in the system initialization routine and its tasks routine is invoked in the system tasks routine. It is accessed exclusively by the Host layer. The HCD provides the following services to the host layer:

- Establish and manage communication pipes between the host layer and the attached devices
- Manage USB transfers

Root Hub Driver

The Root Hub Driver models the USB peripheral as a Hub. It then allows the Host Layer to perform the same actions on the Root Hub port that would be performed on an external Hub's port. The Root Hub Driver thus leads to an optimized implementation of Hub support in the Host Layer. The Root Hub Driver is hardware specific and is implemented as a part of the HCD. It provides the following services to the Host Layer

- Provides device attach and detach events
- Allows the Host to suspend, resume, and reset the port

The Root Hub Driver works in tandem with the HCD to provide the Host Layer with required USB protocol related means and methods to manage the attached USB device.

Host Layer

The Host Layer receives attach and detach events from the Root Hub Driver. It enumerates attached devices based on information contained in the Target Peripheral List (TPL). It allows client drivers to access the attached device through Host Layer methods. This includes allowing the client driver to set the device configuration. Where the client driver does not set the device configuration, the Host Layer will set the device configuration.

The Host layer opens the HCD, instantiates the Root Hub Driver, then controls and communicates with the attached device. The user application can call the Host Layer API to get information on attached devices. It can also register a Host Layer Event handler to get device related events. The user application can additionally suspend or resume a device. The Host Layer also provides bus level control where the application can suspend or resume all devices connected to a USB.

Client Driver

The USB Host Stack Client Drivers implement the support for different device classes as per the class specifications. Along with Host Layer, the client drivers are designed to support multiple device of the same type (where multiple devices are connected to the host through a hub or is a single device with multiple interfaces). A client driver abstracts intricate details of the class specification and provides a high level command and data interface to the application. Completion of requests is indicated by events. The application must register an event handler to receive these events.

The Client Driver may manage devices whose functionality is specified by USB VID and PID. In such cases, the client driver can set the device configuration. The client driver may manage a device whose functionality is defined by an interface class, subclass and protocol. In such a case, the configuration is set by the Host layer. The client driver can also manage devices whose functionality is defined by a combination of VID PID and class, sub-class and protocol.

USB Host Library - Application Interaction

Describes how the application must interact with the USB Host Stack.

Description



Note: Additional information on the tests conducted on Flash devices (i.e., Pen Drives) and a list of USB application configurations is available in the [USB Demonstrations](#) section.

The following figure highlights the steps that the application must follow to use the USB Host Library.

Application Interaction with Host Layer

The USB Host stack is initialized in the MPLAB Harmony System Initialization function. The Host Stack requires the Timer System Service and USB Driver. So these must be initialized as well. Note that the figure refers to a general USB Driver. The application may use the USBFS Driver (DRV_USBFS) for PIC32MX microcontroller, USBHS Driver (DRV_USBHS) for PIC32MZ microcontroller or the DRV_USBHS_V1 driver for SAME microcontrollers. The Timer and USB module interrupt priorities must be configured.

The USB Host layer, the USB Driver and the Timer System Service tasks must be called in the MPLAB Harmony System Tasks Routine. This ensures that the state machines of these module stays updated. If the USB Driver and the Timer driver have been configured for interrupt operation, then their corresponding interrupt tasks routines should be called in the corresponding module interrupt service routines.

The application state machine must first set the Host Layer event handler and then enable the bus. Enabling the bus will enable device detection and the Host Layer will enumerate attached devices. The application can query for attached devices and perform operations on attached devices.

USB Host Layer Library

This section describes the USB Host Layer Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Layer Library.

Description

The USB Host Layer in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack performs the tasks of enumerating an attached device and interfacing the HCD. The following are the key features of the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Layer:

- Supports multi-configuration and composite USB Devices
- Supports VID PID and class, subclass, and protocol devices
- Can manage multiple USB devices through the Root Hub
- Concise API simplifies application development
- Modular architecture allows support for multiple (and different) USB controller in one application. Can operate multiple USB segments.
- Supports Low-Speed, Full-Speed, and Hi-Speed USB devices

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB Host Layer and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the abstraction model of the USB Host Layer.

Description

The USB Host Layer abstracts USB HCD hardware interaction details and presents an easy-to-use interface to the application and the client drivers. The Host Layer provides the application with a device object handle, which the application can use to suspend or resume the device. The Host Layer provides client drivers with device client handles and interface handles. These handles allow the client drivers to interact with the device and its interfaces. The Host Layer allows the client drivers to

- Open control pipes and schedule control transfers
- Open bulk, isochronous, and interrupt pipes
- Perform data transfers
- Claim and release ownership of the device and device interfaces
- Perform standard device operations.

The Host Layer has exclusive access to the HCD and the Root Hub. It opens the HCD and presents an abstracted interface to the application and client drivers.

Library Overview

The USB Host layer API is grouped functionally, as shown in the following table.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| System Interface Functions | These functions make the USB Host Layer compatible with MPLAB Harmony. |
| Bus Control Functions | These functions allow the application to enable, disable, suspend and resume the USB. |
| Device Related Functions | These functions allow the application to suspend and resume the USB. Attached devices can be queried and their string descriptors can be obtained. |
| Event Handling | Allows the application to register an event handler. |
| Client Driver Routines | These functions are exclusive to the client drivers and should not be accessed by the application. |

How the Library Works

Describes how the Library works and how it should be used.

Description

The Host Layer in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack plays the key role of enumerating an attached device and facilitating the communication between the USB Host Client Driver and the attached devices. The following sections describe the steps and methods that the user application must follow to use the Host Layer (and the USB Host stack). The following topics are discussed:

- Host Layer Initialization
- Operating the Host layer
- Host Layer Application Events

Host Layer Initialization

This topic describes how to initialize the Host Layer and includes code examples.

Description

The Host Layer must be initialized with relevant data to enable correct operation. This initialization must be performed in the SYS_Initialize function of the MPLAB Harmony application. The Host Layer will require the USB Controller Peripheral driver to be initialized for host mode operation (and hence operate as a HCD). This initialization must be performed in the SYS_Initialize function. The order in which the Host Layer and the USB Peripheral Driver are initialized does not affect the Host Layer operation. The Host Layer could be initialized before or after the USB Controller Peripheral Driver initialization.

The Host Layer requires the following information for initialization:

- The HCD interface for each bus
- The Target Peripheral List (TPL)

The Host Layer is capable of operating more than one USB device. This is possible on PIC32 microcontrollers that feature multiple USB Controller Peripherals. The one instance of the Host Layer manages multiple HCDs. The interface to each to every instance of the HCD that the Host Layer must operate must be specified in the Host Layer initialization. The total number of USB devices the Host Layer should manage is defined statically by the `USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER` configuration macro in the `system_config.h` file. The following code shows an example initialization of a PIC32MX USB HCD.

Example: PIC32MZ USB HCD Initialization

```
/* This code shows an example of how to initialize the PIC32MX USB
 * Driver for host mode operation. For more details on the PIC32MX Full-Speed
 * USB Driver, please refer to the Driver Libraries documentation. */

/* Include the full-speed USB driver header file */
#include "driver/usb/usbfs/drv_usbfs.h"

/* Create a driver initialization data structure */
```

```

DRV_USBFS_INIT drvUSBFSInit;

/* The PIC32MX Full-Speed USB Driver when operating in host mode requires an
 * endpoint table (a byte array) whose size should be 32 bytes. This table should
 * be aligned at 512 byte address boundary */
uint8_t __attribute__((aligned(512))) endpointTable[32];

/* Configure the driver initialization data structure */
DRV_USBFS_INIT drvUSBFSInit =
{
    /* This parameter should be set to SYS_MODULE_POWER_RUN_FULL. */
    .moduleInit = {SYS_MODULE_POWER_RUN_FULL},

    /* Driver operates in Host mode */
    .operationMode = USB_OPMODE_HOST,

    /* USB module interrupt source */
    .interruptSource = INT_SOURCE_USB_1,

    /* Continue operation when CPU is in Idle mode */
    .stopInIdle = false,

    /* Do not suspend operation when CPU enters Sleep mode */
    .suspendInSleep = false,

    /* The USB module index */
    .usbID = USB_ID_1,

    /* The maximum current that the VBUS supply can provide */
    .rootHubAvailableCurrent = 500,

    /* Pointer to the endpoint table */
    .endpointTable = endpointTable,

    /* Pointer to the Port Power Enable function. Driver will cause this
     * function when the port power must be enabled */
    .portPowerEnable = PortPowerEnable,

    /* Pointer to the Port Over Current Detect function. Driver will cause this
     * function periodically to check if the port current has exceeded limit */
    .portOverCurrentDetect = PortOverCurrentDetect,

    /* Pointer to the Port LED indication function. The driver will call this
     * function to update the Port LED status */
    .portIndication = PortIndication
};

/* USB Driver system module object */
SYS_MODULE_OBJ drvUSBObj = SYS_MODULE_OBJ_INVALID;

void SYS_Initialize(void * data)
{
    /* Initialize the driver */
    drvUSBObj = DRV_USBFS_Initialize(DRV_USBFS_INDEX_0, (SYS_MODULE_INIT *)(&drvUSBFSInit));
}

void SYS_Tasks(void)
{
    /* Call the driver tasks routine in SYS_Tasks() function */
    DRV_USBFS_Tasks(drvUSBObj);
}

void __ISR(_USB_1_VECTOR, ipl4AUTO) _IntHandlerUSBInstance0(void)
{
    /* Call the driver interrupt tasks routine in the USB module ISR */
    DRV_USBFS_Tasks_ISR(sysObj.drvUSBModuleObj);
}

```

```
}
```

The Host Layer Initialization requires a [USB_HOST_HCD](#) data structure. This data structure specifies the HCD module index and the HCD Host Layer Interface for each bus. The following code shows the [USB_HOST_HCD](#) data structure is initialized for a single USB Controller Peripheral PIC32MX microcontroller device.

Example: Data Structure Initialized for a Single USB Controller Peripheral PIC32MX MCU

```
/* This code shows an example of setting up the USB_HOST_HCD data
 * structure for the PIC32MX USB controller */

USB_HOST_HCD usbHostHCD =
{
    /* This is the driver instance index that the USB Host Layer will use */
    .drvIndex = DRV_USBFS_INDEX_0,

    /* This is the interface to the PIC32MX USB HCD. The
     * DRV_USBHS_HOST_INTERFACE pointer is exported by the PIC32MX Host Mode USB
     * Driver. */
    .hcdInterface = DRV_USBHS_HOST_INTERFACE
};
```

The other important component required for USB Host Layer initialization is the Target Peripheral List (TPL). Embedded USB Hosts unlike standard USB Host are not expected to support all USB Device Types. The device types to be supported are specified in the TPL. The TPL contains an entry for every device type that the Embedded USB host must support. If the attached device matches the criteria specified in the TPL entry , the Host Layer attaches the driver corresponding to that entry to the manage device. A device may match multiple entries in the TPL. This happens in the case of composite devices.

An entry in the TPL contains the following information:

- Device Type: This specifies whether the Host must inspect the VID, PID field or Class, Subclass and Protocol fields while matching the attached device to the entry
- Flags: These flags provide the system designer with various options while matching the attached device to a driver. For example, a flag can be specified to ignore the device PID and only consider the VID while matching VID PID device.
- PID Mask: This is a PID [mask](#) that can be applied to the PID before matching the PID to the attached device PID
- Driver: This is the pointer to the interface of the client driver that should manage the device if the matching criteria is met

The following code shows an example TPL table.

Example: TPL Table

```
/* This code shows some examples of configuring the USB Host Layer
 * TPL Table. In this example, the USB Host layer is configured to support
 * three different types of devices. */

USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST usbHostTPL[ 4 ] =
{

    /* Catch every device with the exact Vendor ID = 0x04D9 and Product ID = 0x0001.
     * Every other device will not load this driver. */
    TPL_DEVICE_VID_PID( 0x04D9, 0x0001, &driverInitData, &DEVICE_DRIVER_EXAMPLE1_Driver ),

    /* This driver will catch any device with the Vendor ID of 0x04D9 and any
     * product ID = 0x0000 or 0x0002-0x00FF. The entry in the TPL before this
     * caught the Product ID = 0x0001 case so that is why it is not caught by
     * this entry. Those devices have already been caught. */
    TPL_DEVICE_VID_PID_MASKED( 0x04D9, 0x0002, 0xFF00, &driverInitData,
&DEVICE_DRIVER_EXAMPLE2_Driver ),

    /* This entry will catch all other devices. */
    TPL_DEVICE_ANY( &driverInitData, &DEVICE_DRIVER_EXAMPLE3_Driver ),

    /* This entry will catch only a HID boot keyboard. All other devices,
     * including other HID keyboards that are non-boot, will be skipped by this
     * entry. This driver will handle only this specific case. */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL( USB_HID_CLASS_CODE,
USB_HID_SUBCLASS_CODE_BOOT_INTERFACE,
                                            USB_HID_PROTOCOL_CODE_KEYBOARD,
&hidDriverInitData,
                                            USB_HOST_HID_BOOT_KEYBOARD_DRIVER ),

    /* This entry will catch all CDC-ACM devices. It filters on the class and
     * protocol. */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_PROTOCOL( USB_CDCACM_CLASS_CODE,
USB_CDCACM_PROTOCOL_CODE_CDCACM,
&cdcacmDriverInitData )
};
```

```

    * subclass but ignores the protocol since the driver will handle all
    * possible protocol options. */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS( USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE,
USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL,
                                &cdcDriverInitData, USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_DRIVER ),

    /* This will catch all instances of the MSD class regardless subclass or
     * protocol. In this case the driver will sort out if it supports the
     * device or not. */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS( USB_MSD_CLASS_CODE, &msdDriverInitData, USB_HOST_MSD_DRIVER ),

    /* Any unclaimed interfaces can be sent to a particular driver if desired.
     * This can be used to create a similar mechanism that libUSB or WinUSB
     * provides on a PC where any unused interface can be opened and utilized by
     * these drivers. */
    TPL_INTERFACE_ANY( &driverInitData, USB_HOST_VENDOR_DRIVER )
}

```

The Host Layer can now be initialized. The following code shows how the [USB_HOST_HCD](#) and the TPL table are specified in the [USB_HOST_INIT](#) (the Host Layer Initialization) data structure. In addition, the following figure illustrates the various initialization inputs needed by the Host Layer.

The [USB_HOST_Initialize](#) function is called to initialize the Host Layer. The initialization process may not complete when the [USB_HOST_Initialization](#) function exits. This will complete in subsequent calls to the [USB_HOST_Tasks](#) function.

Example: Specifying the TPL Table

```

/* This code shows an example of the USB Host Layer Initialization data
 * structure. In this case the number of TPL entries is one and there is only
 * one HCD (and hence only one USB bus) in the application */

const USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY USBTPLList[1] =
{
    /* This is the TPL */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL(0x08, 0x06, 0x50, NULL, USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE)
};

const USB_HOST_HCD hcdTable =
{
    /* The HCD table only contains one entry */
    .drvIndex = DRV_USBFS_INDEX_0,
    .hcdInterface = DRV_USBFS_HOST_INTERFACE
};

const USB_HOST_INIT usbHostInitData =
{
    /* This is the Host Layer Initialization data structure */
    .nTPLEntries = 1,
    .tplList = (USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY *)USBTPLList,
    .hostControllerDrivers = (USB_HOST_HCD *)&hcdTable
};

```

Host Layer - Application Interaction

This topic describes application interaction with the USB Host Layer.

Description

The Host Layer in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host stack provides the user application with API methods to operate the USB Host. The following sections discuss these API methods.

Registering the Event Handler

The application must register an event handler to receive device related USB Host events. The application sets the events handler by using the [USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet](#) function. An application defined context can also be provided. This context is returned along with the event handler and helps the application to identify the context in case of a dynamic application use cases. The host

layer provides events when a connected device requires more current than can be provided or when an unsupported device was attached. The following code shows an example of registering the event handler.

```
/* This code shows an example of registering an event handler with the
 * Host Layer */

USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This is the event handler implementation */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_EVENT_DEVICE_UNSUPPORTED:
            break;
        case USB_HOST_EVENT_DEVICE_REJECTED_INSUFFICIENT_POWER:
            break;
        case USB_HOST_EVENT_HUB_TIER_LEVEL_EXCEEDED:
            break;
        case USB_HOST_EVENT_PORT_OVERCURRENT_DETECTED:
            break;
        default:
            break;
    }

    return(USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    /* This shows an example app state machine implementation in which the event
     * handler is set and the bus is then enabled. */

    switch(appData.state)
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* Set the event handler and enable the bus */
            USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
            USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
            appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            break;

        default:
            break;
    }
}
```

Enabling the Bus

The user application must call the [USB_HOST_BusEnable](#) function to enable the bus. This function enables the 5V VBUS supply to root hub port thus powering up the bus powered device that are attached to the bus. The attached devices will then indicate attach. The root hub will provide these attach events to the Host layer which in turn starts the enumeration process. The application can call other Host Layer functions only after the bus has been enabled. The [USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled](#) function must be called to check if the enable process has completed. The following code shows an example application state machine that enables the bus.

```
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    /* The application shows an example of how the USB bus is enabled and how the
     * application must wait for the bus to enabled */

    switch(appData.state)
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:
```

```

/* Set the event handler and enable the bus */
USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
/* Check if the bus is enabled */
if(USB_HOST_BusEnabled(0))
{
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
}
break;

default:
break;
}
}

```

Attached Device Information

The application can use the `USB_HOST_DeviceFirstGet` and the `USB_HOST_DeviceNextGet` function to query for attached devices. The `USB_HOST_DeviceFirstGet` function will provide information on the first device that was attached to the bus. Information is returned in application specified `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO` object. The `USB_HOST_DeviceFirstGet` function will return the following information in the `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO` object:

- A Device Object Handle of the type `USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE`. The application can use this device object handle to perform operations on the device.
- The address of the device on the USB
- The bus to which this device belongs

The application can access the contents of the `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO` object but should not alter it contents. The same object is passed to the `USB_HOST_DeviceNextGet` function to get the information about the next device attached on the bus. Each call to this function defines the point at which the `USB_HOST_DeviceNextGet` function will start searching. If the device that is represented by the `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO` object has been disconnected, calling the `USB_HOST_DeviceNextGet` function will return an error. The search must be reset by calling the `USB_HOST_DeviceFirstGet` function. The application can define multiple `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO` objects to search on different busses or maintain different search points.

```

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO deviceInfo;
    USB_HOST_RESULT result;

    /* Get information about the first device on Bus 0 */
    result = USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst(0, &deviceInfo);

    while(result != USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST)
    {
        /* deviceInfo.address has the address of the bus */
        /* deviceInfo.deviceObjHandle will have the device object handle */

        /* Now we can get the information about the next device on the bus. */
        result = USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext(&deviceInfo);
    }
}

```

Suspend and Resume

The USB Host Layer allows the application to suspend and resume a device. The `USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend` and the `USB_HOST_DeviceResume` function are provided for this purpose. The application must use the device object handles, obtained from the `USB_HOST_DeviceFirstGet` or `USB_HOST_DeviceNextGet` function, to specify the device to suspend or resume when calling `USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend` and the `USB_HOST_DeviceResume()` function. The `USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended` function can be called to check the suspend status of the device.

In a case where the entire bus (and hence all device connected on the bus) need to be suspended or resumed, the application must call `USB_HOST_BusSuspend` and `USB_HOST_BusResume` functions to suspend or resume the entire bus. The `USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended` function can be called to check the suspend status of the bus.

Device String Descriptors

The application may want to obtain the string descriptors of a device. String descriptors are optionally provided by the USB device manufacturer and provide device information. The [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet](#) function is available to read the string descriptors. Calling this function will cause the Host Layer to invoke a control transfer request to read the string descriptor. The string descriptor will be available when the control transfer completes. The host layer calls the [USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK](#) type callback function, that is provided in the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet](#) function, when the control transfer has completed. The completion status of the request and the size of the string descriptor are available in the callback.

The function allows the application to obtain the supported string language IDs. The language ID of the string can be specified or a default can be used.

```
typedef struct
{
    /* This is an application specific data structure */
    char string[APP_STRING_SIZE];
    USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    uintptr_t context;
} APP_DATA;

APP_DATA appData;

void APP_USBHostStringDescriptorGetCallBack
(
    USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle,
    size_t size,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function is called when the string descriptor get function has
     * completed. */

    if(size != 0)
    {
        /* This means the function executed successfully and we have a string.
         * An application function prints the string to the console. */
        APP_PrintStringToConsole(appData.string, size);
    }
}

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO deviceInfo;
    USB_HOST_RESULT result;

    /* Get information about the first device on Bus 0 */
    result = USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst(0, &deviceInfo);

    if(result != USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST)
    {
        /* deviceInfo.deviceObjHandle will have the device object handle. Use
         * this device object handle along with the
         * USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet() function to read the product
         * string ID using the default Language ID. */

        USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet(deviceInfo.deviceObjHandle,
        USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_PRODUCT,
            USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID_DEFAULT, appData.string, APP_STRING_SIZE,
            &appData.requestHandle, APP_USBHostStringDescriptorGetCallBack, appData.context
        );
    }
}
```

Event Handling

This topic describes event handling.

Description

The USB Host Layer provides general device related events to the application. The application must register an event handling function by using the [USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet](#) function. A context specified at the time of calling this function, is returned in the event handler. The event handler must be registered before the bus is enabled. Refer to the description of [USB_HOST_DEVICE_EVENT](#) events for details on the available events.

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB Host Layer.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER | Defines the number of USB Host Controllers that this Host Layer must manage. |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of interface that the attached device can contain in order for the USB Host Layer to process the device. |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of devices to support. |
| | USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE | Defines if this USB Host application must support a Hub. |
| | USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL | Defines the maximum tier of connected hubs to be supported. |
| | USB_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of pipes that the application will need. |
| | USB_HOST_TRANSFERS_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of transfers that host layer should handle. |

Description

The following configuration parameters must be defined while using the USB Host Layer. The configuration macros that implement these parameters must be located in the `system_config.h` file in the application project and a compiler include path (to point to the folder that contains this file) should be specified.

[_USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_](#) Macro

File

[usb_host_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_.

[USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER](#) Macro

Defines the number of USB Host Controllers that this Host Layer must manage.

File

[usb_host_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Layer Controller Numbers

This constant defines the number of USB Host Controllers that this Host Layer must manage. The value of this constant should be atleast 1. Typical embedded applicatons contains only 1 USB host controller and hence only 1 USB. A microcontroller that features multiple USB modules can support multiple USB Host controllers and multipel USBs. USB controllers can also be interfaced to the microcontroller through common communication peripherals such as SPI.

This constant also defines the number of entries in the Host Controller Driver interface table, a pointer to which is passed in the hostControllerDrivers member of the [USB_HOST_INIT](#) data structure.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of interface that the attached device can contain in order for the USB Host Layer to process the device.

File

```
usb_host_config_template.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Device Interface Numbers

This constant defines the maximum number of interface that the attached device can contain in order for the USB Host Layer to process the device. The device will be processed if it only contains less interfaces than the value of this constant.

Remarks

Supporting more interface per device required more processing time and data memory.

Example

An attached device contains a configuration that contains 10 interfaces, but the `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER` is set to 5. The device will not be processed by the Host Layer. A dual CDC device needs to be supported. This device will have 4 interfaces. The `USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER` constant should be atleast 4.

USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of devices to support.

File

```
usb_host_config_template.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Layer Devices Number

This configuration constant defines the maximum number of devices that this USB Host application must support. The value of this constant should be atleast 1. Multiple devices can be supported if Hub support is enabled. See [USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE](#). The Hub itself will be treated as a device.

Remarks

Supporting multiple devices requires more data memory and processing time.

Example

If the USB Host application must support one USB Pen Drive and one USB Serial COM port (CDC Device), then this constant should be set to 3 (one additional device will be the Hub).

USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE Macro

Defines if this USB Host application must support a Hub.

File

[usb_host_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE
```

Description

USB Host Layer Hub Support

Specifying this macro will enable Hub Support. The HUB tier level to be supported is then specified by [USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL](#) constant. If this macro is specified, the file `usb_host_hub.c` must be included in the application.

Remarks

Not specifying this macro will disable Hub support.

USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL Macro

Defines the maximum tier of connected hubs to be supported.

File

[usb_host_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL
```

Description

USB Host Hub Tier Level

This constant defines the maximum hub tiers to be supported by the USB Host application. This constant is considered only if the [USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE](#) option is specified. If specified, the value should be atleast 1. This means that one hub should be supported. In a case where another hub will be connected to the hub which is connected to the USB Host, the value should be 2. As per the USB specification the maximum number of non-root hub tiers can be 5. Hence the value of this configuration constant should not exceed 5.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of pipes that the application will need.

File

[usb_host_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Layer Pipes Number

This configuration constant defines the maximum number of device communication pipes that Host Layer would need in the application. Every attached device requires atleast one pipe. This pipe is the control transfer pipe. Additional pipes are needed based on the type of device. For example, a standard Mass Storage Class device will need 2 pipes, a Communication Class Device will need 3 pipes, a HID device will need atleast 1 pipe. Vendor device will need communication pipe based on the device implementation. The number of pipes must also take into account the number of devices to support.

Remarks

This number should match the number of pipes configured in the HCD that this application will use, that is DRV_USBHS_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER or DRV_USBFS_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER.

Example

If a USB Host application must support 2 devices, either 2 USB pen driver or 2 CDC devices or a mix of both, then the pipes number should be set to

8. This is because the 2 CDC devices connected to the host will pose larger pipe requirement. Two such devices will require 2 control pipes, 2 interrupt pipes, 2 Bulk IN and 2 Bulk OUT pipes.

USB_HOST_TRANSFERS_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of transfers that host layer should handle.

File

```
usb_host_config_template.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_TRANSFERS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Layer Transfers Number

This constant defines the maximum number of transfers that the host layer should handle. The choice of this constant depends on the nature of devices that the USB Host application must support. Atleast two transfers are needed per pipe in the system. If the number of transfers provisioned in the system are insufficient, the USB Host will decline transfer request citing a busy status. This will affect the speed performance of the system.

Remarks

None.

Example

A USB Host application will support an MSD device and a CDC Device. The total number of pipes needed in the system are 7. The USB_HOST_TRANSFERS_NUMBER constant should be atleast 14 (2 per pipe). Specifying a larger number will enable more transfers to be queued but will also require more data memory.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the USB Host Layer Library.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Host Layer API. |

Required File(s)

 **MHC** *All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.*

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_host.c | This file implements the USB Host Layer interface and should be included in the project if USB Host mode operation is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Host Layer Library depends on the following modules:

- USB Driver Library (Host mode files)
- Timer System Service Library

Library Interface

a) Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_Deinitialize | Deinitializes the specified instance of the USB Host Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_Status | Gets the current status of the USB Host Layer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_Tasks | Maintains the USB Host Layer state machine. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_BusEnable | Starts host operations. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled | Checks if the bus is enabled. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended | Returns the suspend status of the bus. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_BusResume | Resumes the bus. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_BusSuspend | Suspends the bus. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst | Returns information about the first attached device on the bus. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext | Returns information about the next device on the bus. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended | Returns the suspend state of the device is suspended. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceResume | Resumes the selected device |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceSpeedGet | Returns the speed at which this device is operating. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet | Retrieves specified string descriptor from the device |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend | Suspends the specified device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet | USB Host Layer Event Handler Callback Function set function. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_Initialize | Initializes the USB Host layer instance specified by the index. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <code>USB_HOST_INIT</code> | Defines the data required to initialize a USB Host Layer instance. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE</code> | Host Layer Events Handler Function Response Type. |
| | <code>\.tpFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL)</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>\.tpFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID)</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>0</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>0x0000</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>0xFF</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>0xFF }</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>0xFFFF</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>0xFFFF }</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>1</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>classCode</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>false</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>initData</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>mask</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>pid</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>pid }</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>subClassCode</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>true</code> | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | <code>USB_HOST_BUS</code> | Defines a USB Bus Data Type. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO</code> | Defines the data type that is used by the <code>USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst()</code> and <code>USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext()</code> functions. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE</code> | Handle to an attached USB Device. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING</code> | Defines a defines types of strings that can be request through the <code>USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet()</code> function. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_EVENT</code> | Defines the different events that the USB Host Layer can generate. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER</code> | USB Host Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type |
| | <code>USB_HOST_HCD</code> | Defines the USB Host HCD Information object that is provided to the host layer. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE</code> | USB Host Request Handle Type |
| | <code>USB_HOST_RESULT</code> | USB Host Results. |
| | <code>USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK</code> | USB Host Device String Descriptor Request Complete Callback Function Type |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | vid | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | USB_HOST_BUS_ALL | USB Host Bus All |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines an invalid USB Device Object Handle. |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID_DEFAULT | Defines the default Lang ID to be used while obtaining the string. |
| | USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Request Invalid Handle |
| | USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN | USB Host Result Minimum Constant. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Host Layer Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Functions

[USB_HOST_Deinitialize Function](#)

Deinitializes the specified instance of the USB Host Layer.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
void USB_HOST_Deinitialize(SYS_MODULE_OBJ hostLayerObject);
```

Returns

None.

Description

Deinitializes the USB Host Layer. All internal data structures will be reset.

Remarks

Once the Initialize operation has been called, the Deinitialize operation must be called before the Initialize operation can be called again. This routine will NEVER block waiting for hardware.

Preconditions

Function [USB_HOST_Initialize](#) should have been called before calling this function.

Example

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ          object;      // Returned from USB_HOST_Initialize
SYS_STATUS              status;

USB_HOST_Deinitialize(object);

status = USB_HOST_Status(object);
if (SYS_MODULE_DEINITIALIZED != status)
{
    // Can check again later if you need to know
    // when the driver is deinitialized.
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| object | USB Host layer object handle, returned from the USB_HOST_Initialize routine |

Function

void USB_HOST_Deinitialize(SYS_MODULE_OBJ object)

USB_HOST_Status Function

Gets the current status of the USB Host Layer.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
SYS_STATUS USB_HOST_Status(SYS_MODULE_OBJ hostLayerObject);
```

Returns

SYS_STATUS_READY - Indicates that the USB Host layer is ready for operations.

SYS_STATUS_BUSY - The initialization is in progress.

SYS_STATUS_DEINITIALIZED - Indicates that the driver has been deinitialized

Description

This routine provides the current status of the USB Host Layer.

Remarks

This function is typically called by the MPLAB Harmony System to check the system status of the USB Host Layer. This function is not intended to be called directly by the application tasks routine.

Preconditions

Function [USB_HOST_Initialize](#) should have been called before calling this function.

Example

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ          object;      // Returned from USB_HOST_Initialize
SYS_STATUS              status;

status = USB_HOST_Status(object);
if (SYS_STATUS_READY == status)
{
    // The USB Host system is ready and is running.
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| object | USB Host Layer object handle, returned from the USB_HOST_Initialize routine |

Function

SYS_STATUS USB_HOST_Status(SYS_MODULE_OBJ object)

USB_HOST_Tasks Function

Maintains the USB Host Layer state machine.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
void USB_HOST_Tasks(SYS_MODULE_OBJ hostLayerObject);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This routine maintains the USB Host layer's state machine. It must be called frequently to ensure proper operation of the USB. This function should be called from the SYS_Tasks function.

Remarks

This routine is not intended to be called directly by an application. It is called by the MPLAB Harmony System Tasks function.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_Initialize](#) routine must have been called for the specified USB Host Layer instance.

Example

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ object; // Returned from USB_HOST_Initialize

void SYS_Tasks(void)
{
    USB_HOST_Tasks (object);

    // Do other tasks
}
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| object | Object handle for the specified driver instance (returned from USB_HOST_Initialize) |

Function

```
void USB_HOST_Tasks (SYS_MODULE_OBJ object);
```

USB_HOST_BusEnable Function

Starts host operations.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_BusEnable(USB_HOST_BUS bus);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS if the request was accepted. USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN if the specified bus is invalid (it does not exist in the system). USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE if an unknown failure occurred.

Description

The function starts the operation of the USB Host Bus. It enables the root hub associated with specified bus and starts the process of detecting attached devices and enumerating them. The [USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet\(\)](#) function should have been called to register an application host layer event handler before the bus is enabled (before the USB_HOST_BusEnable() function is called). This will ensure that the application does not miss any events.

Remarks

The Host Layer may generate events after the USB_HOST_BusEnable() function is called. The application should have registered an event handler using the [USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet\(\)](#) function to handle these events. The [USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet\(\)](#) function should have been called before the USB_HOST_BusEnable() function is called.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_Initialize\(\)](#) function should have been called before calling this function.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bus | the bus to be enabled. If this is set to USB_HOST_BUS_ALL , all buses will be enabled. |

Function

[USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_BusEnable\(USB_HOST_BUS bus\)](#)

USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled Function

Checks if the bus is enabled.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled(USB_HOST_BUS bus);
```

Returns

[USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE](#) if the bus is enabled. [USB_HOST_RESULT_FALSE](#) if the bus is not enabled..
[USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN](#) if the specified bus is invalid (it does not exist in the system).
[USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE](#) if an unknown failure occurred.

Description

The function returns the enable status of the bus. It can be called after the [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function is called, to check if the bus has been enabled yet. If the bus parameter is set to [USB_HOST_BUS_ALL](#), then the function will check the enable status of all the busses and will return true only if all the busses are enabled.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_Initialize\(\)](#) function should have been called before calling this function.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bus | the bus that needs to checked for enable status. If this is set to USB_HOST_BUS_ALL , all buses will be checked. |

Function

[USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled\(USB_HOST_BUS bus\)](#)

USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended Function

Returns the suspend status of the bus.

File[usb_host.h](#)**C**

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended(USB_HOST_BUS bus);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE - if the bus is suspended. USB_HOST_RESULT_FALSE - if the bus is not suspended.
 USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED - if the bus was not enabled. USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN - if the specified bus does not exist in the system. USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - an unknown error occurred.

Description

This function returns suspend status of the specified USB bus. This function can be used to check the completion of the Suspend operation started by using the [USB_HOST_BusSuspend\(\)](#) function. The function would return USB_HOST_RESULT_FALSE if the bus is not suspended. Calling the [USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended\(\)](#) with bus specified as [USB_HOST_BUS_ALL](#) returns the suspend status of the all USB segments that are managed by the host layer. The function would return USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE only if all the bus are in a suspended state.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function should have been called to enable the bus.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|------------------------------------------------|
| bus | the bus whose suspend status is to be queried. |

Function

[USB_HOST_RESULT](#) [USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended](#) ([USB_HOST_BUS](#) bus)

USB_HOST_BusResume Function

Resumes the bus.

File[usb_host.h](#)**C**

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_BusResume(USB_HOST_BUS bus);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - if the request was successful or if the bus was already resumed.
 USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN - the request failed because the bus does not exist in the system.
 USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED - the bus was not enabled. USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown error occurred.

Description

The function resumes the bus. All devices on the bus will be receive resume signaling. If bus is specified as [USB_HOST_BUS_ALL](#), all the buses managed by this host will be resumed.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function should have been called to enable the bus.

Example

```
// Resume bus 0
USB_HOST_BusResume( 0 );

// Resume all buses
USB_HOST_BusSuspend(USB_HOST_BUS_ALL);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bus | The bus to be resume or USB_HOST_BUS_ALL to resume all buses. |

Function

[USB_HOST_RESULT](#) [USB_HOST_BusResume](#) ([USB_HOST_BUS](#) bus);

USB_HOST_BusSuspend Function

Suspends the bus.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB\_HOST\_BusSuspend(USB_HOST_BUS bus);
```

Returns

[USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - if the request was successful. [USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED](#) - if the bus was not enabled. [USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown error has occurred. [USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN](#) - if the specified bus does not exist in the system.

Description

The function suspends the bus. All devices on the bus will be suspended. If bus is specified as [USB_HOST_BUS_ALL](#), all the buses managed by this host will be suspended.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function should have been called to enable the bus.

Example

```
// Suspend the bus 0
USB_HOST_BusSuspend( 0 );

// Suspend all buses
USB_HOST_BusSuspend(USB_HOST_BUS_ALL);
```

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bus | The bus to be suspended or USB_HOST_BUS_ALL to suspend all buses. |

Function

[USB_HOST_RESULT](#) [USB_HOST_BusSuspend](#) ([USB_HOST_BUS](#) bus);

USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst Function

Returns information about the first attached device on the bus.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst(USB_HOST_BUS bus, USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO * deviceInfo);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - The function executed successfully.
USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST - There are no attached devices on the bus.
USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN - The specified bus does not exist in the system.
USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED - The specified bus is not enabled.
USB_HOST_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID - the deviceInfo parameter is NULL.
USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - an unknown failure occurred.

Description

This function returns information about the first attached device on the specified bus. The [USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext\(\)](#) function can be used to get the reference to the next attached device on the bus. The [USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO](#) object is provided by the application. The device information will be populated into this object. If there are no devices attached on the bus, the function will set the deviceObjHandle parameter, in the [USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO](#) object, to [USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_BusEnable](#) function should have been called to enable detection of attached devices.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bus | the bus to be queried for attached devices. |
| deviceInfo | output parameter. Will contain device information when the function returns. If the deviceObjHandle member of the structure contains USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID , then there are no attached devices on the bus and the deviceAddress and the bus member of the info object will contain indeterminate values. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst
(
    USB_HOST_BUS bus,
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO * deviceInfo
);
```

USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext Function

Returns information about the next device on the bus.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext(USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO * deviceInfo);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - The function executed successfully. USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST - There are no attached devices on the bus. USB_HOST_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID - the deviceInfo parameter is NULL.

USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN - the device specified in deviceInfo does not exist in the system. The search should be restarted. USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - an unknown failure occurred. Application can restart the search by calling the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) function.

Description

This function returns information of the next device attached on the bus. The [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) function should have been called at least once on the deviceInfo object. Then calling this function repeatedly on the deviceInfo object will return information about the next attached device on the bus. When there are no more attached devices to report, the function returns USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST.

Calling the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) function on the deviceInfo object after the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext\(\)](#) function has been called will cause the host to reset the deviceInfo object to point to the first attached device.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) function must have been called before calling this function.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| deviceInfo | pointer to the USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO object. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext (USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO * deviceInfo);
```

USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended Function

Returns the suspend state of the device is suspended.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended(USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE - if the device is suspended. USB_HOST_RESULT_FALSE - if the device is not suspended.

USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN - the specified device does not exist in the system. USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred.

Description

This function returns the suspend state of the specified USB device. This function can be used to check the completion of the Resume operation started by using the [USB_HOST_Resume\(\)](#) function. If the Resume signaling has completed, the [USB_HOST_IsSuspended\(\)](#) function would return USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The `USB_HOST_BusEnable()` function should have been called.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>deviceObjHandle</code> | handle to the device that needs to be checked for suspend status. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended
(
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_DeviceResume Function

Resumes the selected device

File

`usb_host.h`

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceResume(USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle);
```

Returns

`USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The request was accepted and the device will be resumed or the device was already resumed. `USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - The request failed. The device may have been detached. `USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred.

Description

The function resumes the selected device. A device can be resumed only if it was suspended.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>deviceObjHandle</code> | handle to the device to be resumed. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceResume
(
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_DeviceSpeedGet Function

Returns the speed at which this device is operating.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceSpeedGet(USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceHandle, USB_SPEED * speed);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - The function was successful. speed will contain the speed of the device.
USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN - The device does not exist in the system. speed will contain USB_SPEED_ERROR.
USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - an unknown error occurred.

Description

This function returns the speed at which this device is operating.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_Initialize\(\)](#) function should have been called.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| deviceObjHandle | handle to the device whose speed is required. |
| speed | output parameter. Will contain the speed of the device if the function was successful. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceSpeedGet
(
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle,
    USB_SPEED * speed
)
```

USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet Function

Retrieves specified string descriptor from the device

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet(USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle,
USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING stringType, uint16_t languageID, void * stringDescriptor, size_t length,
USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle, USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK callback,
uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request was scheduled successfully. requestHandle will contain a valid request handle.

`USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - The request failed because the device was detached.

`USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown error occurred. `USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY` - The host layer cannot take more requests at this point. The application should try later.

`USB_HOST_RESULT_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_UNSUPPORTED` - The device does not support the specified string descriptor type.

Description

This function retrieves the specified string descriptor from the device. This function will cause the host layer to issue a control transfer to the device. When the string descriptor is available, the host layer will call the callback function to let the application know that the request has completed.

The function will return a valid request handle in `requestHandle`, if the request was successful. This request handle will be returned in the callback function. The size of the `stringDescriptor` buffer is specified by the `length` parameter. Only length number of bytes will be retrieved. The type of device string descriptor to be retrieved is specified by the `stringType` parameter. The supported language IDs, manufacturer, product and serial number strings can be obtained. While obtaining the supported language IDs, the `languageID` parameter will be ignored.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The `USB_HOST_BusEnable()` function should have been called.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>deviceObjHandle</code> | handle to the device whose string descriptor is to be retrieved. |
| <code>stringType</code> | type of string descriptor to be retrieved |
| <code>languageID</code> | the language ID of the string descriptor |
| <code>stringDescriptor</code> | output buffer for the descriptor |
| <code>length</code> | size of the specified output buffer |
| <code>requestHandle</code> | This is an output parameter. It will contain a valid request handle if the request was successful. It will contain <code>USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID</code> if the request was not successful. |
| <code>callback</code> | Function that will be called when this request completes. If this is NULL, then the application will not receive indication of completion. |
| <code>context</code> | Calling application context to be returned in the callback function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet
(
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle,
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING stringType,
    uint16_t languageID,
    void * stringDescriptor,
    size_t length,
    USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK callback,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend Function

Suspends the specified device.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend(USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request was accepted and the device will be suspended.
 USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN - The request failed. The device may have been detached.
 USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred.

Description

The function suspends the specified device.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function should have been called.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| deviceObjHandle | handle to the device to suspend. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend
(
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet Function

USB Host Layer Event Handler Callback Function set function.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t
context);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS - The function was successful. USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred.

Description

This is the USB Host Layer Event Handler Callback Set function. An application can receive USB Host Layer events by using this function to register and event handler callback function. The application can additionally specify a specific context which will be returned with the event handler callback function. The event handler must be set (this function must be called) before any of the USB buses are enabled.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The host layer should have been initialized.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| eventHandler | Pointer to the call back function. The host layer notifies the application about host layer events by calling this function. If this is NULL, then events will not be generated. |
| context | application specific context. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_RESULT USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER * eventHandler,
    uintptr_t context
)
```

USB_HOST_Initialize Function

Initializes the USB Host layer instance specified by the index.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ USB_HOST_Initialize(const SYS_MODULE_INIT * init);
```

Returns

Return a SYS_MODULE_OBJ_INVALID if the initialization failed.

Description

This routine initializes the USB Host Layer. This function must be called before any other Host layer function can be called. The initialization data is specified by the init parameter. This function is typically called in the SYS_Initialize() function. The initialization completion may require the [USB_HOST_Tasks\(\)](#) routine to execute. The initialization function does not start the operation of the Host on the USB. This must be done explicitly via the [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function. This function will initialize all client drivers listed in the TPL.

Remarks

This routine must be called before any other USB Host routine is called. This routine should only be called once during system initialization unless [USB_HOST_Deinitialize](#) is called to deinitialize the Host Layer instance. This routine will NEVER block for hardware access. The [USB_HOST_Tasks\(\)](#) function should be called to complete the initialization.

Preconditions

The USB Host Controller driver initialization should be called somewhere in the SYS_Initialize() function.

Example

TBD.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| init | Pointer to a USB_HOST_INIT data structure containing data necessary to initialize the driver. |

Function

```
SYS_MODULE_OBJ USB_HOST_Initialize
(
const SYS_MODULE_INIT * const init
)
```

b) Data Types and Constants

USB_HOST_INIT Structure

Defines the data required to initialize a USB Host Layer instance.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    size_t nTPLEntries;
    USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY * tplList;
    USB_HOST_HCD * hostControllerDrivers;
} USB_HOST_INIT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| size_t nTPLEntries; | Size of the TPL table |
| USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY * tplList; | Pointer to the TPL table for this host layer implementation. |
| USB_HOST_HCD * hostControllerDrivers; | This is a pointer to a table of host controller drivers that the host layer will operate on. The number of entries in this table is specified via the USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER configuration macro in system_config.h |

Description

USB Host Initialization Data Structure

This data type defines the data required to initialize the host layer. A pointer to a structure of this type is required by the [USB_HOST_Initialize\(\)](#) function.

Remarks

This data structure is specific to the PIC32MX and PIC32WK implementation of the USB Host layer.

USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE Enumeration

Host Layer Events Handler Function Response Type.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE = 0
} USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE = 0 | Returning this value indicates no application response to the host event |

Description

Host Layer Events Handler Function Response Type.

This is the definition of the Host Layer Event Handler Response Type.

Remarks

None.

`\.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL) Enumeration`

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid;
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id;
uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while

matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the TPL_FLAG_VID_PID flag cannot be combined with TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS.

Remarks

None.

\.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID) Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
\ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; } cl_sc_p; } id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; } tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; }
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the TPL_FLAG_VID_PID flag cannot be combined with TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS.

Remarks

None.

0 Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid;
} vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; }
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The tplFlag member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the TPL_FLAG_VID_PID flag cannot be combined with TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS.

Remarks

None.

0x0000 Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id;
uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; }
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

0xFF Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \
.tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF }, \
.pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \
.tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver = driver\ } 
typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; } vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; } tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

0xFF } Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid;
} vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

0xFFFF Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver}\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

0xFFFF } Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id;
uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

1 Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \
.tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF }, \
.pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \
.tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver = driver\ } 
typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; } vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; } tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

classCode Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver}\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; } vid_pid;
struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id;
uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

false Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File[usb_host.h](#)**C**

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

initData Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver}\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid;
} vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY,
USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

mask Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
\ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

pid Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver}\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

pid } Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
\ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;

```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

subClassCode Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver}\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

true Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; }
vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; } USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_BUS Type

Defines a USB Bus Data Type.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef uint8_t USB_HOST_BUS;
```

Description

USB Bus Data Type

This data type defines a USB Bus. In microcontroller devices, that may have multiple USB peripherals, this type identifies the USB bus associated with each peripheral. Bus numbers start from 0 and counts up to include all the busses in the system. The total number of busses and the mapping between a bus and the USB controller is specified in the Host Layer initialization data structure.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO Structure

Defines the data type that is used by the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) and [USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext\(\)](#) functions.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle;
    uint8_t deviceAddress;
    USB_HOST_BUS bus;
} USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE deviceObjHandle; | USB Host Device Object Handle |
| uint8_t deviceAddress; | Address of the device on the USB |
| USB_HOST_BUS bus; | The bus to which this device is connected |

Description

USB Host Device Info Type

This data type defines the type of data that is used by the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) and [USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext\(\)](#) functions. The application must provide an object of this type to these functions to obtain information about the devices attached on the USB.

Remarks

The application must only instantiate this data structure and should not modify its contents. Multiple objects can be instantiated and used.

USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE Type

Handle to an attached USB Device.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host Device Object Handle

This data type defines the type of handle to an attached USB Device. This handle uniquely identifies the attached device. A handle of this type is returned in the deviceObjHandle member of the [USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO](#) structure when the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) and the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext\(\)](#) functions are called.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING Enumeration

Defines a defines types of strings that can be request through the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID = 0,
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_MANUFACTURER,
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_PRODUCT,
    USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_SERIAL_NUMBER
} USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID = 0 | Specifies the language ID string |
| USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_MANUFACTURER | Specifies the manufacturer string |
| USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_PRODUCT | Specifies the product string |
| USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_SERIAL_NUMBER | Specifies the serial number string |

Description

USB Host Device String Type

This type defines the types of strings that can be request through the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function. The *stringType* parameter in the function call can be set any one of these types.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_EVENT Enumeration

Defines the different events that the USB Host Layer can generate.

File[usb_host.h](#)**C**

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_EVENT_DEVICE_REJECTED_INSUFFICIENT_POWER,
    USB_HOST_EVENT_DEVICE_UNSUPPORTED,
    USB_HOST_EVENT_HUB_TIER_LEVEL_EXCEEDED,
    USB_HOST_EVENT_PORT_OVERCURRENT_DETECTED
} USB_HOST_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_EVENT_DEVICE_REJECTED_INSUFFICIENT_POWER | This event occurs when device needs more current than what the host can supply. |
| USB_HOST_EVENT_DEVICE_UNSUPPORTED | This event occurs when a host layer could not attach any drivers to the attached device or when an error has occurred. There is no event data associated with this event. |
| USB_HOST_EVENT_HUB_TIER_LEVEL_EXCEEDED | This event occurs when the number of hubs connected to the host exceeds the configured maximum number of hubs USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL . There is no event data associated with this event. |
| USB_HOST_EVENT_PORT_OVERCURRENT_DETECTED | This event occurs when an over-current condition is detected at the root <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • hub or an external hub port. |

Description

USB Host Events

This data type defines the different events that USB Host Layer can generate. The application is intended recipient of these events. Some events return event related data. The application must register an event handler with the host layer (via the [USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet\(\)](#) function) before enabling any of the buses.

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER](#) Type

USB Host Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type

File[usb_host.h](#)**C**

```
typedef USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE (* USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_EVENT event, void *
eventData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Layer Event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a Host Layer Event handling function who's function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the Host Layer. The Host Layer will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

event - Type of event generated.

pData - This parameter should be type cast to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_HOST_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HCD Structure

Defines the USB Host HCD Information object that is provided to the host layer.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    SYS_MODULE_INDEX drvIndex;
    void * hcdInterface;
} USB_HOST_HCD;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SYS_MODULE_INDEX drvIndex; | Index of the USB Host Controller driver that the host layer should open and use. |
| void * hcdInterface; | USB Host Controller Driver function pointers |

Description

USB Host Controller Driver Information

This data type defines the data required to connect a Host Controller Driver to the host layer. The USB Host layer used the HCD routines to access the root hub and the USB.

Remarks

This data structure is specific to the PIC32 implementation of the USB Host layer.

USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE Type

USB Host Request Handle Type

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host Request Handle Type

This type defines the USB Host Request Handle. This type of handle is returned by the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function. Each request will generate a unique handle. This handle will be returned in the event associated with the completion of the string descriptor request.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_RESULT Enumeration

USB Host Results.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY = USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_UNSUPPORTED,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_PIPE_HANDLE_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_INTERFACE_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_CONFIGURATION_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_FALSE = 0,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE = 1,
    USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS = USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE
} USB_HOST_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY = USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN | Indicates that the Host Layer cannot accept any requests at this point |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_UNSUPPORTED | The device does not support the request string descriptor |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED | Request was aborted |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED | Request was stalled |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_PIPE_HANDLE_INVALID | The specified pipe is not valid |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST | The end of the device list was reached. |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_INTERFACE_UNKNOWN | The specified interface is not available |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID | A NULL parameter was passed to the function |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_CONFIGURATION_UNKNOWN | The specified configuration does not exist on this device. |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED | A bus operation was requested but the bus was not operated |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN | The specified bus does not exist in the system |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN | The specified device does not exist in the system |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_FAILURE | An unknown failure has occurred |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_FALSE = 0 | Indicates a false condition |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE = 1 | Indicate a true condition |
| USB_HOST_RESULT_SUCCESS = USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE | Indicates that the operation succeeded or the request was accepted and will be processed. |

Description

USB Host Result

This enumeration defines the possible returns values of USB Host Layer API. A function may only return some of the values in this enumeration. Refer to function description for details on which values will be returned.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK Type

USB Host Device String Descriptor Request Complete Callback Function Type

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK)(USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE
requestHandle, size_t size, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Device String Descriptor Request Complete Callback Function Type

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Device String Descriptor Request Complete Callback Function. The application must specify a pointer to a function who's function signature (parameter and return value types) matches the type specified by this function pointer in order to call backs from the Host Layer when the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function has completed its operation. The description of the callback function parameters is given here.

requestHandle - a handle that is unique to this request. This will match the handle that was returned by the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function.

size - size of the returned string descriptor. If the string descriptor could not be obtained, the size will be zero.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ {
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ {
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
{id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =

```

```
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; } vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; } id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; } tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; }
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The tplFlag member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the TPL_FLAG_VID_PID flag cannot be combined with TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver\ } .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver\ } \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ } \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ } \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver\ } \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ } \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ } \ .
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ } \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid;
} vid_pid; struct { uint8_t classCode; uint8_t subClassCode; uint8_t protocolCode; } cl_sc_p; }
id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; }
```

```
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; }
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The tplFlag member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the TPL_FLAG_VID_PID flag cannot be combined with TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS.

Remarks

None.

vid Enumeration

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    initData,
    classCode,
    subClassCode,
    protocolCode
} driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType =
(TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass =
false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, subClassCode, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData,
driver)\ \ .id.cl_sc_p = { classCode, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \
.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \ .tplFlags.ignoreClass = false, \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF }, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid =
{ 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL), \
.tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol = true, \ .tplFlags.ignoreProtocol =
true, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \
.hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID =
0, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .
.id.vid_pid = { vid, pid, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \
.\id.vid_pid = { vid, pid }, \ .pidMask = mask, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID),
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 0, \ .hostClientDriverInitData =
initData, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, driver)\ \ .id.vid_pid = { 0xFFFF, 0xFFFF },
\ .pidMask = 0x0000, \ .tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID), \ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1,
\ .tplFlags.ignoreVIDPID = 1, \ .hostClientDriverInitData = initData, \ .hostClientDriver =
driver\ } typedef struct { union { uint32_t value; struct { uint16_t vid; uint16_t pid; } cl_sc_p;
} id; uint16_t pidMask; struct { uint8_t driverType :1; uint8_t ignoreClass :1; uint8_t
ignoreSubClass :1; uint8_t ignoreProtocol :1; uint8_t pidMasked :1; uint8_t ignoreVIDPID :1; } \
tplFlags; void * hostClientDriverInitData; void * hostClientDriver; }
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY, USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY;
```

Description

USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag

This enumeration defines the possible matching criteria flag that can be specified for a Host TPL table entry. The `tplFlag` member of the TPL table entry should be set to one or more of these flags. These flags define the criteria that the Host layer will use while matching the attached device to the TPL table entry. For example, if a device is specified by class, subclass and protocol specifying the `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS` flag will cause the Host layer to ignore the subclass while comparing the class, subclass and protocol of the attached device.

Multiple flags can be specified as a logically OR'ed combination. While combining multiple flags, VID and PID criteria flags cannot be combined with the Class, Subclass, Protocol flags. For example, the `TPL_FLAG_VID_PID` flag cannot be combined with `TPL_FLAG_IGNORE_SUBCLASS`.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_BUS_ALL Macro

USB Host Bus All

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_BUS_ALL ((USB_HOST_BUS)(0xFF))
```

Description

USB Host Bus All

This constant defines the value that should be passed to the [USB_HOST_BusSuspend\(\)](#), [USB_HOST_BusResume\(\)](#) and [USB_HOST_IsBusSuspended\(\)](#) function if all the USB segments must be addressed. Passing this constant to these functions will cause Suspend and Resume operation to affect all the USB segments and hence affect all connected devices.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

Defines an invalid USB Device Object Handle.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host Invalid Device Object Handle

This constant defines an invalid USB Device Object Handle. The [USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst\(\)](#) and the [USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext\(\)](#) functions return this value in the `deviceObjHandle` member of the [USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO](#) object when there are no attached devices to report.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID_DEFAULT Macro

Defines the default Lang ID to be used while obtaining the string.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID_DEFAULT ( 0 )
```

Description

USB Host Device String Default Lang ID

This constant defines the default Lang ID. When then languageID parameter in the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function is set to this value, the function will specify the default Lang ID while requesting the string from the device.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host Request Invalid Handle

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host Request Invalid Handle

This constant defines an Invalid USB Host Request Handle. This handle is returned by the [USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet\(\)](#) function when the request was not accepted.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN Macro

USB Host Result Minimum Constant.

File

[usb_host.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN -100
```

Description

USB Host Result Minimum Constant

Constant identifying the USB Host Result Minimum Value. This constant is used in the [USB_HOST_RESULT](#) enumeration.

Remarks

None.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| usb_host.h | USB Host Layer Interface Header |
| usb_host_config_template.h | USB host configuration template header file. |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_host.h

USB Host Layer Interface Header

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | \.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL) | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | \.tplFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID) | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 0 | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 0x0000 | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 0xFF | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 0xFF } | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 0xFFFF | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 0xFFFF } | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | 1 | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | classCode | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | false | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | initData | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | mask | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | pid | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | pid } | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | subClassCode | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | true | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING | Defines a defines types of strings that can be request through the USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet() function. |
| | USB_HOST_EVENT | Defines the different events that the USB Host Layer can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE | Host Layer Events Handler Function Response Type. |
| | USB_HOST_RESULT | USB Host Results. |
| | USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |
| | vid | USB Host Layer TPL Table Entry Matching Criteria flag |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_HOST_BusEnable | Starts host operations. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled | Checks if the bus is enabled. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended | Returns the suspend status of the bus. |

| | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_BusResume | Resumes the bus. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_BusSuspend | Suspends the bus. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_Deinitialize | Deinitializes the specified instance of the USB Host Layer. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst | Returns information about the first attached device on the bus. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext | Returns information about the next device on the bus. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended | Returns the suspend state of the device is suspended. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceResume | Resumes the selected device |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceSpeedGet | Returns the speed at which this device is operating. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet | Retrieves specified string descriptor from the device |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend | Suspends the specified device. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet | USB Host Layer Event Handler Callback Function set function. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_Initialize | Initializes the USB Host layer instance specified by the index. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_Status | Gets the current status of the USB Host Layer. |
| <code>≡◊</code> | USB_HOST_Tasks | Maintains the USB Host Layer state machine. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_BUS_ALL | USB Host Bus All |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines an invalid USB Device Object Handle. |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID_DEFAULT | Defines the default Lang ID to be used while obtaining the string. |
| | USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Request Invalid Handle |
| | USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN | USB Host Result Minimum Constant. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO | Defines the data type that is used by the USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst() and USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext() functions. |
| | USB_HOST_HCD | Defines the USB Host HCD Information object that is provided to the host layer. |
| | USB_HOST_INIT | Defines the data required to initialize a USB Host Layer instance. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_BUS | Defines a USB Bus Data Type. |
| | USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE | Handle to an attached USB Device. |
| | USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Layer Event Handler Function Pointer Type |
| | USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host Request Handle Type |
| | USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK | USB Host Device String Descriptor Request Complete Callback Function Type |

Description

USB Host Layer Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface to the USB HOST layer.

File Name

`usb_host.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_host_config_template.h

USB host configuration template header file.

Macros

| Name | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER | Defines the number of USB Host Controllers that this Host Layer must manage. |
| USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of interface that the attached device can contain in order for the USB Host Layer to process the device. |
| USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of devices to support. |
| USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE | Defines if this USB Host application must support a Hub. |
| USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL | Defines the maximum tier of connected hubs to be supported. |
| USB_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of pipes that the application will need. |
| USB_HOST_TRANSFERS_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of transfers that host layer should handle. |

Description

USB Host Layer Configuration constants

This file contains USB host layer compile time options (macros) that are to be configured by the user. This file is a template file and must be used as an example only. This file must not be directly included in the project.

File Name

usb_host_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library

This section describes the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack allows USB Host applications to support and interact with Audio v1.0 USB devices. The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver has the following features:

- Supports Audio v1.0 device with multiple streaming interfaces
- Designed to support multi-client operation
- RTOS ready
- Features an event driver non-clocking application interaction model
- Supports queuing of read and write data transfers

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library and provides information and

examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver interacts with Host Layer to control the attached Audio v1.0 device. The USB Host Layer attaches the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver to the Audio v1.0 device when it meets the matching criteria specified in the USB Host TPL table. The Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver abstracts the details of sending Audio v1.0 class specific control transfer commands by providing easy to use non-blocking API to send these command. A command when issued is assigned a request handle. This request handle is returned in the event that is generated when the command has been processed, and can be used by the application to track the command.

While transferring data Audio Stream Data over the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver abstracts details such as the Audio Streaming interface, endpoints and endpoint size. The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver internally (and without application intervention) validates the Audio v1.0 class specific device descriptors and opens isochronous pipes. While transferring data, multiple read and write requests can be queued. Each such request gets assigned a transfer handle. The transfer handle for a transfer request is returned along with the completion event for that transfer request. The data transfer routines are implemented in `usb_host_audio_v1_0.c`.

Library Overview

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver can be grouped functionally as shown in the following table.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Audio Device access Functions | These functions allow application clients to perform audio control transfers, register event handlers and get the number of stream groups and the details of each audio stream. These functions are implemented in the <code>usb_host_audio_v1_0.c</code> file. |
| Audio Stream Access Functions | These functions allow the application client to open audio streams, set parameters of an audio stream, and perform data transfer operations on an audio stream. These functions are implemented in the <code>usb_host_audio_v1_0.c</code> file. |

How the Library Works

Describes how the library works and how it should be used.

Description

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver provides the user application with an easy-to-use interface to the attached Audio v1.0 device. The USB Host Layer initializes the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver when a device is attached. This process does not require application intervention. The following sections describe the steps and methods required for the user application to interact with the attached devices.

TPL Table Configuration for Audio v1.0 Devices

Describes how to configure TPL table options, which includes a code example.

Description

The Host Layer attaches the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver to a device when the device class in the Interface descriptor matches the entry in the TPL table. When specifying the entry for the Audio v1.0 device, the entry for the Audio v1.0 device, the driver interface must be set to `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE`. This will attach the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver to the device when the USB Host matches the TPL entry to the device. The following code shows possible TPL table options for matching Audio v1.0 Devices.

```

/* This code shows an example of TPL table entries for supporting Audio v1.0
 * devices. Note the driver interface is set to USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE. This
 * will load the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver when there is TPL match */

const USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY USBTPLList[1] =
{
    /* This entry looks for any Audio v1.0 device. The Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver will
     * check if this is an Audio Streaming Device and will then load itself */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS(USB_AUDIO_CLASS_CODE, NULL, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE),
};


```

Detecting Device Attach

Describes how to detect when a Audio v1.0 Device is attached, which includes a code example.

Description

The application will need to know when a Audio v1.0 Device is attached. To receive this attach event from the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver, the application must register an Attach Event Handler by calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet](#) function. This function should be called before the [USB_HOST_BusEnable](#) function is called, else the application may miss Audio v1.0 attach events. It can be called multiple times to register multiple event handlers, each for different application clients that need to know about Audio v1.0 Device Attach events.

The total number of event handlers that can be registered is defined by [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER](#) configuration option in `system_config.h`. When a device is attached, the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver will send the attach event to all the registered event handlers. In this event handler, the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver will pass a [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ](#) that can be opened to gain access to the device.

The following code shows an example of how to register attach event handlers.

```

/* This code shows an example of Audio v1.0 Attach Event Handler and how this
 * attach event handler can be registered with the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver */
bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

/* Audio attach event listener function */
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
            else
            {
                /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
            }
        break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
                 * associated with this event.*/
                isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
            }
    }
}

```

```

        break;
    }
    break;
}

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    switch (appData.state)
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* In this state the application enables the USB Host Bus. Note
             * how the Audio v1.0 Attach event handler is registered before the bus
             * is enabled. */

            USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
(uintptr_t) 0);
            USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
            appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            /* Here we wait for the bus enable operation to complete. */
            break;
    }
}

```

Obtaining Audio v1.0 Device Audio Stream Details

Describes how to obtain audio stream details, which includes a code example.

Description

The application will need to know more details about an attached audio device like Number of Audio Stream Groups and audio format details of each audio stream in audio stream group. Application will need to search through all of the audio streams and find if a suitable audio stream is available before it can open a stream and start communicating.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet](#) function can be used to know how many stream groups are available in the attached Audio device. This function takes [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ](#) as an argument and returns [uint8_t](#) value as number of stream groups.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) function can be used to find out audio format details of first audio stream in a Stream Groups. This function takes [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ](#), stream group index and pointer to the

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO](#) as arguments. The stream index can any number between zero to number of stream groups returned by [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet](#) function. The audio stream object returned as part of [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ](#) structure.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) function can be used to find details about subsequent audio streams. When there are no more audio streams available in the specified audio stream group this function return

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_END_OF_STREAM_LIST](#) error. It is application's responsibility to map and Audio Stream group and an audio stream.

If the application is looking for a audio stream with certain properties, application need compare audio stream properties with members of the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO](#) structure returned by [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) functions.

```
/* This code shows an example of getting details about audio stream
   in an attached Audio v1.0 device.*/
```

```
/* Specify the Audio Stream format details that this application supports */
const APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioSpeakerStreamFormat =
{

    .streamDirection = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT,
    .format = USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_PCM,
    .nChannels = 2,
```

```

.bitResolution = 16,
.subFrameSize = 2,
.samplingRate = 48000
};

bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

/*********************************************
/* Function to search for a specific Audio Stream */
/*********************************************
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioStream,
    uint8_t* numberofStreamGroups
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO streamInfo;

    /* Get Number of Stream Groups */
    *numberofStreamGroups = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(audioDeviceObj);
    if (*numberofStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
    }
    /* Get the First Stream Information in the Stream Group */
    result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(appData.audioDeviceObj, 0, &streamInfo);
    if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Compare Audio Stream info */
        if ((streamInfo.format == audioStream.format)
            && (streamInfo.streamDirection == audioStream.streamDirection)
            && (streamInfo.nChannels == audioStream.nChannels)
            && (streamInfo.bitResolution == audioStream.bitResolution)
            && (streamInfo.subFrameSize == audioStream.subFrameSize))
        {
            return streamInfo.streamObj;
        }
    }
    return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
}

/*********************************************
/* Audio attach event listener function */
/*********************************************
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
        else

```

```

    {
        /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
    }
break;
case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
    if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
    {
        /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
         * associated with this event.*/
        isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
        break;
    }
break;
}

void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT audioResult;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT streamResult;

    /* Check the application's current state. */
    switch ( appData.state )
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* Register a callback for Audio Device Attach. */
            audioResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
                (
                    &APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
                    (uintptr_t)0
                );

            if (audioResult == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS )
            {
                /* Set Host Event Handler */
                USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
                USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
                /* Advance application state */
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            }
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            if(USB_HOST_BusEnabled(0))
            {
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
            }
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:
            /* Check if an Audio Device has been attached */
            if(appData.isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                appData.nAudioStreamGroups = 0;
                /* Find an Audio Stream matching to our requirement */
                appData.ouStreamObj = App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
                    (
                        appData.audioDeviceObj,
                        audioSpeakerStreamFormat,
                        &appData.nAudioStreamGroups
                    );
                if (appData.nAudioStreamGroups == 0)
                {

```

```

        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }
}

default:
    break;
}
}

```

Obtaining an Audio Stream

Describes how to open an audio stream, which includes a code example.

Description

Once application has identified which audio stream to use, application must open that audio stream by using [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen](#) function. This function takes audio stream object [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ](#) as an argument which obtained by [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) functions and returns audio stream handle [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE](#). If the open function fails, it returns an invalid handle ([USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID](#)). Once opened successfully, a valid handle tracks the relationship between the client and the Audio Stream. This handle should be used with other Audio Stream functions.

An audio stream can be opened multiple times by different application clients. In an RTOS based application each client could running its own thread. Multiple clients can read write data to the one Audio stream. In such a case, the read and write requests are queued. The following code shows an example of how an Audio Stream is opened.

```

/* This code shows an example of opening an audio stream */

/* Specify the Audio Stream format details that this application supports */
const APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioSpeakerStreamFormat =
{

    .streamDirection = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT,
    .format = USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_PCM,
    .nChannels = 2,
    .bitResolution = 16,
    .subFrameSize = 2,
    .samplingRate = 48000
};

bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

/*****************/
/* Function to search for a specific Audio Stream */
/*****************/
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind(
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioStream,
    uint8_t* numberofStreamGroups
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO streamInfo;

    /* Get Number of Stream Groups */
    *numberofStreamGroups = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(audioDeviceObj);
    if (*numberofStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
    }
    /* Get the First Stream Information in the Stream Group */

```

```

result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(appData.audioDeviceObj, 0, &streamInfo);
if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
{
    /* Compare Audio Stream info */
    if ((streamInfo.format == audioStream.format)
        && (streamInfo.streamDirection == audioStream.streamDirection)
            && (streamInfo.nChannels == audioStream.nChannels)
                && (streamInfo.bitResolution == audioStream.bitResolution)
                    && (streamInfo.subFrameSize == audioStream.subFrameSize))
    {
        return streamInfo.streamObj;
    }
}
return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
}

/*****************************************/
/* Audio attach event listener function */
/*****************************************/
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
            else
            {
                /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
            }
        break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
                 * associated with this event.*/
                isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
            }
        break;
    }
}

/*****************************************/
/* Audio Tasks function */
/*****************************************/
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT audioResult;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT streamResult;

    /* Check the application's current state. */
    switch ( appData.state )
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

```

```

/* Register a callback for Audio Device Attach. */
audioResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
(
    &APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
    (uintptr_t)0
);

if (audioResult == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS )
{
    /* Set Host Event Handler */
    USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
    USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
    /* Advance application state */
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
}
break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
if(USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled(0))
{
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
}
break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:
/* Check if an Audio Device has been attached */
if(appData.isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
{
    appData.nAudioStreamGroups = 0;
    /* Find an Audio Stream matching to our requirement */
    appData.ouStreamObj = App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
    (
        appData.audioDeviceObj,
        audioSpeakerStreamFormat,
        &appData.nAudioStreamGroups
    );
    if (appData.nAudioStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }

    /* Open Audio Stream */
    appData.outStreamHandle = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen
    (
        appData.ouStreamObj
    );

    if (appData.outStreamHandle == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }
}
break;

default:
    break;
}
}

```

Audio Stream Event Handling

Describes audio stream event handling, which includes a code example.

Description

The Audio v1.0 streams presents an event driven interface to the application. The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver requires the application client to set an event handler against each audio stream for meaningful operation.

A request to send a command or transfer data typically completes after the command request or transfer function has exited. The application must then use the Audio stream event to track the completion of this command or data transfer request. In a case where multiple data transfers are queued, the transfer handles can be used to identify the transfer requests.

The application must use the `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet` function to register an audio stream handler.

This event handler will be called when a command or data transfer event has occurred and should be registered before the request for command or a data transfer. The following code shows an example of registering an audio stream event handler.

```
/* This code shows an example of Audio stream event handling */

/* Specify the Audio Stream format details that this application supports */
const APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioSpeakerStreamFormat =
{

    .streamDirection = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT,
    .format = USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_PCM,
    .nChannels = 2,
    .bitResolution = 16,
    .subFrameSize = 2,
    .samplingRate = 48000
};

bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

//*********************************************************************
* Audio Stream Event Handler function.
***** */

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler(
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
}
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE:
            break;

        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
    return USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}
/* Function to search for a specific Audio Stream */
***** */
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind(
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
```

```

APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioStream,
uint8_t* numberofStreamGroups
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO streamInfo;

    /* Get Number of Stream Groups */
    *numberofStreamGroups = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(audioDeviceObj);
    if (*numberofStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
    }
    /* Get the First Stream Information in the Stream Group */
    result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(appData.audioDeviceObj, 0, &streamInfo);
    if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Compare Audio Stream info */
        if ((streamInfo.format == audioStream.format)
            && (streamInfo.streamDirection == audioStream.streamDirection)
            && (streamInfo.nChannels == audioStream.nChannels)
            && (streamInfo.bitResolution == audioStream.bitResolution)
            && (streamInfo.subFrameSize == audioStream.subFrameSize))
        {
            return streamInfo.streamObj;
        }
    }
    return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
}

/*****************************************/
/* Audio attach event listener function */
/*****************************************/
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
            else
            {
                /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
            }
            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
                 * associated with this event.*/
                isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
                break;
            }
            break;
    }
}

```

```
}
```

```
/**************************************************************************
 *  Audio Tasks function
 *************************************************************************/
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT audioResult;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT streamResult;

    /* Check the application's current state. */
    switch ( appData.state )
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* Register a callback for Audio Device Attach. */
            audioResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
                (
                    &APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
                    (uintptr_t)0
                );

            if (audioResult == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS )
            {
                /* Set Host Event Handler */
                USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
                USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
                /* Advance application state */
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            }
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            if(USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled(0))
            {
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
            }
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:
            /* Check if an Audio Device has been attached */
            if(appData.isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                appData.nAudioStreamGroups = 0;
                /* Find an Audio Stream matching to our requirement */
                appData.ouStreamObj = App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
                    (
                        appData.audioDeviceObj,
                        audioSpeakerStreamFormat,
                        &appData.nAudioStreamGroups
                    );
                if (appData.nAudioStreamGroups == 0)
                {
                    appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
                    break;
                }

                /* Open Audio Stream */
                appData.outStreamHandle = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen
                    (
                        appData.ouStreamObj
                    );

                if (appData.outStreamHandle == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID)
                {
                    appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
                    break;
                }
            }
    }
}
```

```

    }

/* Set Stream Event Handler */
streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet(
    (
        appData.outStreamHandle,
        APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler,
        (uintptr_t)appData.outStreamObj
    );
}

if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)
{
    appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
    break;
}
}

break;

default:
    break;
}
}

```

Enabling Audio Stream

Describes how to enable an audio stream, which includes a code example.

Description

An audio stream must be enabled before doing any data transfer operation. An audio stream enable or disable can be scheduled by using `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable` or `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable` functions. Return values of these function indicates if the request has been placed successfully or failed. When the audio stream enable request is completed, stream event handler generates an event `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE`. Similarly it generates an event `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE` when stream disable is complete. The event data `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA` has details like request handle and termination status. The `requestStatus` member of the `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA` indicates if the request was success or failed. When audio stream multiple audio streams with an audio stream group cannot be enabled at the same time. The following code shows an example of how an Audio Stream is enabled.

```

an example of how an Audio Stream is enabled.
/* This code shows an example of enabling an audio stream */

/* Specify the Audio Stream format details that this application supports */
const APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioSpeakerStreamFormat =
{
    .streamDirection = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT,
    .format = USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_PCM,
    .nChannels = 2,
    .bitResolution = 16,
    .subFrameSize = 2,
    .samplingRate = 48000
};

bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
bool isStreamEnabled = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

/*********************  

 * Audio Stream Event Handler function.  

 *******************/  

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler
{

```

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT event,
void * eventData,
uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE:
            break;

        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            /* Check eventData result member to know if stream enable is complete */
            isStreamEnabled = true;

            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
    return USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}
/*****************************************/
/* Function to search for a specific Audio Stream */
/*****************************************/
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioStream,
    uint8_t* numberofStreamGroups
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO streamInfo;

    /* Get Number of Stream Groups */
    *numberofStreamGroups = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(audioDeviceObj);
    if (*numberofStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
    }
    /* Get the First Stream Information in the Stream Group */
    result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(appData.audioDeviceObj, 0, &streamInfo);
    if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Compare Audio Stream info */
        if ((streamInfo.format == audioStream.format)
            && (streamInfo.streamDirection == audioStream.streamDirection)
            && (streamInfo.nChannels == audioStream.nChannels)
            && (streamInfo.bitResolution == audioStream.bitResolution)
            && (streamInfo.subFrameSize == audioStream.subFrameSize))
        {
            return streamInfo.streamObj;
        }
    }
    return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
}

/*****************************************/
/* Audio attach event listener function */
/*****************************************/
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener
```

```

(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
            else
            {
                /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
            }
            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
                 * associated with this event.*/
                isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
                break;
            }
            break;
    }
}

/*****************************************/
/* Audio Tasks function */
/*****************************************/
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT audioResult;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT streamResult;

    /* Check the application's current state. */
    switch ( appData.state )
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* Register a callback for Audio Device Attach. */
            audioResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
            (
                &APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
                (uintptr_t)0
            );

            if (audioResult == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS )
            {
                /* Set Host Event Handler */
                USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
                USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
                /* Advance application state */
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            }
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            if(USB_HOST_BusEnabled(0))

```

```
{  
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;  
}  
break;  
  
case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:  
    /* Check if an Audio Device has been attached */  
    if(appData.isAudioDeviceAttached == true)  
    {  
        appData.nAudioStreamGroups = 0;  
        /* Find an Audio Stream matching to our requirement */  
        appData.ouStreamObj = App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind  
            (  
                appData.audioDeviceObj,  
                audioSpeakerStreamFormat,  
                &appData.nAudioStreamGroups  
            );  
        if (appData.nAudioStreamGroups == 0)  
        {  
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;  
            break;  
        }  
  
        /* Open Audio Stream */  
        appData.outStreamHandle = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen  
            (  
                appData.ouStreamObj  
            );  
  
        if (appData.outStreamHandle == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID)  
        {  
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;  
            break;  
        }  
  
        /* Set Stream Event Handler */  
        streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet  
            (  
                appData.outStreamHandle,  
                APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler,  
                (uintptr_t)appData.ouStreamObj  
            );  
  
        if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)  
        {  
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;  
            break;  
        }  
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM;  
    }  
break;  
  
case APP_STATE_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM:  
    isStreamEnableComplete = false;  
    /* Set default interface setting of the streaming interface */  
    streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable  
        (  
            appData.outStreamHandle,  
            &appData.requestHandle  
        );  
    if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)  
    {  
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;  
        break;  
    }  
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM;  
break;
```

```

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM:
            if (isStreamEnabled == true)
            {
                /* stream enable complete*/
            }
            break;

        default:
            break;
    }
}

```

Setting the Desired Audio Stream Sampling Rate

Describes how to set the desired audio stream sampling rate, which includes a code example.

Description

Sampling rate of an audio stream can be set using [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet](#) function. Supported sampling rates for an audio stream is returned as part of [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO](#) by the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) functions. Return values of these function indicates if the request has been placed successfully or failed. When the set sampling rate request is completed the stream event handler generates an event [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE](#). The event data [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA](#) has request handle and the requestStatus which indicates the set sampling request was accepted by the device or failed. The following code shows an example of how sampling rates can be set in an audio stream.

```

/* This code shows an example of Set sampling rate to an audio stream */

/* Specify the Audio Stream format details that this application supports */
const APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioSpeakerStreamFormat =
{
    .streamDirection = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT,
    .format = USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_PCM,
    .nChannels = 2,
    .bitResolution = 16,
    .subFrameSize = 2,
    .samplingRate = 48000
};

bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
bool isStreamEnabled = false;
bool isSampleRateSetComplete = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

/*********************  

 * Audio Stream Event Handler function.  

 *******************/  

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE:
            break;
    }
}

```

```
    case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
        /* Check eventData result member to know if stream enable is complete */
        isStreamEnabled = true;

        break;
    case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

        break;

    case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE:
        /* Check eventData result member to know if stream enable is complete */
        isSampleRateSetComplete = true;

        break;

    default:
        break;
    }

    return USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}
/*************************************************************************************************/
/* Function to search for a specific Audio Stream */
/*************************************************************************************************/
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind(
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioStream,
    uint8_t* numberofStreamGroups
}

{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO streamInfo;

    /* Get Number of Stream Groups */
    *numberofStreamGroups = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(audioDeviceObj);
    if (*numberofStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
    }
    /* Get the First Stream Information in the Stream Group */
    result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(appData.audioDeviceObj, 0, &streamInfo);
    if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Compare Audio Stream info */
        if ((streamInfo.format == audioStream.format)
            && (streamInfo.streamDirection == audioStream.streamDirection)
            && (streamInfo.nChannels == audioStream.nChannels)
            && (streamInfo.bitResolution == audioStream.bitResolution)
            && (streamInfo.subFrameSize == audioStream.subFrameSize))
        {
            return streamInfo.streamObj;
        }
    }
    return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
}

/*************************************************************************************************/
/* Audio attach event listener function */
/*************************************************************************************************/
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener(
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
}
{
```

```

/* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
 * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
 * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
 * device. */
switch (event)
{
    case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
        if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
        {
            isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
            audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
        }
        else
        {
            /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
        }
    break;
    case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
        if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
        {
            /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
             * associated with this event.*/
            isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
        }
    break;
}
}

/*********************************************
/* Audio Tasks function */
/*********************************************
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT audioResult;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT streamResult;

    /* Check the application's current state. */
    switch ( appData.state )
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* Register a callback for Audio Device Attach. */
            audioResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
                (
                    &APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
                    (uintptr_t)0
                );

            if (audioResult == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS )
            {
                /* Set Host Event Handler */
                USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
                USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
                /* Advance application state */
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            }
        break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            if(USB_HOST_BusEnabled(0))
            {
                appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
            }
        break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:

```

```
/* Check if an Audio Device has been attached */
if(appData.isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
{
    appData.nAudioStreamGroups = 0;
    /* Find an Audio Stream matching to our requirement */
    appData.ouStreamObj = App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
    (
        appData.audioDeviceObj,
        audioSpeakerStreamFormat,
        &appData.nAudioStreamGroups
    );
    if (appData.nAudioStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }

    /* Open Audio Stream */
    appData.outStreamHandle = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen
    (
        appData.ouStreamObj
    );

    if (appData.outStreamHandle == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }

    /* Set Stream Event Handler */
    streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet
    (
        appData.outStreamHandle,
        APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler,
        (uintptr_t)appData.ouStreamObj
    );

    if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }
    appData.state = APP_STATE_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM;
}
break;

case APP_STATE_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM:
    isStreamEnableComplete = false;
    /* Set default interface setting of the streaming interface */
    streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable
    (
        appData.outStreamHandle,
        &appData.requestHandle
    );
    if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM;
break;
case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM:
    if (isStreamEnabled == true)
    {
        /* Set sampling rate 48000 Hz */
        isSampleRateSetComplete = false;
        streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet
```

```

        (
            appData.outStreamHandle,
            &appData.requestHandle,
            48000
        );
    if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        break;
    }
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_SAMPLE_RATE_SET_COMPLETE;

}
break;
case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_SAMPLE_RATE_SET_COMPLETE:
if (isSampleRateSetComplete == true)
{
    /* Set sampling rate completed */
}
default:
break;
}
}

```

Audio Data Streaming

Describes how to transfer data to an audio stream, which includes a code example.

Description

The application can use the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite](#) functions to transfer data to an Audio Stream. While calling these functions, the stream handle specifies the target Audio stream and the event handler function to which the events should be sent. It is possible for multiple clients to open the same audio stream and transfer data to the stream.

Calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite](#) functions while a read/write transfer is already in progress will cause the transfer result to be queued. If the transfer was successfully queued or scheduled, the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite](#) functions will return a valid transfer handle. This transfer handle identifies the transfer request. The application clients can use the transfer handles to keep track of multiple queued transfers. When a transfer completes, the Audio stream handler generates an event. The following table shows the event and the event data associated with the event.

Table 1: Read

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead |
| Event | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA |

Table 2: Write

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite |
| Event | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA |

The event data contains information on the amount of data transferred, completion status and the transfer handle of the transfer. The following code shows an example of reading and writing data.

```
/* This code shows an example of audio data streaming */
```

```

/* PCM16 samples for 1Khz Sine Wave at 48 kHz Sample Rate */
uint16_t audioSamples[96] = {
    0x0000, 0x0000, //Sample 1
    0x10B4, 0x10B4, //Sample 2
    0x2120, 0x2120, //Sample 3
}

```

```

0x30FB, 0x30FB, //Sample 4
0x3FFF, 0x3FFF, //Sample 5
0x4DEB, 0x4DEB, //Sample 6
0x5A81, 0x5A81, //Sample 7
0x658B, 0x658B, //Sample 8
0x6ED9, 0x6ED9, //Sample 9
0x7640, 0x7640, //Sample 10
0x7BA2, 0x7BA2, //Sample 11
0x7EE6, 0x7EE6, //Sample 12
0x7FFF, 0x7FFF, //Sample 13
0x7FE6, 0x7FE6, //Sample 14
0x7BA2, 0x7BA2, //Sample 15
0x7640, 0x7640, //Sample 16
0x6ED9, 0x6ED9, //Sample 17
0x658B, 0x658B, //Sample 18
0x5A81, 0x5A81, //Sample 19
0x4DEB, 0x4DEB, //Sample 20
0x3FFF, 0x3FFF, //Sample 21
0x30FB, 0x30FB, //Sample 22
0x2120, 0x2120, //Sample 23
0x10B4, 0x10B4, //Sample 24
0x0000, 0x0000, //Sample 25
0xEF4C, 0xEF4C, //Sample 26
0xDEE0, 0xDEE0, //Sample 27
0xCF05, 0xCF05, //Sample 28
0xC001, 0xC001, //Sample 29
0xB215, 0xB215, //Sample 30
0xA57F, 0xA57F, //Sample 31
0x9A75, 0x9A75, //Sample 32
0x9127, 0x9127, //Sample 33
0x89C0, 0x89C0, //Sample 34
0x845E, 0x845E, //Sample 35
0x811A, 0x811A, //Sample 36
0x8001, 0x8001, //Sample 37
0x811A, 0x811A, //Sample 38
0x845E, 0x845E, //Sample 39
0x89C0, 0x89C0, //Sample 40
0x9127, 0x9127, //Sample 41
0x9A75, 0x9A75, //Sample 42
0xA57F, 0xA57F, //Sample 43
0xB215, 0xB215, //Sample 44
0xC001, 0xC001, //Sample 45
0xCF05, 0xCF05, //Sample 46
0xDEE0, 0xDEE0, //Sample 47
0xFF4C, 0xFF4C, //Sample 48
};

/* Specify the Audio Stream format details that this application supports */
const APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioSpeakerStreamFormat =
{
    .streamDirection = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT,
    .format = USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_PCM,
    .nChannels = 2,
    .bitResolution = 16,
    .subFrameSize = 2,
    .samplingRate = 48000
};

bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
bool isStreamEnabled = false;
bool isAudioWriteCompleted = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandleAudioWrite;

```

```
*****
* Audio Stream Event Handler function.
*****
```

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE:
            break;

        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            /* Check eventData result member to know if stream enable is complete */
            isStreamEnabled = true;

            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

            /* This means the Write request completed. We can
             * find out if the request was successful. */
            writeCompleteEventData =
                (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA*)eventData;
            if(transferHandleAudioWrite == writeCompleteEventData->transferHandle)
            {
                isAudioWriteCompleted = true;
            }
            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
    return USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE;
}
*****
```

```
/* Function to search for a specific Audio Stream */
*****
```

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    APP_USB_HOST_AUDIO_STREAM_FORMAT audioStream,
    uint8_t* numberofStreamGroups
)
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO streamInfo;

    /* Get Number of Stream Groups */
    *numberofStreamGroups = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(audioDeviceObj);
    if (*numberofStreamGroups == 0)
    {
        return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
    }
    /* Get the First Stream Information in the Stream Group */
    result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(appData.audioDeviceObj, 0, &streamInfo);
    if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Compare Audio Stream info */
        if ((streamInfo.format == audioStream.format)
            && (streamInfo.streamDirection == audioStream.streamDirection)
            && (streamInfo.nChannels == audioStream.nChannels))
```

```

        && (streamInfo.bitResolution == audioStream.bitResolution)
        && (streamInfo.subFrameSize == audioStream.subFrameSize))
    {
        return streamInfo.streamObj;
    }
}
return (USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ)0;
}

/*****************/
/* Audio attach event listener function */
/*****************/
void APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
            else
            {
                /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
            }
            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
                 * associated with this event.*/
                isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
                break;
            }
            break;
    }
}

/*****************/
/* Audio Tasks function */
/*****************/
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT audioResult;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT streamResult;

    /* Check the application's current state. */
    switch ( appData.state )
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:

            /* Register a callback for Audio Device Attach. */
            audioResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
            (
                &APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
                (uintptr_t)0
            );
}

```

```
    if (audioResult == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS )
    {
        /* Set Host Event Handler */
        USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, 0);
        USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
        /* Advance application state */
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
    if(USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled(0))
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:
    /* Check if an Audio Device has been attached */
    if(appData.isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
    {
        appData.nAudioStreamGroups = 0;
        /* Find an Audio Stream matching to our requirement */
        appData.ouStreamObj = App_USBHostAudioSpeakerStreamFind
        (
            appData.audioDeviceObj,
            audioSpeakerStreamFormat,
            &appData.nAudioStreamGroups
        );
        if (appData.nAudioStreamGroups == 0)
        {
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
            break;
        }

        /* Open Audio Stream */
        appData.outStreamHandle = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen
        (
            appData.ouStreamObj
        );

        if (appData.outStreamHandle == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID)
        {
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
            break;
        }

        /* Set Stream Event Handler */
        streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet
        (
            appData.outStreamHandle,
            APP_USBHostAudioStreamEventHandler,
            (uintptr_t)appData.ouStreamObj
        );

        if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)
        {
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
            break;
        }
        appData.state = APP_STATE_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM;
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM:
    isStreamEnableComplete = false;
```

```

/* Set default interface setting of the streaming interface */
streamResult = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable
(
    appData.outStreamHandle,
    &appData.requestHandle
);
if (streamResult != USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS)
{
    appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
    break;
}
appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM;
break;
case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ENABLE_AUDIO_STREAM:
if (isStreamEnabled == true)
{
    appData.state = APP_STATE_START_STREAM_DATA;
}
break;
case APP_STATE_START_STREAM_DATA:
isAudioWriteCompleted = false;
appData.state = APP_SATE_WAIT_FOR_WRITE_COMPLETE;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite
(
    appData.outStreamHandle,
    &transferHandleAudioWrite,
    (void*)&audioSamples,
    192
);
break;

case APP_SATE_WAIT_FOR_WRITE_COMPLETE:
if (appData.isAudioWriteCompleted)
{
    isAudioWriteCompleted = false;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite
    (
        appData.outStreamHandle,
        &transferHandleAudioWrite,
        (void*)&audioSamples,
        192
    );
}
break;

default:
break;
}

```

Sending Class Specific Control Transfers

Describes how to send class-specific control transfers to the connected device, which includes a code example.

Description

The Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver allows the application client to send Audio v1.0 Class specific commands to the connected device. These commands can be sent using [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest](#) function.

This function is non-blocking. The functions will return before the actual command execution is complete. The return value indicates if the command was scheduled successfully, or if the driver is busy and cannot accept commands, or if the command failed due to an unknown reason. If the command failed because the driver was busy, it can be retried. If scheduled successfully, the function will return a valid request handle. This request handle is unique and tracks the requested command.

When the command related control transfer has completed, the Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver generates a callback function. The call back function is one of the argument to the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest](#) function.

The following code shows an example of sending a Audio v1.0 class specific commands.

```
/* This code shows an example for Audio Control transfer */
bool isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj;

/*****************************************/
/* Audio control request call back function */
/*****************************************/
void App_USBAudioControlRequestCallback(
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result,
    size_t size,
    uintptr_t context
}
{
    APP_USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ACTION controlAction =
(APP_USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ACTION)context;
    switch (controlAction)
    {
        case APP_USB_AUDIO_MASTER_UNMUTE_SET:
            if (result == USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS)
            {
                appData.isMasterUnmuteSetComplete = true;
            }
            else
            {
                appData.muteStatus = 1;
            }

            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
}

/*****************************************/
/* Function for sending Mute control to Audio device. */
/*****************************************/
void APP_SendAudioMuteControl(
{
    APP_USB_AUDIO_CONTROL_TRANSFER_ACTION action,
    uint32_t* mute
}
{
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result;
    USB_AUDIO_FEATURE_UNIT_CONTROL_REQUEST setupPacket;
    uint32_t status;

    /* Fill in Setup Packet */
    setupPacket.bmRequestType = ( USB_SETUP_DIRN_HOST_TO_DEVICE
                                | USB_SETUP_TYPE_CLASS
                                | USB_SETUP_RECIPIENT_INTERFACE
                                ); //interface , Host to device , Standard;
    setupPacket.bRequest = USB_AUDIO_CS_SET_CUR;
    if (action == APP_USB_AUDIO_MASTER_MUTE_SET)
    {
        setupPacket.channelNumber = APP_USB_AUDIO_CHANNEL_MASTER;
        status = __builtin_disable_interrupts();
        *mute = 1;
        __builtin_mtc0(12,0,status);
    }
    else if (action == APP_USB_AUDIO_MASTER_UNMUTE_SET)
```

```

{
    setupPacket.channelNumber = APP_USB_AUDIO_CHANNEL_MASTER;
    status = __builtin_disable_interrupts();
    *mute = 0;
    __builtin_mtc0(12,0,status);
}

setupPacket.controlSelector = USB_AUDIO_MUTE_CONTROL;
setupPacket.featureUnitId = 0x02; //appData.featureUnitDescriptor->bUnitID;
setupPacket.wLength = 1;
result = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest
(
    appData.audioDeviceObj,
    &appData.requestHandle,
    (USB_SETUP_PACKET *)&setupPacket,
    mute,
    App_USBAudioControlRequestCallback,
    (uintptr_t)action
);

}

/*****
/* Audio attach event listener function */
*****
void APP_USBAudioAttachEventListener
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function gets called when the Audio v1.0 device is attached/detached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the Audio v1.0 device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */
    switch (event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == false)
            {
                isAudioDeviceAttached = true;
                audioDeviceObj = audioObj;
            }
            else
            {
                /* This application supports only one Audio Device . Handle Error Here.*/
            }
            break;
        case USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH:
            if (isAudioDeviceAttached == true)
            {
                /* This means the device was detached. There is no event data
                 * associated with this event.*/
                isAudioDeviceAttached = false;
                break;
            }
            break;
    }
}

/*****
/* Audio Tasks function */
*****
void APP_Tasks ( void )
{
    switch (appData.state)

```

```

{
    case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:
        /* In this state the application enables the USB Host Bus. Note
         * how the Audio v1.0 Attach event handler is registered before the bus
         * is enabled. */
        USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostAudioAttachEventListener,
(uintptr_t) 0);
        USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
        break;

    case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
        if(USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled(0) != true)
        {
            return;
        }
        /* Here we wait for the bus enable operation to complete. */
        /* Unmute the Device */
        appData.isMasterUnmuteSetComplete = false;
        APP_SendAudioMuteControl
        (
            APP_USB_AUDIO_MASTER_UNMUTE_SET,
            (uint32_t*)&appData.muteStatus
        );
        appData.state = APP_STATE_AUDIO_WAIT_FOR_UNMUTE_COMPLETE;
        break;

    case APP_STATE_AUDIO_WAIT_FOR_UNMUTE_COMPLETE:
        if (appData.isMasterUnmuteSetComplete == true)
        {
            /* Audio Control request completed */
        }
}

```

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver.

Macros

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER | Defines the number of attach event listeners that can be registered with Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver. |
| USB_HOST_HUB_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Hub to be supported in the system. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Audio v1.0 instances. |
| USB_HOST_HUB_PORTS_NUMBER | Specifies the number of ports per Hub. |
| _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |

| | | |
|--|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTINGS_NUMBER | Defines maximum number of alternate settings per Streaming interface provided by any Device that will be connected to this Audio Host. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of streaming interfaces could be present in an Audio v1.0 device that this Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver can support. |
| | _USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ . |

Description

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver requires configuration constants to be specified in `system_config.h` file. These constants define the build time configuration (functionality and static resources) of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER Macro

Defines the number of attach event listeners that can be registered with Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Attach Listeners Number

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver provides attach notification to listeners who have registered with the client driver via the `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet()` function. The `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER` configuration constant defines the maximum number of event handlers that can be set. This number should be set to equal the number of entities that interested in knowing when a Audio v1.0 device is attached.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HUB_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Hub to be supported in the system.

File

[usb_host_hub_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HUB_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Hub Instances Number

This configuration constant defines the total number of hubs to be supported in the application. This includes hubs connected across multiple USBs. If the hub connected to the host exceed this number, then the additional hubs will not be enumerated.

Remarks

Increasing number of Hubs to be supported will also increase memory consumption.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Audio v1.0 instances.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Maximum Number of Instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the Audio v1.0 host Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two instances of the Audio v1.0 host Driver should be set to 2.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HUB_PORTS_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of ports per Hub.

File

[usb_host_hub_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HUB_PORTS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Hub Number of Ports per Hub

This configuration macros specifies the number of Ports per Hub. If any Hub connected to host will have a maximum of 4 ports, then this number should be set to 4. A hub with more ports than the value defined by this constant will not be supported.

Remarks

Supporting a hub with more ports increases the memory requirement.

_USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H Macro

File

[usb_host_hub_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTINGS_NUMBER Macro

Defines maximum number of alternate settings per Streaming interface provided by any Device that will be connected to this Audio Host.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTINGS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Streaming interface alternate setting number

This configuration constant defines maximum number of Streaming interface alternate settings provided by any Device that will be connected to this Audio Host. The value of this constant should be at-least 1.

Remarks

Supporting multiple alternate settings per streaming interfaces requires more data memory and processing time.

Example

If the USB Audio v1.0 Host application must support a USB Audio Device with 2 alternate settings including Alternate Setting 0 then this constant should be defined to 3.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACES_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of streaming interfaces could be present in an Audio v1.0 device that this Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver can support.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Streaming Interfaces Number

This configuration constant defines maximum number of streaming interfaces could be present in an Audio v1.0 device that this Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver can support. The value of this constant should be atleast 1.

Example 1 - If the USB Audio v1.0 Host application must support a USB Headset, this constant should be set 2 as an Audio Headset will have atleast 2 Audio Streaming interfaces, one for Host to Device streaming and one for Device to Host streaming.

Example 2 - If the USB Audio v1.0 Host application must support a USB Speaker, this constant should be set 1 as an Audio Speaker will have atleast 1 Audio Streaming interface.

Remarks

Supporting multiple streaming interfaces requires more data memory and processing time.

_USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H Macro

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_`.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is `<install-dir>/framework/usb`.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using `#include`) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_audio_v1_0.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver API. |

Required File(s)

 **MHC** All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/src/dynamic/usb_host_audio_v1_0.c</code> | This file implements the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver interface and should be included in the project if the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver operation is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Host Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Audio Device Access Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest | Schedules an Audio v1.0 control transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext | Returns information about the next audio stream in the specified audio stream group. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead | Schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet | Schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite | Schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet | Sets an attach/detach event handler. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst | Retrieves the handle to the first audio control entity |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext | Retrieves the handle to the next audio control entity. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet | Returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet | Retrieves the entity object for the entity ID. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet | Registers an audio entity request callback function with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityTypeGet | Returns the entity type of the audio control entity. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists | Returns "true" if mute control exists for the specified channel of the feature unit. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteGet | Schedules a get mute control request to the specified channel. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteSet | Schedules a set mute control request to the specified channel. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelNumbersGet | Returns the number of channels. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists | Returns "true" if volume control exists for the specified channel of the feature unit. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeGet | Schedules a get current volume control request to the specified channel. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeRangeGet | Schedules a control request to the Audio Device feature unit to get the range supported by the volume control on the specified channel. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSet | Schedules a set current volume control request to the specified channel. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitIDGet | Returns ID of the Feature Unit. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitSourceIDGet | Returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this feature unit is connected. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalAssociationGet | Returns the associated terminal ID of the audio control terminal. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalIDGet | Returns the terminal ID of the audio control entity. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelNumbersGet | Returns the number of logical output channels in the terminal's output audio channel cluster. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalSourceIDGet | Returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this terminal is connected. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalTypeGet | Returns the terminal type of the audio control entity. |

b) Audio Stream Access Functions

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable | Schedules an audio stream disable request for the specified audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable | Schedules an audio stream enable request for the specified audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet | Registers an event handler with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst | Returns information about first audio stream in the specified audio stream group. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet | Gets the number of stream groups present in the attached Audio v1.0 Device. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose | Closes the audio stream. |

| | | |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet | Registers an event handler with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceBitResolutionGet | Returns the bit resolution of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceChannelNumbersGet | Returns the number of channels of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceDirectionGet | Returns the direction of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceFormatTagGet | Returns the format tag of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst | Gets the first streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext | Gets the next streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequenciesGet | Returns the sampling frequencies supported by the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequencyTypeGet | Returns the sampling frequency type of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet | Schedules a SET_INTERFACE request to the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst | Gets the first streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext | Gets the next streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSubFrameSizeGet | Returns the sub-frame size of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceTerminalLinkGet | Returns the terminal link of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen | Opens the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead | Schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet | Schedules an audio stream get sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet | Schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite | Schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream. |

c) Other Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet | Schedules a control request to an Audio Device feature unit to get the number of sub-ranges supported by the volume control on the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelConfigGet | Returns a structure that describes the spatial location of the logical channels of in the terminal's output audio channel cluster. |

d) Data Types and Constants

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handler function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver control transfer complete callback function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver can generate. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host client object. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver request handle. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver audio result enumeration. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream direction. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 stream can generate. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the CDC Class Driver can generate. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE | Defines the type of the CDC Host Client Driver Handle |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handler function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA | This is macro USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA . |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE | Returns the type of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver event handler. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT | USB Host CDC Client Driver Result enumeration. |

| | | |
|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream transfer event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO | This is type USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO . |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Host CDC Client Driver Transfer Handle |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream object. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT | USB Host Audio v1.0 stream result enumeration. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver transfer handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE | USB HOST Audio Client Driver interface. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver invalid request handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream invalid handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid transfer handle definition. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handler function pointer type. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host control entity object. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_REQUEST_CALLBACK | USB Host Audio v1.0 class driver control transfer complete callback function pointer type. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver attach event handler can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host client object. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver request handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver result enumeration. |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream direction. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Stream can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handler function pointer type. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream data transfer event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE | Returns the type of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream data transfer event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream data transfer handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface object. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface setting object. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet | Sets an attach/detach event handler. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DeviceObjHandleGet | Returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN</code> . |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT</code> . |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH</code> . |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH</code> . |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | Returns the type of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler. |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose | Closes the audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen | Opens the specified audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INTERFACE | USB HOST Audio v1.0 Client Driver interface. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver invalid request handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER | This structure defines USB Host audio stream information structure. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines Audio v1.0 Host stream invalid handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid stream data transfer handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library. Refer to each section for a detailed description.

a) Audio Device Access Functions

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest Function](#)

Schedules an Audio v1.0 control transfer.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ OBJ,  
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * transferHandle, USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPacket, void *  
data, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK callback, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS** - The transfer was scheduled successfully. **requestHandle** will contain a valid transfer handle.
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FAILURE** - An unknown failure occurred. **requestHandle** will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID** - The data pointer or **requestHandle** pointer is NULL

Description

This function schedules an Audio v1.0 control transfer. The **audioObj** parameter is an object of the Audio v1.0 Class Driver to which the audio control transfer is to be scheduled. The **setupPacket** parameter points to the SETUP command to be sent in the setup state of the control transfer. The size and the direction of the data stage is indicated by the SETUP packet. For control transfers where there is no data stage, **data** is ignored and can be NULL. In all other instances, **data** should point to the data to be transferred in the data stage of the control transfer.

If the transfer was scheduled successfully, **requestHandle** will contain a transfer handle that uniquely identifies this transfer. If the

transfer could not be scheduled successfully, requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

When the control transfer completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the specified callback function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should be attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio v1.0 client driver object |
| requestHandle | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this transfer |
| setupPacket | Pointer to the SETUP packet to sent to the device in the SETUP stage of the control transfer |
| data | For control transfer with a data stage, this should point to data to be sent to the device (for a control write transfer) or point to the buffer that will receive data from the device (for a control read transfer). For control transfers that do not require a data stage, this parameter is ignored and can be NULL. |
| callback | Pointer to the callback function that will be called when the control transfer completes. If the callback function is NULL, there will be no notification of when the control transfer will complete. |
| context | User-defined context that is returned with the callback function |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    USB_SETUP_PACKET *setupPacket,
    void * data,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK callback,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext Function

Returns information about the next audio stream in the specified audio stream group.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ
audioStreamObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO * streamInfo);
```

Returns

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The operation was successful
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID](#) - The specified Audio v1.0 client driver object does not exist
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown failure occurred
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_END_OF_STREAM_LIST](#) - There are no more audio streams in the stream group

Description

This function returns information about next audio stream in the specified Audio stream group. The

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) function should have been called at least once on the same audio stream group before calling this function. Then, calling this function repeatedly on the stream group will return information about the next audio stream in the stream group. When there are no more audio streams to report, the function returns [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_END_OF_STREAM_LIST](#).

Calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) function on the stream group index after the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) function has been called will cause the Audio v1.0 Client Driver to reset the audio stream group to point to the first stream in the stream group.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) function must have been called before calling this function.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| audioStreamObj | Present audio stream object |
| streamInfo | Pointer to the streamInfo object |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ audioStreamObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO * streamInfo
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead Function

Schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE
streamHandle, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, void * source, size_t
length);
```

Returns

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The operation was successful
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID](#) - The specified audio stream does not exist
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream. A

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event is generated when this request is completed.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened and enabled. The direction of the audio stream should be [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN](#).

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| transferHandle | Handle to the stream read transfer request |
| source | Pointer to the buffer containing data to be read from the device |
| length | Amount of data to read (in bytes) |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * source,
    size_t length
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet Function

Schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle, uint32_t * samplingRate);
```

Returns

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The operation was successful
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID](#) - The specified audio stream does not exist
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. A [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE](#) event is generated when this request is completed. [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA](#) returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| requestHandle | Handle to the stream set sampling rate request |
| samplingRate | Pointer to the sampling rate |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle,
    uint32_t* samplingRate
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite Function

Schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE
streamHandle, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, void * source, size_t
length);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID` - The specified audio stream does not exist
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream. A `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event is generated when this request is completed. `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA` returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened and enabled. The direction of the audio stream should be `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT`.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| transferHandle | Handle to the stream write transfer request |
| source | Pointer to the buffer containing data to be written to the device |
| length | Amount of data to write (in bytes) |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * source,
    size_t length
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet Function

Sets an attach/detach event handler.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler,
uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - If the attach event handler was registered successfully
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - If the number of registered event handlers has exceeded `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER`

Description

This function will set an attach event handler. The attach event handler will be called when a Audio v1.0 Device has been attached or detached. The context will be returned in the event handler. This function should be called before the bus has been enabled.

Remarks

This function should be called before the `USB_HOST_BusEnable` function is called.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>eventHandler</code> | Pointer to the attach event handler. |
| <code>context</code> | An application defined context that will be returned in the event handler. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst Function

Retrieves the handle to the first audio control entity

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ * pEntityObject);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_CONTROL_ENTITY` - No more audio control entities are available
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID` - The specified audio stream does not exist

- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE** - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function retrieves the handle to the first audio control entity.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 device object. |
| pEntityObject | pointer to the Audio control entity handle. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ * pEntityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext Function

Retrieves the handle to the next audio control entity.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObjectCurrent, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ
* pEntityObject);
```

Returns

- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS** - The operation was successful
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_CONTROL_ENTITY** - No more audio control entities are available
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID** - The specified audio stream does not exist
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE** - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function retrieves the handle to the next audio control entity.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 device object. |
| entityObjectCurrent | Handle to current audio control entity. |
| pEntityObject | pointer to audio control entity handle. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObjectCurrent
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ * pEntityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet Function

Returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioDeviceObj) ;
```

Returns

Will return a valid device object handle if the device is still connected to the system. Otherwise, the function will return [USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

Description

This function returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device. This returned handle can be used by the application to perform device-level operations, such as obtaining the string descriptors.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioDeviceObj | Audio V1.0 device object handle returned in the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioDeviceObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet Function

Retrieves the entity object for the entity ID.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
uint8_t entityId, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ* entityObj);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - The entity Id could not be found or an unknown failure occurred

Description

This function retrieves the entity object for the entity ID.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityId | Entity ID |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    uint8_t entityId,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ* entityObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet Function

Registers an audio entity request callback function with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioDeviceObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_REQUEST_CALLBACK appAudioEntityRequestCallback,
uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID - The specified audio object does not exist
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function registers a callback function for the Audio v1.0 control entity requests. The Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver will call this callback function when an audio entity control request is completed.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioDeviceObj | Audio v1.0 device object. |
| appAudioEntityRequestCallback | A pointer to event handler function. If NULL, events will not be generated. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_EVENT_HANDLER appAudioEntityRequestCallback,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityTypeGet Function

Returns the entity type of the audio control entity.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_TYPE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityTypeGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

USB_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_TYPE.

Description

This function returns the entity type of the audio control entity. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
USB_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_TYPE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityTypeGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists Function

Returns "true" if mute control exists for the specified channel of the feature unit.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
bool USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,  
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, uint8_t channel);
```

Returns

- true - Mute control exists on the specified channel
- false - Mute control does not exist on the specified channel

Description

This function returns "true" if mute control exists on the specified channel of the feature unit. Channel 0 indicates Master mute control. This function is only applicable to a feature unit. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| channel | Channel number |

Function

```
bool USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists  
(  
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,  
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,  
    uint8_t channel  
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteGet Function

Schedules a get mute control request to the specified channel.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ  
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE *  
requestHandle, uint8_t channelNumber, bool * muteStatus);
```

Returns

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The request was scheduled successfully. requestHandle will contain a valid request handle.
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY](#) - The control request mechanism is currently busy. Retry the request.
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown failure occurred. requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID](#) - The data pointer or requestHandle pointer is NULL

Description

This function schedules a get mute control request to the specified channel. Prior to calling this function the user should check if mute control exists on the specified channel by calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists](#) function.

If the request was scheduled successfully, the requestHandle parameter will contain a request handle that uniquely identifies this request. If the transfer could not be scheduled successfully, requestHandle will contain

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

When the control request completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the callback function that was set using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet](#) function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| requestHandle | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this request |
| channelNumber | Channel number |
| muteStatus | Output parameter that will contain Current Mute status when the request is completed and a callback is received |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    uint8_t channelNumber,
    bool *muteStatus
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteSet Function

Schedules a set mute control request to the specified channel.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE *
requestHandle, uint8_t channelNumber, bool * muteStatus);
```

Returns

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The request was scheduled successfully. requestHandle will contain a valid request handle.
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY](#) - The control request mechanism is currently busy. Retry the request.
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown failure occurred. requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID](#) - The data pointer or requestHandle pointer is NULL

Description

This function schedules a set mute control request to the specified channel. Prior to calling this function the user should check if mute control exists on the specified channel by calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists](#) function.

If the request was scheduled successfully, the requestHandle parameter will contain a request handle that uniquely identifies this transfer. If the transfer could not be scheduled successfully, requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

When the control request completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the callback function that was set using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet](#) function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| requestHandle | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this request |
| channelNumber | Channel Number |
| muteStatus | Value of mute control, where 1 mutes the channel and 0 removes unmutes |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    uint8_t channelNumber,
    bool *muteStatus
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelNumbersGet Function

Returns the number of channels.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelNumbersGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The number of channels.

Description

This function returns the number of channels. This function is only applicable to a feature unit. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelNumbersGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists Function

Returns "true" if volume control exists for the specified channel of the feature unit.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
bool USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, uint8_t channel);
```

Returns

- true - Volume control exists on the specified channel
- false - Volume control does not exist on the specified channel

Description

This function returns "true" if volume control exists on the specified channel of the feature unit. Channel 0 indicates master volume control. This function is only applicable to a feature unit. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| channel | Channel number |

Function

```
bool USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    uint8_t channel
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeGet Function

Schedules a get current volume control request to the specified channel.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE *
requestHandle, uint8_t channelNumber, uint16_t * volume);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request was scheduled successfully. requestHandle will contain a valid request handle.
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY - The control request mechanism is currently busy. Retry the request.
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred. requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#)
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID - The data pointer or requestHandle pointer is NULL

Description

This function schedules a get current volume control request to the specified channel. Prior to calling this function the user should check if volume control exists on the specified channel by calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists](#) function.

If the request was scheduled successfully, the requestHandle parameter will contain a request handle that uniquely identifies this request. If the request could not be scheduled successfully, requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

When the control request completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the callback function that was set using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet](#) function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| requestHandle | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this request |
| channelNumber | Channel number to which the volume control is addressed |
| volume | Output parameter that will contain the current volume when a request is completed and a callback is received |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    uint8_t channelNumber,
    uint16_t *volume
);
```

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeRangeGet Function](#)

Schedules a control request to the Audio Device feature unit to get the range supported by the volume control on the specified channel.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeRangeGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE *
requestHandle, uint8_t channelNumber, void * data, size_t size);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request was scheduled successfully. requestHandle will contain a valid request handle.
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY - The control request mechanism is currently busy. Retry the request.
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred. requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID - The data pointer or requestHandle pointer is NULL

Description

This function schedules a control request to the Audio Device feature unit to get the range supported by the volume control on the specified channel.

Prior to calling this function the user should call the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet](#) function to know how many sub-ranges are supported.

Users should calculate the 'size' parameter of this function, as follows:

```
size = Size of number of ranges + nSubRanges * (Size (MIN) + Size (MAX) + Size of (RES))
```

If the request was scheduled successfully, the requestHandle parameter will contain a request handle that uniquely identifies this request. If the request could not be scheduled successfully, requestHandle will contain

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

When the control request completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the callback function that was set using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet](#) function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| requestHandle | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this request |
| channelNumber | Channel number to which the volume control is addressed |
| nSubRanges | Output parameter that will contain the number of sub-ranges when the request is completed and a callback is received |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeRangeGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    uint8_t channelNumber,
    void * data,
    size_t size
);
```

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSet Function](#)

Schedules a set current volume control request to the specified channel.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE *
requestHandle, uint8_t channelNumber, uint16_t * volume);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The request was scheduled successfully. `requestHandle` will contain a valid request handle.
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY` - The control request mechanism is currently busy. Retry the request.
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred. `requestHandle` will contain `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID`.
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID` - The data pointer or `requestHandle` pointer is `NULL`.

Description

This function schedules a set current volume request to the specified channel. Prior to calling this function the user should check if volume control exists on the specified channel by calling the `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists` function.

If the request was scheduled successfully, the `requestHandle` parameter will contain a request handle that uniquely identifies this request. If the request could not be scheduled successfully, `requestHandle` will contain `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID`.

When the control request completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the callback function that was set using the `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet` function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>audioObj</code> | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| <code>entityObject</code> | Audio control entity object |
| <code>requestHandle</code> | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this request |
| <code>channelNumber</code> | Channel number to which the volume control is addressed |
| <code>volume</code> | Current volume control value that should be set in the Audio Device |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    uint8_t channelNumber,
    uint16_t *volume
);
```

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitIDGet Function`

Returns ID of the Feature Unit.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitIDGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The ID of the feature unit.

Description

This function returns the ID of the D of the Feature Unit. This function is only applicable to Feature Unit. Prior to calling this function Entity Object should be obtained by calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#) function.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 device object. |
| entityObject | Audio control entity Object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitIDGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitSourceIDGet Function

Returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this feature unit is connected.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitSourceIDGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The ID of the unit or terminal to which this feature unit is connected.

Description

This function returns the ID of the Unit or Terminal to which this feature unit is connected. This function is only applicable to a feature unit. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitSourceIDGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalAssociationGet Function

Returns the associated terminal ID of the audio control terminal.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalAssociationGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The ID of the associated terminal.

Description

This function returns the ID of the associated terminal type of the audio control terminal. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalAssociationGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalIDGet Function

Returns the terminal ID of the audio control entity.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalIDGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The terminal ID of the audio control entity object.

Description

This function returns the Terminal ID of the Audio Control entity. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalIDGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelNumbersGet Function

Returns the number of logical output channels in the terminal's output audio channel cluster.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelNumbersGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The number of logical output channels in the terminal's output audio channel cluster.

Description

This function returns the number of logical output channels in the terminal's output audio channel cluster. This function is only applicable to an input terminal. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 device object. |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelNumbersGet
(

```

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalSourceIDGet Function

Returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this terminal is connected.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalSourceIDGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The ID of the unit or terminal to which this terminal is connected.

Description

This function returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this terminal is connected. This function is only applicable to an output terminal. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalSourceIDGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalTypeGet Function

Returns the terminal type of the audio control entity.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_AUDIO_V1_TERMINAL_TYPE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalTypeGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The terminal type.

Description

This function returns the Terminal type of the audio control entity. Prior to calling this function Entity Object should be obtained by

calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#) function.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity Object |

Function

```
USB_AUDIO_V1_TERMINAL_TYPE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalTypeGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

b) Audio Stream Access Functions

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable Function

Schedules an audio stream disable request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle);
```

Returns

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS](#) - The operation was successful
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID](#) - The specified audio stream does not exist
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE](#) - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream disable request for the specified audio stream. A [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE](#) event is generated when this request is completed. [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA](#) returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| requestHandle | Handle to the stream disable request |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable Function

Schedules an audio stream enable request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID` - The specified audio stream does not exist
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream enable request for the specified audio stream. An audio stream must be enable before scheduling any data transfer with the stream. A `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE` event is generated when this request is completed. `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA` returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened. Only one audio stream from an audio stream group can be enabled at a time.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>streamHandle</code> | Handle to the audio v1.0 stream |
| <code>requestHandle</code> | Handle to the stream enable request |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet Function

Registers an event handler with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER appAudioHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID - The specified audio stream does not exist
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function registers a client specific Audio v1.0 stream event handler. The Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver will call appAudioHandler function specified as 2nd argument with relevant event and associate event data, in response to audio stream data transfers that have been scheduled by the client.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | A handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. If NULL, events will not be generated. |
| context | The application specific context that is returned in the event handler |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER appAudioHandler,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst Function

Returns information about first audio stream in the specified audio stream group.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ
audioDeviceObj, uint8_t streamGroupIndex, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO * streamInfo);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID - The specified Audio v1.0 client driver object does not exist
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function returns information about the first audio stream in the specified audio stream group. The stream group index is parameter to this function and it can be any value starting from zero to the number of stream groups minus one. Number of stream groups can be obtained by using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet](#) function.

The streamInfo object is an out parameter to this function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached to the Host.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| audioDeviceObj | Audio v1.0 Client Driver object |
| streamGroupIndex | Stream group index |
| streamInfo | Pointer to the streamInfo object |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj,
    uint8_t streamGroupIndex,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO * streamInfo
);
```

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet Function](#)

Gets the number of stream groups present in the attached Audio v1.0 Device.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj);
```

Returns

A returned uint8_t indicates the number of audio stream groups present in the attached Audio v1.0 Device.

Description

This function will get number of stream groups present in the attached Audio v1.0 Device. The audio stream within an audio stream cannot be enabled at the same time.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio v1.0 Client Driver object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet
(
    USB\_HOST\_AUDIO\_V1\_0\_OBJ audioObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamClose Function

Closes the audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
void USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamClose(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE audioStreamHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will close the open audio stream. This closes the association between the application entity that opened the audio stream and the audio stream. The audio stream handle becomes invalid.

Remarks

The device handle becomes invalid after calling this function.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioSteamHandle | handle to the audio stream obtained from the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen function. |

Function

```
void USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamClose
(
    USB\_HOST\_AUDIO\_V1\_STREAM\_HANDLE audioSteamHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet Function

Registers an event handler with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB\_HOST\_AUDIO\_V1\_StreamEventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER appAudioHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID - The specified audio stream does not exist
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function registers a client specific Audio v1.0 stream event handler. The Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver will call the appAudioHandler function specified as the second argument with relevant event and associated event data in response to audio stream data transfers that have been scheduled by the client.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | The handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. If NULL, events will not be generated. |
| context | The application specific context that is returned in the event handler |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER appAudioHandler,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceBitResolutionGet Function

Returns the bit resolution of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceBitResolutionGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

The bit resolution size of the audio streaming interface setting.

Description

This function returns the bit resolution size of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceBitResolutionGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceChannelNumbersGet Function

Returns the number of channels of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceChannelNumbersGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

The number of channels present in the audio streaming interface setting.

Description

This function returns the number of channels of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceChannelNumbersGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceDirectionGet Function

Returns the direction of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceDirectionGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_OUT** - Host to Device
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_IN** - Device to Host

Description

This function returns the direction of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceDirectionGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceFormatTagGet Function

Returns the format tag of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_AUDIO_V1_FORMAT_TAG USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceFormatTagGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

The format tag of the audio streaming interface setting.

Description

This function returns the format tag link of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceFormatTagGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst Function

Gets the first streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ* streamingInterfaceObj);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The request completed successfully
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_STREAMING_INTERFACE` - No more streaming interfaces are available
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - Device is not attached
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID` - Audio Device object is invalid
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - An error has occurred

Description

This function will get the first streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio v1.0 client driver object. |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Pointer to an audio streaming interface object. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ* streamingInterfaceObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext Function

Gets the next streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObjCurrent,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ* streamingInterfaceObjNext);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The request completed successfully
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_STREAMING_INTERFACE` - No more streaming interfaces are available
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - Device is not attached
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID` - Audio Device object is invalid
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - An error has occurred

Description

This function will get the next streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>audioObj</code> | Audio Device object. |
| <code>streamingInterfaceObjCurrent</code> | Current audio streaming interface object. |
| <code>streamingInterfaceObj</code> | Pointer to audio streaming interface object. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObjCurrent
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ* streamingInterfaceObjNext
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequenciesGet Function

Returns the sampling frequencies supported by the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t* USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequenciesGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

A pointer to the sampling frequencies supported by the audio streaming interface setting.

Description

This function returns the sampling frequencies supported by the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t* USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequenciesGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequencyTypeGet Function

Returns the sampling frequency type of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequencyTypeGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

The sampling frequency type of the audio streaming interface setting.

- 0 - Continuous Sampling frequency is supported
- 1 to 255 - The number of discrete sampling frequencies supported by the audio streaming interface

Description

This function returns the sampling frequency type of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequencyTypeGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet Function

Schedules a SET_INTERFACE request to the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS** - The operation was successful
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID** - The specified audio stream does not exist
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE** - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream enable request for the specified audio stream. An audio stream must be enable before scheduling any data transfer with the stream. A **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE** event is generated when this request is completed. **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA** returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened. Only one audio stream from an audio stream group can be enabled at a time.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream. |
| requestHandle | Handle to the stream enable request. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_INTERFACE_DESCRIPTOR* pInterfaceDesc,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst Function

Gets the first streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ * interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The request completed successfully
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_INTERFACE_SETTINGS` - No more streaming interface settings are available
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - Device is not attached
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID` - Audio Device object is invalid
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - An error has occurred

Description

This function gets the first streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>audioObj</code> | Audio device object. |
| <code>streamingInterfaceObj</code> | Audio streaming interface object. |
| <code>interfaceSettingObj</code> | Pointer to the audio streaming interface setting object. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ *interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext Function

Gets the next streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObjCurrent,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ * interfaceSettingObjNext);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The request completed successfully
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_INTERFACE_SETTINGS - No more streaming interface settings are available
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN - Device is not attached
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID - Audio Device object is invalid
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An error has occurred

Description

This function gets the next streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObjCurrent | Current audio streaming interface setting object |
| interfaceSettingObjNext | Pointer to the next audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObjCurrent,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ *interfaceSettingObjNext
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSubFrameSizeGet Function

Returns the sub-frame size of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSubFrameSizeGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

The sub-frame size of the audio streaming interface setting.

Description

This function returns the sub-frame size of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSubFrameSizeGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceTerminalLinkGet Function

Returns the terminal link of the specified streaming interface setting.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceTerminalLinkGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj);
```

Returns

The terminal link of the audio streaming interface setting.

Description

This function returns the terminal link of the specified streaming interface setting.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The Audio v1.0 Device should have been attached.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | Audio Device object |
| streamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |
| interfaceSettingObj | Audio streaming interface setting object |

Function

```
uint8_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceTerminalLinkGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ streamingInterfaceObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ interfaceSettingObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen Function

Opens the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ
audiostreamingInterfaceObj);
```

Returns

Will return a valid handle if the audio stream could be opened successfully. Otherwise, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID is returned. The function will return a valid handle if the stream is ready to be opened.

Description

This function will open the specified audio stream. Once opened, the audio stream can be accessed via the handle that this function returns. The audiostreamingInterfaceObj parameter is the value returned in the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst](#) or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext](#) functions.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio streaming interface object should be valid.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| audiostreamingInterfaceObj | Audio streaming interface object |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ audiostreamingInterfaceObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead Function

Schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE
streamHandle, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, void * source, size_t
length);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID` - The specified audio stream does not exist
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream. A `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE` event is generated when this request is completed. [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened and enabled. The direction of the audio stream should be `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_IN`.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>streamHandle</code> | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| <code>transferHandle</code> | Handle to the stream read transfer request |
| <code>source</code> | Pointer to the buffer containing data to be read from the device |
| <code>length</code> | Amount of data to read (in bytes) |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * source,
    size_t length
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet Function

Schedules an audio stream get sampling rate request for the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle, uint32_t * samplingFrequency);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID - The specified audio stream does not exist
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. A `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE` event is generated when this request is completed. `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA` returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| requestHandle | Handle to the stream set sampling rate request |
| samplingRate | Pointer to the sampling rate |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle,
    uint32_t *samplingFrequency
)
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet Function

Schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream.

File

`usb_host_audio_v1_0.h`

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle, const uint32_t * samplingFrequency);
```

Returns

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID - The specified audio stream does not exist
- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. A

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE` event is generated when this request is completed. `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA` returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| requestHandle | Handle to the stream set sampling rate request |
| samplingRate | Pointer to the sampling rate |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle,
    uint32_t *samplingFrequency
)
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite Function

Schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream.

File

`usb_host_audio_v1_0.h`

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE
streamHandle, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, void * source, size_t
length);
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID` - The specified audio stream does not exist
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred

Description

This function schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream. A `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE` event is generated when this request is completed. `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA` returns the status and request handle of the request.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream should have been opened and enabled. The direction of the audio stream should be `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_OUT`.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| streamHandle | Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream |
| transferHandle | Handle to the stream write transfer request |
| source | Pointer to the buffer containing data to be written to the device |
| length | Amount of data to write (in bytes) |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE streamHandle,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * source,
    size_t length
);
```

c) Other Functions

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet Function

Schedules a control request to an Audio Device feature unit to get the number of sub-ranges supported by the volume control on the specified channel.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE *
requestHandle, uint8_t channelNumber, uint16_t * nSubRanges);
```

Returns

- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS** - The request was scheduled successfully. requestHandle will contain a valid request handle.
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY** - The control request mechanism is currently busy. Retry the request.
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE** - An unknown failure occurred. requestHandle will contain [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).
- **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID** - The data pointer or requestHandle pointer is NULL

Description

This function schedules a control request to the Audio Device feature unit to get the number of sub-ranges supported by the volume control on the specified channel. Prior to calling this function the user should check if volume control exists on the specified channel by calling the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists](#) function.

If the request was scheduled successfully, the requestHandle parameter will contain a request handle that uniquely identifies this request. If the request could not be scheduled successfully, requestHandle will contain

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID](#).

When the control request completes, the Audio v1.0 Client Driver will call the callback function that was set using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet](#) function. The context parameter specified here will be returned in the callback.

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 Device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |
| requestHandle | Output parameter that will contain the handle to this request |
| channelNumber | Channel number to which the volume control is addressed |
| nSubRanges | Output parameter that will contain the number of sub-ranges when the request is completed and a callback is received |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    uint8_t channelNumber,
    uint16_t *nSubRanges
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelConfigGet Function

Returns a structure that describes the spatial location of the logical channels of in the terminal's output audio channel cluster.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
USB_AUDIO_CHANNEL_CONFIG USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelConfigGet(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
audioObj, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject);
```

Returns

The structure that describes the spatial location of the logical channels.

Description

This function returns a structure that describes the spatial location of the logical channels of in the terminal's output audio channel cluster. This function is only applicable to an input terminal. Prior to calling this function the entity object should be obtained by calling [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#), [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#), or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet](#).

Remarks

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| audioObj | USB Host Audio v1.0 device object |
| entityObject | Audio control entity object |

Function

```
USB_AUDIO_CHANNEL_CONFIG USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelConfigGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ entityObject
);
```

d) Data Types and Constants

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER` Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handler function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT event, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver Attach Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive attach and detach events call backs from the Audio v1.0 Client Driver. The client driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The descriptions of the event handler function parameters are as follows:

- audioObj - Handle of the client to which this event is directed
- event - Event indicates if it is an attach or detach
- context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered with the event handling function

Remarks

None.

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK` Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver control transfer complete callback function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK)(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioObj,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT result, size_t
size, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class driver Control Transfer Complete Callback Function Pointer type

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver control transfer complete callback function. The client must provide a pointer to a control transfer complete callback function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) must match the types specified by this function pointer to receive notification when a control transfer has completed. The pointer to the callback function must be specified in [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest](#) function. The Audio v1.0 client driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The descriptions of the event handler function parameters are as follows:

- audioObj - Audio v1.0 client driver object associated with this event
- requestHandle - Request handle of the control transfer request that caused this event
- result - Completion result of the control transfer. This will be `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS` if the control transfer completed successfully, `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FAILURE` if an unknown failure occurred, or `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED` if the request was stalled.

size - Size of the data stage that was transferred context - Value identifying the context of the application that was provided when the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest](#) function was called.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT Macro

Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver can generate.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT
```

Description

Audio v1.0 Class Driver Events

This enumeration identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver can generate. The application should register an event handler using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet](#) function to receive Audio v1.0 Class Driver events.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ Macro

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host client object.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Object

This type defines the type of the Audio Host client object. This type is returned by the attach event handler and is used by the application to open the attached Audio v1.0 Device.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver request handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver Request Handle

This is returned by the Audio v1.0 Client Driver command routines and should be used by the application to track the command especially in cases where transfers are queued.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT Enumeration

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver audio result enumeration.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_BUSY = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_END_OF_STREAM_LIST,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FAILURE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FALSE = 0,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_TRUE = 1,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS = USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_BUSY = USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED | The transfer or request could not be scheduled because internal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> queues are full. The request or transfer should be retried |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED | The request was stalled |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID | The specified Audio v1.0 Object is Invalid |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_END_OF_STREAM_LIST | No more audio stream present in the Device |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID | A required parameter was invalid |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN | The specified device does not exist in the system |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FAILURE | An unknown failure has occurred |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FALSE = 0 | Indicates a false condition |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_TRUE = 1 | Indicate a true condition |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS = USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE | Indicates that the operation succeeded or the request was accepted and will be processed. |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver operation results. These values are returned by Audio v1.0 Class Driver functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream direction.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Stream Direction

This macro defines the stream direction of the USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT Enumeration

Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 stream can generate.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | <p>This event occurs when a Audio v1.0 stream read operation has completed (i.e., when the data has been received from the connected Audio v1.0 stream). This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this read request, the amount of data read and the termination status of the read request.</p> |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | <p>This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 stream write operation has completed (i.e., when the data has been written to the connected Audio v1.0 stream). This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrte function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this write request, the amount of data written and the termination status of the write request.</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE | <p>This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 stream enable request has been completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA. This contains details about the request handle associated with this stream enable request and the termination status of the Stream Enable request.</p> |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE | <p>This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 stream disable request has been completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA. This contains details about the request handle associated with this stream disable request and the termination status of the Stream Disable request.</p> |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE | <p>This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 sampling rate set request has been completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA. This contains details about the request handle associated with this Sampling Rate Set request and the termination status of the stream disable request.</p> |

Description

Audio v1.0 Stream Events

This enumeration identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 stream can generate. The application should register an event handler using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet](#) function to receive Audio v1.0 stream events.

An event may have data associated with it. Events that are generated due to a transfer of data between the Host and Device are accompanied by data structures that provide the status of the transfer termination. For example, the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event is accompanied by a pointer to a [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) data structure. The transferStatus member of this data structure indicates the success or failure of the transfer. A transfer may fail due to the Device not responding on the bus if the Device stalls any stages of the transfer or due to NAK time-outs. The event description provides details on the nature of the event and the data that is associated with the event.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT Enumeration

Identifies the possible events that the CDC Class Driver can generate.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_DEVICE_DETACHED
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Read operation has completed i.e when the data has been received from the connected CDC device. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_Read function. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this read request, the amount of data read and the termination status of the read request. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Write operation has completed i.e when the data has been written to the connected CDC device. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_Write function. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this write request, the amount of data written and the termination status of the write request. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Send Break request has completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_ACN_BreakSend function and the device has either acknowledged or stalled the request. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this request, the amount of data sent and the termination status of the set request. |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Set Control Line State request has completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_ControlLineStateSet function and the device has either acknowledged or stalled the request. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this request, the amount of data sent and the termination status of the set request. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Set Line Coding request has completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingSet function and the device either acknowledged or stalled the request. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this request, the amount of data sent and the termination status of the set request. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Get Line Coding request has completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingGet function and the device sends the line coding to the host. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this request, the amount of data received and the termination status of the get request. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED | This event occurs when a CDC Client Driver Serial State Notification Get operation has completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet and the device sends a serial state notification to the host. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this request, the amount of data received and the termination status of the get request. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_DEVICE_DETACHED | This event occurs when the device that this client was connected to has <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • been detached. The client should close the CDC instance. There is no • event data associated with this event |

Description

CDC Class Driver Events

This enumeration identifies the possible events that the CDC Class Driver can generate. The application should register an event

handler using the [USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet](#) function to receive CDC Class Driver events.

An event may have data associated with it. Events that are generated due to a transfer of data between the host and device are accompanied by data structures that provide the status of the transfer termination. For example, the [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE](#) event is accompanied by a pointer to a [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#) data structure. The transferStatus member of this data structure indicates the success or failure of the transfer. A transfer may fail due to device not responding on the bus, if the device stalls any stages of the transfer or due to NAK timeouts. The event description provides details on the nature of the event and the data that is associated with the event.

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA](#) Structure

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT requestStatus;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT requestStatus; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Control Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 Client Driver in conjunction with the following events:

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA](#)

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA](#) Structure

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT requestStatus;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT requestStatus; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Control Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 Client Driver in conjunction with the following events:

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA](#)

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE Type

Defines the type of the CDC Host Client Driver Handle

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Handle

This type defines the type of the handle returned by [USB_HOST_CDC_Open\(\)](#) function. This application uses this handle to specify the instance of the CDC client driver being accessed while calling a CDC Client driver function.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handler function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE (*
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT event, void * eventData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Stream Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer to receive event call backs from the Audio v1.0 Class Driver. The class driver will call this function with relevant event parameters. The descriptions of the event handler function parameters are as follows:

- handle - Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream

- event - Type of event generated
- eventData - This parameter should be type casted to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more information.
- context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered with the event handling function

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA Macro

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA
```

Description

This is macro USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE Macro

Returns the type of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver event handler.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Event Handler Return Type

This enumeration lists the possible return values of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver event handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT Enumeration

USB Host CDC Client Driver Result enumeration.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_BUSY,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_ABORTED,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS
} USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE | An unknown failure has occurred |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_BUSY | The transfer or request could not be scheduled because internal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • queues are full. The request or transfer should be retried |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED | The request was stalled |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER | A required parameter was invalid |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN | The associated device does not exist in the system. |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_ABORTED | The transfer or requested was aborted |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID | The specified handle is not valid |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS | The operation was successful |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Result.

This enumeration lists the possible results the CDC client driver uses. Only some results are applicable to some functions and events. Refer to the event and function documentation for more details.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream transfer event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Transfer Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 Client Driver in conjunction with the following events:

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#)

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE Macro

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE
```

Description

USB Host Audio stream handle

This type defines the type of the handle returned by the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen](#) function. This application uses

this handle to interact with an audio stream.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO Structure

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ streamObj;
    USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_CODE format;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION streamDirection;
    uint8_t nChannels;
    uint8_t subFrameSize;
    uint8_t bitResolution;
    uint8_t nSamplingRates;
    uint32_t tSamFreq[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER];
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ streamObj; | Audio Stream Object. Clients need to pass this object when opening this audio stream using USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen function. |
| USB_AUDIO_FORMAT_CODE format; | Audio Format code for this Stream |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION streamDirection; | Stream direction |
| uint8_t nChannels; | Number of physical channels in the audio stream |
| uint8_t subFrameSize; | Number of bytes occupied by one audio sub-frame |
| uint8_t bitResolution; | Number of effectively used bits from the available bits in an audio sub-frame |
| uint8_t nSamplingRates; | Indicates how the sampling frequency can be programmed: 0: Continuous sampling frequency 1..255: Number of discrete sampling frequencies supported by Audio stream |
| uint32_t tSamFreq[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER]; | Supported sampling Frequencies |

Description

This is type USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO.

USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

USB Host CDC Client Driver Transfer Handle

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Transfer Handle

This is returned by the CDC Client driver data transfer routines and should be used by the application to track the transfer especially in cases where transfers are queued.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ Type

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream object.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Stream Object

This type defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream object. This type is returned by `USB_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst` and `USB_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext` as part of [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO](#) structure.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT Enumeration

USB Host Audio v1.0 stream result enumeration.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY = USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_INTERFACE_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_CONFIGURATION_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_UNKOWN,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FALSE = 0,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_TRUE = 1,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS = USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY = USB_HOST_RESULT_REQUEST_BUSY | The transfer or request could not be scheduled because internal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> queues are full. The request or transfer should be retried |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED | Request was aborted |

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED</code> | Request was stalled |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID</code> | The specified Stream Handle is not valid |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_END_OF_DEVICE_LIST</code> | The end of the device list was reached. |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_INTERFACE_UNKNOWN</code> | The specified interface is not available |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_PARAMETER_INVALID</code> | A NULL parameter was passed to the function |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_CONFIGURATION_UNKNOWN</code> | The specified configuration does not exist on this device. |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_BUS_NOT_ENABLED</code> | A bus operation was requested but the bus was not operated |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_BUS_UNKNOWN</code> | The specified bus does not exist in the system |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_UNKNOWN</code> | The specified audio stream does not exist in the system |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FAILURE</code> | An unknown failure has occurred |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_FALSE = 0</code> | Indicates a false condition |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_TRUE = 1</code> | Indicate a true condition |
| <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_SUCCESS = USB_HOST_RESULT_TRUE</code> | Indicates that the operation succeeded or the request was accepted and will be processed. |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Stream Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Host Audio v1.0 stream operation results. These values are returned by Audio v1.0 stream functions.

Remarks

None.

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE` Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver transfer handle.

File

`usb_host_audio_v1_0.h`

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Transfer Handle

This is returned by the Audio v1.0 Class Driver command and data transfer routines and should be used by the application to track the transfer especially in cases where transfers are queued.

Remarks

None.

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE` Macro

USB HOST Audio Client Driver interface.

File

`usb_host_audio_v1_0.h`

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE (void*)USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INTERFACE
```

Description

USB HOST Audio Client Driver Interface

This macro should be used by the application in the TPL table while adding support for the USB Audio Host Client Driver.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver invalid request handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver Invalid Request Handle

This is returned by the Audio v1.0 Client Driver command routines when the request could not be scheduled.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream invalid handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Host Audio stream Invalid handle

This is returned by the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen](#) function when a stream open request has failed.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid transfer handle definition.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID  
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This macro defines a USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid transfer handle. A invalid transfer handle is returned by the Audio v1.0 Class Driver data and command transfer routines when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handler function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,  
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT event, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver Attach Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to the Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer to receive attach and detach events callbacks from the Audio v1.0 Client Driver. The application should use the

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet](#) function to register an attach event handler. The client driver will call this function with the relevant event parameters. The descriptions of the event handler function parameters are as follows:

- audioObj - Audio Device object to which this event is directed
- event - Event indicates if it is an Attach or Detach
- context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered with the event handling function

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ Type

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host control entity object.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Control Entity Object

This data type defines the type of the object returned by the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst](#) or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext](#) functions. This application uses this object to get more information about that audio control entity.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_REQUEST_CALLBACK Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 class driver control transfer complete callback function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_REQUEST_CALLBACK)(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ audioObj,  

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle, USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT result, size_t size,  

uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class driver Control Transfer Complete Callback Function Pointer type

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Audio v1.0 class driver control transfer complete callback function. The client must provide a pointer to a control transfer complete callback function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) must match the types specified by this function pointer to receive notification when a control transfer has completed. The application should use the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet](#) function to register an entity control request callback. The Audio v1.0 client driver will call this function with the relevant event parameters. The descriptions of the event handler function parameters are as follows:

- audioObj - Audio v1.0 client driver object associated with this event
- requestHandle - Request handle of the control transfer request that caused this event
- result - Completion result of the control transfer. This will be **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS** if the control transfer completed successfully, **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE** if an unknown failure occurred, or **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED** if the request was stalled.
- size - Size of the data stage that was transferred
- context - Value identifying the context of the application that was provided when the **USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlRequest** function was called

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT Enumeration

Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver attach event handler can generate.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {  
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT_ATTACH,  
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT_DETACH  
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT_ATTACH | This event occurs when the Host layer has detected the Audio v1.0 Class Driver instance from a USB Audio v1.0 Device. There is no event data associated with this event. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT_DETACH | This event occurs when host layer has detached the Audio v1.0 Class Driver instance from a USB Audio v1.0 Device. This can happen if the device itself was detached or if the device configuration was changed. There is no event data associated with this event. |

Description

Audio v1.0 Class Driver Events

This enumeration identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver attach event handler can generate. The application should register an event handler using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet](#) function to receive Audio v1.0 Class Driver Attach events.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ Type

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host client object.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Object

This data type defines the type of the Audio Host client object. This type is returned by the client driver attach event handler and is used by the application to open the attached Audio v1.0 Device.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver request handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver Request Handle

This handle is returned by the Audio v1.0 Host client driver entity control functions and audio stream control request functions. Applications should use this handle to track a request.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT Enumeration

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver result enumeration.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED,
```

```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_CONTROL_ENTITY,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_STREAMING_INTERFACE,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_INTERFACE_SETTINGS,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_FAILURE | An unknown failure has occurred |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_BUSY | The transfer or request could not be scheduled because internal queues are full. The request or transfer should be retried |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_REQUEST_STALLED | The request was stalled |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER | A required parameter was invalid |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN | The associated device does not exist in the system. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID | The specified handle is not valid |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_TRANSFER_ABORTED | The transfer or requested was aborted |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_OBJ_INVALID | The specified Audio v1.0 object is invalid |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_CONTROL_ENTITY | No more audio control entity |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_STREAMING_INTERFACE | No more streaming interface settings present in the audio device |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_END_OF_INTERFACE_SETTINGS | No more interface alternate settings are present in the audio streaming interface |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT_SUCCESS | Indicates that the operation succeeded or the request was accepted and will be processed. |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Result enumeration.

This enumeration lists the possible USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver operation results. These values are returned by Audio v1.0 Class Driver functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION Enumeration

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream direction.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```

typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_OUT,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_IN
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_OUT | Stream Direction Host to Device |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_IN | Stream Direction Device to Host |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Stream Direction

This enumeration lists the possible audio stream directions.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT Enumeration

Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Stream can generate.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_SET_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_GET_COMPLETE,
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_DETACH
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE | <p>This event occurs when a Audio v1.0 stream read operation has completed (i.e., when the data has been received from the connected Audio v1.0 stream). This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this read request, the amount of data read and the termination status of the read request.</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE | This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 stream write operation has completed (i.e., when the data has been written to the connected Audio v1.0 stream). This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA structure. This contains details about the transfer handle associated with this write request, the amount of data written and the termination status of the write request. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE | This event occurs when an audio streaming set interface request has been completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA . This contains details about the request handle associated with the interface set request and the termination status of the request. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_SET_COMPLETE | This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 sampling frequency set request has been completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet function. The eventData parameter in the event callback function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_SET_COMPLETE_DATA . This contains details about the request handle associated with this sampling frequency set request and the termination status of the request. |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_GET_COMPLETE | This event occurs when an Audio v1.0 sampling frequency get request has been completed. This event is generated after the application calls the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet function. The eventData parameter in the event call back function will be of a pointer to a USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_GET_COMPLETE_DATA . This contains details about the request handle associated with this sampling frequency get request and the termination status of the request. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_DETACH | This event occurs when an audio stream is detached from the Host. This can happen if the Audio device itself was detached, or if the Audio device configuration was changed. There is no event data associated with this event. |

Description

Audio v1.0 Stream Events

This enumeration identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Stream can generate. The application should register an event handler using the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet](#) function to receive Audio v1.0 stream events.

An event may have data associated with it. Events that are generated due to a transfer of data between the host and device are accompanied by data structures that provide the status of the transfer termination. For example, the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE](#) event is accompanied by a pointer to a [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#) data structure. The transferStatus member of this data structure indicates the success or failure of the transfer. A transfer may fail due to the device not responding on the bus, or if the device stalls any stages of the transfer. The event description provides details on the nature of the event and the data that is associated with the event.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handler function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE (*
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT event, void * eventData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Stream Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Stream event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to the Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer to receive event callbacks from the Audio v1.0 Class Driver. The application should use the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet](#) function to register an audio stream event handler. The class driver will call this function with the relevant event parameters. The descriptions of the stream event handler function parameters are as follows:

- handle - Handle to the Audio v1.0 stream
- event - Type of event generated

- eventData - This parameter should be type casted to an event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more information.
- context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered with the event handling function

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT requestStatus;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT requestStatus; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Control Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 stream in conjunction with the following events:

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_SET_COMPLETE](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_GET_COMPLETE](#)

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream data transfer event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    size_t length;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT result;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| size_t length; | Amount of data transferred |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT result; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Data Transfer Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 stream in conjunction with the following events:

- USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#)

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE Enumeration](#)

Returns the type of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | This means no response is required |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Stream Event Handler Return Type

This enumeration lists the possible return values of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler.

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA Structure](#)

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT requestStatus;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT requestStatus; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Control Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 stream in conjunction with the following events:

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_SET_COMPLETE](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_GET_COMPLETE](#)

Remarks

None.

[**USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA**](#) Structure

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream data transfer event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    size_t length;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT result;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| size_t length; | Amount of data transferred |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT result; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Data Transfer Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 stream in conjunction with the following events:

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#)

Remarks

None.

[**USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE**](#) Type

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host Audio stream handle

This data type defines the type of the handle returned by [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen](#) function. The application uses this handle to interact with an Audio Stream.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream data transfer handle.

File

```
usb_host_audio_v1_0.h
```

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Stream Data Transfer Handle

This handle is returned by the Audio v1.0 Class driver stream data transfer functions and should be used by the application to track the transfer, especially in cases where transfers are queued.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ Type

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface object.

File

```
usb_host_audio_v1_0.h
```

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Streaming interface Object

This data type defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface object. This type is returned by the [USB_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst](#) and [USB_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext](#) functions.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ Type

Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface setting object.

File

```
usb_host_audio_v1_0.h
```

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ;
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Streaming Interface Setting Object

This data type defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface setting object. This type is returned by the `USB_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst` and `USB_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext` functions.

Remarks

None.

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet` Macro

Sets an attach/detach event handler.

File

`usb_host_audio_v1_0.h`

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet
```

Returns

- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_SUCCESS` - if the attach event handler was registered successfully
- `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT_FAILURE` - if the number of registered event handlers has exceeded `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER`

Description

This function will set an attach event handler. The attach event handler will be called when a Audio v1.0 device has been attached or detached. The context will be returned in the event handler. This function should be called before the bus has been enabled.

Remarks

This function should be called before the `USB_HOST_BusEnable` function is called.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>eventHandler</code> | Pointer to the attach event handler |
| <code>context</code> | An application defined context that will be returned in the event handler |

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

`USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DeviceObjHandleGet` Macro

Returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DeviceObjHandleGet USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet
```

Returns

This function will return a valid device object handle if the device is still connected to the system. Otherwise, [USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID](#) is returned.

Description

This function returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device. This returned device object handle can be used by the application to perform device-level operations such as getting the string descriptors.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioDeviceObj | Audio V1.0 device object handle returned in the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DeviceObjHandleGet
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ audioDeviceObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN Macro**File**

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_IN
```

Description

This is macro `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN`.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT Macro**File**

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DIRECTION_OUT
```

Description

This is macro `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT`.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH Macro**File**

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT_ATTACH
```

Description

This is macro USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH Macro**File**

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT_DETACH
```

Description

This is macro USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE Macro

Returns the type of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE  
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Stream Event Handler Return Type

This enumeration lists the possible return values of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose Macro

Closes the audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamClose
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will close the open audio stream. This closes the association between the application entity that opened the audio stream and the audio stream. The audio stream handle becomes invalid.

Remarks

The device handle becomes invalid after calling this function.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| audioSteamHandle | handle to the audio stream obtained from the USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen function. |

Function

```
void USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE audioSteamHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen Macro

Opens the specified audio stream.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen
```

Returns

This function will return a valid handle if the audio stream could be opened successfully; otherwise, it will return `USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID`. The function will return a valid handle if the stream is ready to be opened.

Description

This function will open the specified audio stream. Once opened, the audio stream can be accessed via the handle which this function returns. The `audioStreamObj` parameter is the value returned in the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) or [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) functions.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The audio stream object should be valid.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|---------------------|
| audioStreamObj | Audio stream object |

Section

Audio Stream Access Functions

```
*****
*****
```

Function

```
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen
(
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ audioStreamObj
);
```

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INTERFACE Macro

USB HOST Audio v1.0 Client Driver interface.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INTERFACE
```

Description

USB HOST Audio V1 Client Driver Interface

This macro should be used by the application in the TPL table while adding support for the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver invalid request handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver Invalid Request Handle

This handle is returned by the Audio v1.0 Client driver command routines when the request could not be scheduled.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER Macro

This structure defines USB Host audio stream information structure.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER  
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host Audio stream Info table structure

This structure is an out parameter to the functions [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst](#) and [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext](#) functions. This structure contains information about an audio stream in the attached Audio Device. This structure contains the stream object, audio format, etc.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

Defines Audio v1.0 Host stream invalid handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host Audio stream Invalid handle

This handle is returned by the [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen](#) function when a stream open has failed.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid stream data transfer handle.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID  
((USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Invalid Stream Data Transfer Handle Definition

This macro defines a USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid stream data transfer handle. An invalid transfer handle is returned by the Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream data transfer routines when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data.

File

[usb_host_audio_v1_0.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT requestStatus;
} USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT requestStatus; | Transfer termination status |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Stream Control Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the Audio V1.0 stream in conjunction with the following events:

- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_SET_COMPLETE](#)
- [USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_GET_COMPLETE](#)

Remarks

None.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_audio_v1_0.h | USB Host Audio v1_0 Class Driver Interface Header |
| usb_host_cdc.h | USB Host CDC Client Driver Interface Header |
| usb_host_hub_config_template.h | USB host CDC Class configuration definitions template |
| usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h | USB host Audio v1.0 Class configuration definitions template |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_host_audio_v1_0.h

USB Host Audio v1_0 Class Driver Interface Header

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver audio result enumeration. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 stream can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT | USB Host Audio v1.0 stream result enumeration. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver attach event handler can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver result enumeration. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream direction. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Stream can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE | Returns the type of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest | Schedules an Audio v1.0 control transfer. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet | Gets the number of stream groups present in the attached Audio v1.0 Device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable | Schedules an audio stream disable request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable | Schedules an audio stream enable request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet | Registers an event handler with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst | Returns information about first audio stream in the specified audio stream group. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext | Returns information about the next audio stream in the specified audio stream group. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead | Schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet | Schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite | Schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet | Sets an attach/detach event handler. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst | Retrieves the handle to the first audio control entity |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext | Retrieves the handle to the next audio control entity. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet | Returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet | Retrieves the entity object for the entity ID. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet | Registers an audio entity request callback function with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityTypeGet | Returns the entity type of the audio control entity. |

| | | |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists | Returns "true" if mute control exists for the specified channel of the feature unit. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteGet | Schedules a get mute control request to the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteSet | Schedules a set mute control request to the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelNumbersGet | Returns the number of channels. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists | Returns "true" if volume control exists for the specified channel of the feature unit. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeGet | Schedules a get current volume control request to the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeRangeGet | Schedules a control request to the Audio Device feature unit to get the range supported by the volume control on the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSet | Schedules a set current volume control request to the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet | Schedules a control request to an Audio Device feature unit to get the number of sub-ranges supported by the volume control on the specified channel. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitIDGet | Returns ID of the Feature Unit. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitSourceIDGet | Returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this feature unit is connected. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamClose | Closes the audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet | Registers an event handler with the Audio v1.0 Client Driver stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceBitResolutionGet | Returns the bit resolution of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceChannelNumbersGet | Returns the number of channels of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceDirectionGet | Returns the direction of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceFormatTagGet | Returns the format tag of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst | Gets the first streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext | Gets the next streaming interface object from the attached Audio Device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequenciesGet | Returns the sampling frequencies supported by the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequencyTypeGet | Returns the sampling frequency type of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet | Schedules a SET_INTERFACE request to the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst | Gets the first streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface. |

| | | |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext | Gets the next streaming interface setting object within an audio streaming interface. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSubFrameSizeGet | Returns the sub-frame size of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceTerminalLinkGet | Returns the terminal link of the specified streaming interface setting. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen | Opens the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead | Schedules an audio stream read request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet | Schedules an audio stream get sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet | Schedules an audio stream set sampling rate request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite | Schedules an audio stream write request for the specified audio stream. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalAssociationGet | Returns the associated terminal ID of the audio control terminal. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalIDGet | Returns the terminal ID of the audio control entity. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelConfigGet | Returns a structure that describes the spatial location of the logical channels of in the terminal's output audio channel cluster. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelNumbersGet | Returns the number of logical output channels in the terminal's output audio channel cluster. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalSourceIDGet | Returns the ID of the unit or terminal to which this terminal is connected. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalTypeGet | Returns the terminal type of the audio control entity. |

Macros

| Name | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet | Sets an attach/detach event handler. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DeviceObjHandleGet | Returns the device object handle for this Audio v1.0 Device. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN</code> . |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT</code> . |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the Audio v1.0 Class Driver can generate. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH</code> . |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH | This is macro <code>USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH</code> . |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE | USB HOST Audio Client Driver interface. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host client object. |

| | | |
|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver request handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver invalid request handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream direction. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA | This is macro USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA . |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE | Returns the type of the USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver event handler. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | Returns the type of the USB Host Audio v1.0 stream event handler. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream transfer event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream invalid handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver transfer handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid transfer handle definition. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose | Closes the audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen | Opens the specified audio stream. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INTERFACE | USB HOST Audio v1.0 Client Driver interface. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver invalid request handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER | This structure defines USB Host audio stream information structure. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines Audio v1.0 Host stream invalid handle. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver invalid stream data transfer handle. |

Structures

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO | This is type USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO . |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream data transfer event data. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream control event data. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host Audio v1.0 class stream data transfer event data. |

Types

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handler function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver control transfer complete callback function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handler function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream object. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver attach event handler function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host control entity object. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_REQUEST_CALLBACK | USB Host Audio v1.0 class driver control transfer complete callback function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host client object. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Client Driver request handle. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream event handler function pointer type. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host stream handle. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver stream data transfer handle. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface object. |
| USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ | Defines the type of the Audio v1.0 Host streaming interface setting object. |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface to the USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Driver.

File Name

`usb_host_audio_v1_0.h`

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_host_cdc.h

USB Host CDC Client Driver Interface Header

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT | Identifies the possible events that the CDC Class Driver can generate. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE | Return type of the USB CDC Host Client Driver Event Handler. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT | USB Host CDC Client Driver Result enumeration. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_ControlLineStateSet | This function sends a request to the attached device to set its Control Line State. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingSet | This function sends a request to the attached device to set its Line Coding. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet | This function will set an attach event handler. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_Close | This function closes the CDC device. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_DeviceObjHandleGet | This function returns the Device Object Handle for this CDC device. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet | Registers an event handler with the CDC Host Client Driver. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_Open | This function opens the specified CDC device. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_Read | This function will read data from the attached device. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet | This function will request Serial State Notification from the attached device. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_CDC_Write | This function will write data to the attached device. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines an Invalid CDC Client Driver Handle. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE | USB HOST CDC Client Driver Interface |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Request Handle |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host CDC Client Driver Attach Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |

| | | |
|--|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE | Defines the type of the CDC Host Client Driver Handle |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ | Defines the type of the CDC Host Client Object. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host CDC Client Driver Request Handle |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB Host CDC Client Driver Transfer Handle |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface to the USB Host CDC Client Driver.

File Name

usb_host_cdc.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_host_hub_config_template.h

USB host CDC Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_HOST_HUB_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Hub to be supported in the system. |
| | USB_HOST_HUB_PORTS_NUMBER | Specifies the number of ports per Hub. |

Description

USB Host Hub Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the Hub Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name

usb_host_hub_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h

USB host Audio v1.0 Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |

| | | |
|--|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER | Defines the number of attach event listeners that can be registered with Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Audio v1.0 instances. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTINGS_NUMBER | Defines maximum number of alternate settings per Streaming interface provided by any Device that will be connected to this Audio Host. |
| | USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of streaming interfaces could be present in an Audio v1.0 device that this Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver can support. |

Description

USB Host Audio v1.0 Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the Audio v1.0 host Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name

[usb_host_cdc_config_template.h](#)

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB CDC Host Library

This section describes the USB CDC Host Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB CDC Host Library.

Description

The CDC Host Client Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack allows USB Host applications to support and interact with Communications Device Class (CDC) USB devices. The CDC Host Client Driver has the following features:

- Supports CDC ACM devices
- Supports CDC device matching at both the device descriptor and interface descriptor level
- Supports composite CDC devices (multiple CDC interfaces or CDC with other device classes)
- Designed to support multi-client operation
- RTOS ready
- An event driver non-clocking application interaction model
- Allows the application to send CDC ACM commands to the device
- Supports queuing of read and write data transfers

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB CDC Host Client Driver Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB CDC Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The CDC Host Client Driver interacts with the Host Layer to control the attached CDC device. The USB Host Layer attaches the CDC Host Client Driver to the CDC device when it meets the matching criteria specified in the USB Host TPL table. The CDC Host Client Driver abstracts the details of sending CDC class specific control transfer commands by providing easy to use non-blocking API to send these command. A command, when issued, is assigned a request handle. This request handle is returned in the event that is generated when the command has been processed, and can be used by the application to track the command. The class specific command functions are implemented in `usb_host_cdc_acm.c`.

While transferring data over the data interface, the CDC Host Client Driver abstracts details such as the bulk interface, endpoints and endpoint size. The CDC Host Client Driver internally (and without application intervention) validates the CDC class specific device descriptors and opens communication pipes. While transferring data, multiple read and write requests can be queued. Each such request gets assigned a transfer handle. The transfer handle for a transfer request is returned along with the completion event for that transfer request. The data transfer routines are implemented in `usb_host_cdc.c`.

Library Overview

The USB CDC Host Client Driver API is grouped functionally, as shown in the following table.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Client Access Functions | These functions allow application clients to open, close the client and register event handlers. These functions are implemented in <code>usb_host_cdc.c</code> . |
| Data Transfer Functions | These functions allow the application client to transfer data to the attached device. These functions are implemented in <code>usb_host_cdc.c</code> . |
| CDC Class-specific Command Functions | These functions allow the application to send class specific control transfer requests to the application. These functions are implemented in <code>usb_host_cdc_acm.c</code> . |

How the Library Works

Describes how the Library works and how it should be used.

Description

The CDC Host Client Driver provides the user application with an easy-to-use interface to the attached CDC device. The USB Host Layer initializes the CDC Host Client Driver when a device is attached. This process does not require application intervention.

The following sections describe the steps and methods required for the user application to interact with the attached devices:

- TPL Table Configuration for CDC Devices
- Detecting Device Attach
- Opening the CDC Host Client Driver
- Sending Class-specific Control Transfers
- Reading and Writing Data
- Event Handling

TPL Table Configuration for CDC Devices

Provides information on configuring the TPL table for CDC devices.

Description

The Host Layer attaches the CDC Host Client Driver to a device when the device class, subclass, protocol in the device descriptor or when the class, subclass and protocol fields in the Interface Association Descriptor (IAD) or Interface descriptor matches the entry in the TPL table. When specifying the entry for the CDC device, the entry for the CDC device, the driver interface must be set to [USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE](#). This will attach the CDC Host Client Driver to the device when the USB Host matches the TPL entry to the device. The following code shows possible TPL table options for matching CDC Devices.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of TPL table entries for supporting CDC
 * devices. Note the driver interface is set to USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE. This
 * will load the CDC Host Client Driver when there is TPL match */

const USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY USBTPLList[1] =
{
    /* This entry looks for any CDC device. The CDC Host Client Driver will
     * check if this is an ACM device and will then load itself */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL(USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE, USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE, 0x0 ,
NULL, USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE),

    /* This entry looks specifically for the communications class protocol.
     * This entry should be used if the host application is expected to support
     * CDC as a part of an composite device */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL(USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE,
USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL, USB_CDC_PROTOCOL_AT_V250 , NULL,
USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE),
};

};
```

Detecting Device Attach

Describes how to register an Attach Event Handler.

Description

The application will need to know when a CDC Device is attached. To receive this attach event from the CDC Host Client Driver, the application must register an Attach Event Handler by calling the [USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet](#) function. This function should be called before the [USB_HOST_BusEnable](#) function is called, else the application may miss CDC attach events. It can be called multiple times to register multiple event handlers, each for different application clients that need to know about CDC Device Attach events.

The total number of event handlers that can be registered is defined by [USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER](#) configuration option in `system_config.h`. When a device is attached, the CDC Host Client Driver will send the attach event to all the registered event handlers. In this event handler, the CDC Host Client Driver will pass a [USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ](#) that can be opened to gain access to the device. The following code shows an example of how to register attach event handlers.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of CDC Attach Event Handler and how this
 * attach event handler can be registered with the CDC Host Client Driver */

void APP_USBHostCDCAttachEventListener(USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcObj, uintptr_t context)
{
    /* This function gets called when the CDC device is attached. In this
     * example we let the application know that a device is attached and we
     * store the CDC device object. This object will be required to open the
     * device. */

    appData.deviceIsAttached = true;
    appData.cdcObj = cdcObj;
}
```

```

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    switch (appData.state)
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:
            /* In this state the application enables the USB Host Bus. Note
             * how the CDC Attach event handler is registered before the bus
             * is enabled. */

            USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostCDCAttachEventListener, (uintptr_t)
0);
            USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
            appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
            break;

        case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
            /* Here we wait for the bus enable operation to complete. */
            break;
    }
}

```

Opening the CDC Host Client Driver

Describes how an application can open the CDC Host Client Driver.

Description

The application must open the CDC Host Client Driver to communicate and control the attached device. The device can be opened by using the [USB_HOST_CDC_Open](#) function and specifying the [USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ](#) object that was returned in the attached event handler. If the open function fails, it returns an invalid handle ([USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID](#)). Once opened successfully, a valid handle tracks the relationship between the client and the CDC Host Client Driver. This handle should be used with other CDC Host Client Driver functions to specify the instance of the CDC Host Client Driver being accessed.

A CDC Host Client Driver instance can be opened multiple times by different application clients. In an ROTS based application each client could run its own thread. Multiple clients can read write data to the one CDC device. In such a case, the read and write requests are queued. The following code shows an example of how the CDC Driver is opened.

Example:

```

/* This code shows an example of the how to open the CDC Host Client
 * driver. The application state machine waits for a device attach and then
 * opens the CDC Host Client Driver. */

void APP_USBHostCDCAttachEventListener(USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcObj, uintptr_t context)
{
    /* This function gets called when the CDC device is attached. Update the
     * application data structure to let the application know that this device
     * is attached */

    appData.deviceIsAttached = true;
    appData.cdcObj = cdcObj;
}

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    switch (appData.state)
    {
        case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:
            /* In this state the application enables the USB Host Bus. Note
             * how the CDC Attach event handler are registered before the bus
             * is enabled. */

            USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostEventHandler, (uintptr_t)0);
    }
}

```

```

        USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostCDCAttachEventListener, (uintptr_t)
0);
        USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
        break;

    case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:

        /* In this state we wait for the Bus enable to complete */
        if(USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled(0))
        {
            appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH;
        }
        break;

    case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DEVICE_ATTACH:

        /* In this state the application is waiting for the device to be
         * attached */
        if(appData.deviceIsAttached)
        {
            /* A device is attached. We can open this device */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_OPEN_DEVICE;
            appData.deviceIsAttached = false;
        }
        break;

    case APP_STATE_OPEN_DEVICE:

        /* In this state the application opens the attached device */
        appData.cdcHostHandle = USB_HOST_CDC_Open(appData.cdcObj);
        if(appData.cdcHostHandle != USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID)
        {
            /* The driver was opened successfully. Set the event handler
             * and then go to the next state. */
            USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet(appData.cdcHostHandle,
                                         APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler,
                                         (uintptr_t)0);
            appData.state = APP_STATE_SET_LINE_CODING;
        }
        break;

    default:
        break;
}
}

```

Sending Class-specific Control Transfers

Describes how the application client can send CDC Class-specific commands to the connected device.

Description

The CDC Host Client Driver allows the application client to send CDC Class specific commands to the connected device. These commands allows the application client to:

- Set the device line coding (USB_HOST_CDC_LineCodingSet)
- Retrieve the device line coding (USB_HOST_CDC_LineCodingGet)
- Set the device control line state (USB_HOST_CDC_ControlLineStateSet)
- Ask the device to send a break signal (USB_HOST_CDC_BreakSend)

These functions are non-blocking. The functions will return before the actual command execution is complete. The return value indicates if the command was scheduled successfully, or if the driver is busy and cannot accept commands, or if the command failed due to an unknown reason. If the command failed because the driver was busy, it can be retried. If scheduled successfully, the function will return a valid request handle. This request handle is unique and tracks the requested command.

When the command related control transfer has completed, the CDC Host Client Driver generates a command specific completion event. This event is accompanied by a data structure that contains information about the completion of the command. The request handler generated at the time of calling the command request function is also returned along with the event. The request handle expires after the event handler exits. The following tables show the command functions, along with the respective events and the type of the event related data.

Table 1: Set Line Coding

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingSet |
| Event | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA |

Table 2: Get Line Coding

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingGet |
| Event | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA |

Table 3: Set Control Line State

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_ControlLineStateSet |
| Event | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_SET_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA |

Table 4: Send Break

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_SendBreak |
| Event | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA |

The following code shows an example of sending a CDC class specific commands. Refer to the [Event Handling](#) section for details on setting the event handler function.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of how to send CDC Class specific command
 * requests. The event handling related to each command is also shown. */
```

```
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE cdcHandle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function is called when a CDC Host event has occurred. A pointer to
     * this function is registered after opening the device. See the call to
     * USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet() function. */

    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA * setLineCodingEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA * setControlLineStateEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA * readCompleteEventData;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE:

            /* This means the application requested Set Line Coding request is
             * complete. */
            setLineCodingEventData = (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA
*) (eventData);
```

```
    appData.controlRequestDone = true;
    appData.controlRequestResult = setLineCodingEventData->result;
    break;
```

```
    case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE:
```

```
        /* This means the application requested Set Control Line State
         * request has completed. */
        setControlLineStateEventData =
(USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA *) (eventData);
        appData.controlRequestDone = true;
        appData.controlRequestResult = setControlLineStateEventData->result;
        break;
```

```
    default:
        break;
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
void APP_Tasks(void)
{
```

```
    switch(appData.state)
{
    /* The application states that enable the bus and wait for device attach are
     * not shown here for brevity */

    case APP_STATE_OPEN_DEVICE:
```

```
        /* In this state the application opens the attached device */
        appData.cdcHostHandle = USB_HOST_CDC_Open(appData.cdcObj);
        if(appData.cdcHostHandle != USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID)
        {
            /* The driver was opened successfully. Set the event handler
             * and then go to the next state. */
            USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet(appData.cdcHostHandle, APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler,
(uintptr_t)0);
            appData.state = APP_STATE_SET_LINE_CODING;
        }
        break;
```

```
    case APP_STATE_SET_LINE_CODING:
```

```
        /* Here we set the Line coding. The control request done flag will
         * be set to true when the control request has completed. */

        appData.controlRequestDone = false;
        result = USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingSet(appData.cdcHostHandle, NULL,
&appData.cdcHostLineCoding);

        if(result == USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* We wait for the set line coding to complete */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_SET_LINE_CODING;
        }
        break;
```

```
    case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_SET_LINE_CODING:
```

```
        if(appData.controlRequestDone)
        {
            if(appData.controlRequestResult != USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
            {
                /* The control request was not successful. */
                appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
```

```

        }
    else
    {
        /* Next we set the Control Line State */
        appData.state = APP_STATE_SEND_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE;
    }
}
break;

case APP_STATE_SEND_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE:

    /* Here we set the control line state */
    appData.controlRequestDone = false;
    result = USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_ControlLineStateSet(appData.cdcHostHandle, NULL,
                                                &appData.controlLineState);

    if(result == USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* We wait for the set line coding to complete */
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE;
    }

    break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE:

    /* Here we wait for the control line state set request to complete */
    if(appData.controlRequestDone)
    {
        if(appData.controlRequestResult != USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* The control request was not successful. */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_ERROR;
        }
        else
        {
            /* Next we set the Control Line State */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_SEND_PROMPT_TO_DEVICE;
        }
    }

    break;

default:
    break;
}
}
}

```

Reading and Writing Data

Describes how to transfer data to the attached CDC device.

Description

The application can use the [USB_HOST_CDC_Read](#) and [USB_HOST_CDC_Write](#) functions to transfer data to the attached CDC device. While calling these function, the client handle specifies the target CDC device and the event handler function to which the events should be sent. It is possible for multiple client to open the same instance of the CDC Host Client Driver instance and transfer data to the attached CDC Device.

Calling the [USB_HOST_CDC_Read](#) and [USB_HOST_CDC_Write](#) functions while a read/write transfer is already in progress will cause the transfer result to be queued. If the transfer was successfully queued or scheduled, the [USB_HOST_CDC_Read](#) and [USB_HOST_CDC_Write](#) functions will return a valid transfer handle. This transfer handle identifies the transfer request. The application clients can use the transfer handles to keep track of multiple queued transfers. When a transfer completes, the CDC Host Client Driver generates an event. The following tables shows the event and the event data associated with the event.

Table 1: Read

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_CDC_Read |
| Event | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA |

Table 2: Write

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Function | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingGet |
| Event | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE |
| Event Data Type | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA |

The event data contains information on the amount of data transferred, completion status and the transfer handle of the transfer. The following code shows an example of reading and writing data.

Example:

```
/* In this code example, the USB_HOST_CDC_Read and the USB_HOST_CDC_Write
 * functions are used to read and write data. The event related to the read and
 * write operations are handled in the APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler function. */

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE cdcHandle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function is called when a CDC Host event has occurred. A pointer to
     * this function is registered after opening the device. */

    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA * readCompleteEventData;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

            /* This means an application requested write has completed */
            appData.writeTransferDone = true;
            writeCompleteEventData = (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA *) (eventData);
            appData.writeTransferResult = writeCompleteEventData->result;
            break;

        case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:

            /* This means an application requested write has completed */
            appData.readTransferDone = true;
            readCompleteEventData = (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA *) (eventData);
            appData.readTransferResult = readCompleteEventData->result;
            break;

        default:
            break;
    }

    return(USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
}

void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    switch(appData.state)
    {
        /* The application states that wait for device attach and open the CDC
         * Host Client Driver are not shown here for brevity */
    }
}
```

```
case APP_STATE_SEND_PROMPT_TO_DEVICE:

    /* The prompt is sent to the device here. The write transfer done
     * flag is updated in the event handler. */

    appData.writeTransferDone = false;
    result = USB_HOST_CDC_Write(appData.cdcHostHandle, NULL, prompt, 8);

    if(result == USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_PROMPT_SEND_COMPLETE;
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_PROMPT_SEND_COMPLETE:

    /* Here we check if the write transfer is done */
    if(appData.writeTransferDone)
    {
        if(appData.writeTransferResult == USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* Now to get data from the device */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_GET_DATA_FROM_DEVICE;
        }
        else
        {
            /* Try sending the prompt again. */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_SEND_PROMPT_TO_DEVICE;
        }
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_GET_DATA_FROM_DEVICE:

    /* Here we request data from the device */
    appData.readTransferDone = false;
    result = USB_HOST_CDC_Read(appData.cdcHostHandle, NULL, appData.indataArray, 1);
    if(result == USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
    {
        appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DATA_FROM_DEVICE;
    }
    break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_DATA_FROM_DEVICE:

    /* Wait for data from device. */
    if(appData.readTransferDone)
    {
        if(appData.readTransferResult == USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* Do something with the data here */
        }
    }
    break;

default:
    break;
}
```

Event Handling

Describes how to set event handlers.

Description

The CDC Host Client Driver presents an event driven interface to the application. The CDC Host Client Driver requires the application client to set two event handlers for meaningful operation:

- The Attach event handler is not client specific and is registered before the [USB_HOST_BusEnable](#) function is called. This event handler and the attach event is discussed in the Detecting Device Attach section.
- The client specific command, data transfer and detach events. The CDC Class specific command request events are discussed in the Sending Class Specific Control Transfers section. The data transfer related events are discussed in the Reading and Writing Data section. Some general points about these events are discussed below.

A request to send a command or transfer data typically completes after the command request or transfer function has exited. The application must then use the CDC Host Client Driver event to track the completion of this command or data transfer request. In a case where multiple data transfers are queued, the transfer handles can be used to identify the transfer requests.

The application must use the [USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet](#) function to register a client specific event handler. This event handler will be called when a command, data transfer or detach event has occurred and should be registered before the client request for command or a data transfer. The following code shows an example of registering an event handler.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of setting an event handler and an example
 * event handler. For the full set of events that the CDC Host Client generates,
 * refer to USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT enumeration description */
```

```
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE cdcHandle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT event,
    void * eventData,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    /* This function is called when a CDC Host event has occurred. A pointer to
     * this function is registered after opening the device. See the call to
     * USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet() function. */

    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA * setLineCodingEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA * setControlLineStateEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA * writeCompleteEventData;
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA * readCompleteEventData;

    switch(event)
    {
        case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE:

            /* This means the application requested Set Line Coding request is
             * complete. */
            setLineCodingEventData = (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA *)
                *(eventData);
            appData.controlRequestDone = true;
            appData.controlRequestResult = setLineCodingEventData->result;
            break;

        case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE:

            /* This means the application requested Set Control Line State
             * request has completed. */
            setControlLineStateEventData =
                (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACN_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA *) (eventData);
            appData.controlRequestDone = true;
            appData.controlRequestResult = setControlLineStateEventData->result;
            break;

        case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:

            /* This means an application requested write has completed */
            appData.writeTransferDone = true;
            writeCompleteEventData = (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA *) (eventData);
```

```

        appData.writeTransferResult = writeCompleteEventData->result;
        break;
```

```

case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE:
    /* This means an application requested write has completed */
    appData.readTransferDone = true;
    readCompleteEventData = (USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA *) (eventData);
    appData.readTransferResult = readCompleteEventData->result;
    break;
```

```

case USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_DEVICE_DETACHED:
    /* The device was detached */
    appData.deviceWasDetached = true;
    break;
```

```

default:
    break;
```

```
}
```

```
return(USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE);
```

```
}
```



```
void APP_Tasks(void)
{
    switch(appData.state)
    {
        /* The application states that enable the bus and wait for device attach
         * are not shown here for brevity */
        case APP_STATE_OPEN_DEVICE:
            /* In this state the application opens the attached device */
            appData.cdcHostHandle = USB_HOST_CDC_Open(appData.cdcObj);
            if(appData.cdcHostHandle != USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID)
            {
                /* The driver was opened successfully. Set the event handler
                 * and then go to the next state. */
                USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet(appData.cdcHostHandle, APP_USBHostCDCEventHandler,
                (uintptr_t)0);
                appData.state = APP_STATE_SET_LINE_CODING;
            }
            break;
```

```

default:
    break;
```

```
}
```

}

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB CDC Host Library.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER | Defines the number of attach event listeners that can be registered with CDC Host Client Driver. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of CDC instances. |

Description

The CDC Host Client Driver requires configuration constants to be specified in `system_config.h` file. These constants define the build time configuration (functionality and static resources) of the CDC Host Client Driver.

_USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H Macro

File

[usb_host_cdc_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_`.

USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER Macro

Defines the number of attach event listeners that can be registered with CDC Host Client Driver.

File

[usb_host_cdc_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host CDC Attach Listeners Number

The USB CDC Host Client Driver provides attach notification to listeners who have registered with the client driver via the `USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet()` function. The `USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER` configuration constant defines the maximum number of event handlers that can be set. This number should be set to equal the number of entities that interested in knowing when a CDC device is attached.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of CDC instances.

File

[usb_host_cdc_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host CDC Maximum Number of Instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the CDC host Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two instances of the CDC host Driver should be set to 2.

Remarks

None.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the USB CDC Host Client Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_cdc.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the CDC Host Client Driver API. |
| sub_host_cdc_acm.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the CDC Host Client Driver command request API. |

Required File(s)

 **MHC** *All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.*

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_host_cdc.c | This file implements the CDC Host Client Driver interface and should be included in the project if the CDC Host Client Driver operation is desired. |
| /src/dynamic/usb_host_cdc_acm.c | This file implements the CDC Host Client Driver command request functions and should be included if any class specific function must be called. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB CDC Host Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Host Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Client Access Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_Open | This function opens the specified CDC device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_Close | This function closes the CDC device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet | This function will set an attach event handler. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet | Registers an event handler with the CDC Host Client Driver. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_DeviceObjHandleGet | This function returns the Device Object Handle for this CDC device. |

b) Data Transfer Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_Read | This function will read data from the attached device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_Write | This function will write data to the attached device. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet | This function will request Serial State Notification from the attached device. |

c) CDC Class-specific Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_ControlLineStateSet | This function sends a request to the attached device to set its Control Line State. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingSet | This function sends a request to the attached device to set its Line Coding. |

d) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE | Return type of the USB CDC Host Client Driver Event Handler. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER | USB Host CDC Client Driver Attach Event Handler Function Pointer Type. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACMD_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACMD_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACMD_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACMD_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA | USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ | Defines the type of the CDC Host Client Object. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE | USB Host CDC Client Driver Request Handle |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID | Defines an Invalid CDC Client Driver Handle. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE | USB HOST CDC Client Driver Interface |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID | USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Request Handle |

Description

a) Client Access Functions

USB_HOST_CDC_Open Function

This function opens the specified CDC device.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE USB_HOST_CDC_Open(USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcDeviceObj);
```

Returns

Will return a valid handle if the device could be opened successfully, else will return [USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID](#). The function will return a valid handle if the device is ready to be opened.

Description

This function will open the specified CDC device. Once opened, the CDC device can be accessed via the handle which this function returns. The cdcDeviceObj parameter is the value returned in the [USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER](#) event handling function.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The client handle should be valid.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cdcDeviceObj | CDC device object handle returned in the USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE USB_HOST_CDC_Open  
(  
    USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcDeviceObj  
)
```

USB_HOST_CDC_Close Function

This function closes the CDC device.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
void USB_HOST_CDC_Close(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE cdcDeviceHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function will close the open CDC device. This closes the association between the application entity that opened the device and device. The driver handle becomes invalid.

Remarks

The device handle becomes invalid after calling this function.

Preconditions

None.

Example**Parameters**

| Parameters | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cdcDeviceHandle | handle to the CDC device obtained from the USB_HOST_CDC_Open() function. |

Function

```
void USB_HOST_CDC_Close
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE cdcDeviceHandle
);
```

USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet Function

This function will set an attach event handler.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER
eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS - if the attach event handler was registered successfully.
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE - if the number of registered event handlers has exceeded [USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER](#).

Description

This function will set an attach event handler. The attach event handler will be called when a CDC device has been attached. The context will be returned in the event handler. This function should be called before the bus has been enabled.

Remarks

Function should be called before [USB_HOST_BusEnable\(\)](#) function is called.

Preconditions

None.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| eventHandler | pointer to the attach event handler |
| context | an application defined context that will be returned in the event handler. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet Function

Registers an event handler with the CDC Host Client Driver.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID - The specified instance does not exist.
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred.

Description

This function registers a client specific CDC Host Client Driver event handler. The CDC Host Client Driver will call this function with relevant event and associated event data, in response to command requests and data transfers that have been scheduled by the client.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | handle to the CDC Host Client Driver. |
| eventHandler | A pointer to event handler function. If NULL, then events will not be generated. |
| context | Application specific context that is returned in the event handler. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER eventHandler,
    uintptr_t context
);
```

USB_HOST_CDC_DeviceObjHandleGet Function

This function returns the Device Object Handle for this CDC device.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE USB_HOST_CDC_DeviceObjHandleGet(USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcDeviceObj);
```

Returns

Will return a valid device object handle if the device is still connected to the system. Will return an [USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID](#) otherwise.

Description

This function returns the Device Object Handle for this CDC device. This returned Device Object Handle can be used by the application to perform device level operations such as getting the string descriptors.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

None.

Example**Parameters**

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cdcDeviceObj | CDC device object handle returned in the USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE USB_HOST_CDC_DeviceObjHandleGet
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcDeviceObj
);
```

b) Data Transfer Functions***USB_HOST_CDC_Read Function***

This function will read data from the attached device.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_Read(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle, USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE
* transferHandle, void * data, size_t size);
```

Returns

`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - The device that this request was targeted to does not exist in the system.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_BUSY` - The request could not be scheduled at this time. The client should try again.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER` - An input parameter was NULL.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID` - The client handle is not valid.

Description

This function will read data from the attached CDC device. The function will try to read size amount of bytes but will stop reading when the device terminates the USB transfer (sends a short packet or a ZLP). If the request was accepted, transferHandle will contain a valid transfer handle, else it will contain `USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`. The completion of the request will be indicated by the `USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE` event. The transfer handle will be returned in the event.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The client handle should be valid.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | handle to the CDC device instance to which the request should be sent. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to <code>USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE</code> type of a variable. This will contain a valid transfer handle if the request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the buffer where the received data will be stored. The contents of the buffer will be valid only when the <code>USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE</code> event has occurred. |
| size | size of the data buffer. Only these many bytes or less will be read. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_Read
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * data,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_HOST_CDC_Write Function

This function will write data to the attached device.

File

`usb_host_cdc.h`

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_Write(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle, USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE
* transferHandle, void * data, size_t size);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS - The operation was successful.
 USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN - The device that this request was targeted to does not exist in the system.
 USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_BUSY - The request could not be scheduled at this time. The client should try again.
 USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER - An input parameter was NULL.
 USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred.
 USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID - The client handle is not valid.

Description

This function will write data to the attached CDC device. The function will write size amount of bytes. If the request was accepted, transferHandle will contain a valid transfer handle, else it will contain [USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID](#). The completion of the request will be indicated by the [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE](#) event. The transfer handle will be returned in the event.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The client handle should be valid.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | handle to the CDC device instance to which the request should be sent. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE type of a variable. This will contain a valid transfer handle if the request was successful. |
| data | pointer to the buffer containing the data to be written. The contents of the buffer should not be changed till the USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE event has occurred. |
| size | Number of bytes to write. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_Write
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    void * data,
    size_t size
);
```

USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet Function

This function will request Serial State Notification from the attached device.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle, USB_CDC_SERIAL_STATE * serialState);
```

Returns

`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_SUCCESS` - The operation was successful.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_DEVICE_UNKNOWN` - The device that this request was targeted to does not exist in the system.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_BUSY` - The request could not be scheduled at this time. The client should try again.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER` - An input parameter was NULL.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_FAILURE` - An unknown failure occurred.
`USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT_HANDLE_INVALID` - The client handle is not valid.

Description

This function will request Serial State Notification from the attached device. If the request was accepted, transferHandle will contain a valid transfer handle, else it will contain `USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID`. The completion of the request will be indicated by the `USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED` event. The transfer handle will be returned in the event.

Remarks

None.

Preconditions

The client handle should be valid.

Example

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| handle | handle to the CDC device instance to which the request should be sent. |
| transferHandle | Pointer to <code>USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE</code> type of a variable. This will contain a valid transfer handle if the request was successful. |
| serialState | Pointer to the serial state data structure where the received serial state will be stored. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE * transferHandle,
    USB_CDC_SERIAL_STATE * serialState
);
```

c) CDC Class-specific Functions

`USB_HOST_CDC_ACm_ControlLineStateSet Function`

This function sends a request to the attached device to set its Control Line State.

File

`usb_host_cdc.h`

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_ACm_ControlLineStateSet(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle, USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE * controlLineState);
```

Description

This function sends a request to the attached to set its Control Line State. The function schedules a SET CONTROL LINE STATE control transfer. If successful, the requestHandle parameter will contain a valid request handle, else it will contain `USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID`. When completed, the CDC client driver will generate a `USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACm_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE` event.

Remarks

Refer to `usb_host_cdc_acm.h` for usage information.

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_ACm_ControlLineStateSet
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_STATE * controlLineState
);
```

`USB_HOST_CDC_ACm_LineCodingSet` Function

This function sends a request to the attached device to set its Line Coding.

File

`usb_host_cdc.h`

C

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_ACm_LineCodingSet(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle, USB_CDC_LINE_CODING * lineCoding);
```

Description

This function sends a request to the attached device to set its line coding. The function schedules a SET LINE CODING control transfer. If successful, the requestHandle parameter will contain a valid request handle, else it will contain `USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID`. When completed, the CDC client driver will generate a `USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACm_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE` event.

Remarks

Refer to `usb_host_cdc_acm.h` for usage information.

Function

```
USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT USB_HOST_CDC_ACm_LineCodingSet
(
    USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE * requestHandle,
    USB_CDC_LINE_CODING * lineCoding
);
```

d) Data Types and Constants

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE (* USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE
cdcHandle, USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT event, void * eventData, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host CDC Client Driver event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a CDC Client Driver events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive event call backs from the CDC Client Driver. The class driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

handle - Handle of the client to which this event is directed.

event - Type of event generated.

eventData - This parameter should be type casted to a event specific pointer type based on the event that has occurred. Refer to the [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT](#) enumeration description for more details.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE Enumeration

Return type of the USB CDC Host Client Driver Event Handler.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE | This means no response is required |

Description

USB Host CDC Event Handler Return Type

This enumeration list the possible return values of the USB CDC Host Client Driver Event Handler.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Transfer Handle Definition

This definition defines a USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Transfer Handle. A Invalid Transfer Handle is returned by the CDC Client Driver data transfer routines when the request was not successful.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB Host CDC Client Driver Attach Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ cdcObjHandle, uintptr_t context);
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Attach Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This data type defines the required function signature of the USB Host CDC Client Driver attach event handling callback function. The application must register a pointer to a CDC Client Driver attach events handling function whose function signature (parameter and return value types) match the types specified by this function pointer in order to receive attach event call backs from the CDC Client Driver. The client driver will invoke this function with event relevant parameters. The description of the event handler function parameters is given here.

cdcObjHandle - Handle of the client to which this event is directed.

context - Value identifying the context of the application that was registered along with the event handling function.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Request handle of this request |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA](#),

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Request handle of this request |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA](#),

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Request handle of this request |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

```
USB\_HOST\_CDC\_EVENT\_ACM\_SET\_LINE\_CODING\_COMPLETE\_DATA,
USB\_HOST\_CDC\_EVENT\_ACM\_SEND\_BREAK\_COMPLETE\_DATA,
USB\_HOST\_CDC\_EVENT\_ACM\_GET\_LINE\_CODING\_COMPLETE\_DATA,
USB\_HOST\_CDC\_EVENT\_ACM\_SET\_CONTROL\_LINE\_STATE\_COMPLETE\_DATA,
```

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE requestHandle; | Request handle of this request |

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Command Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_DATA](#),
[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA](#),

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA,
    USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA, USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination transfer status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#), [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#),

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
```

```

} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA, USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination transfer status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#), [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#),

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#) Structure

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```

typedef struct {
    USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle;
    USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result;
    size_t length;
} USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVED_DATA,
USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA, USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA;

```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle; | Transfer handle of this transfer |
| USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT result; | Termination transfer status |
| size_t length; | Size of the data transferred in the request |

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Event Data.

This data type defines the data structure returned by the driver along with the following events:

[USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA](#), [USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA](#),

Remarks

None.

[USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ](#) Type

Defines the type of the CDC Host Client Object.

File

[usb_host_cdc.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ;
```

Description

USB Host CDC Object

This type defines the type of the CDC Host Client Object. This type is returned by the Attach Event Handler and is used by the application to open the attached CDC Device.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE Type

USB Host CDC Client Driver Request Handle

File

```
usb_host_cdc.h
```

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Request Handle

This is returned by the CDC Client driver command routines and should be used by the application to track the command especially in cases where transfers are queued.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

Defines an Invalid CDC Client Driver Handle.

File

```
usb_host_cdc.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Handle

This type defines an Invalid CDC Client Driver Handle. The [USB_HOST_CDC_Open\(\)](#) function returns an invalid handle when it fails to open the specified CDC device instance.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE Macro

USB HOST CDC Client Driver Interface

File

```
usb_host_cdc.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE
```

Description

USB HOST CDC Client Driver Interface

This macro should be used by the application in TPL table while adding support for the USB CDC Host Client Driver.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Request Handle

File

```
usb_host_cdc.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

USB Host CDC Client Driver Invalid Request Handle

This is returned by the CDC Client driver command routines when the request could not be scheduled.

Remarks

None.

Files**Files**

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_cdc_config_template.h | USB host CDC Class configuration definitions template |

Description**usb_host_cdc_config_template.h**

USB host CDC Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER | Defines the number of attach event listeners that can be registered with CDC Host Client Driver. |
| | USB_HOST_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of CDC instances. |

Description

USB Host CDC Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the CDC host Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name`usb_host_cdc_config_template.h`**Company**

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library

This section describes the USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library.

Description

The HID Host Mouse Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack allows USB Host Applications to support and interact with USB Mouse devices. The USB HID Host Mouse Driver has the following features:

- Supports USB HID Mouse devices
- Supports HID device matching at both device descriptor and interface descriptor level
- Supports both Boot and Non Boot interface USB Mouse devices
- Performs parsing of Mouse Report descriptor by using USB HID Host client driver APIs
- Supports detection of Mouse X, Y, and Z movements, as well as button click events

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library.

Description

The USB HID Host Mouse Driver interacts with the USB Host HID Client Driver to control the attached HID device. The USB Host Layer attaches the USB HID Host Client Driver to the HID device when it meets the matching criteria specified in the USB Host TPL table.

The USB HID Host Client driver notifies the mouse driver of device attach and detach information and with report receive events with relevant event data. On a report receive event, the USB Host HID Mouse Driver obtains all of the field information present in the Report Descriptor of the mouse device and uses that field information and the INTERRUPT IN data received to understand mouse parameter values.

Library Overview

The USB HID Host Mouse Driver can be grouped functionally as shown in the following table.

| Library Interface Section | Description |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mouse Access Functions | These functions allow application to register event handlers with the mouse driver. These functions are implemented in <code>usb_host_hid_mouse.c</code> . |

How the Library Works

Describes how the library works and how it should be used.

Description

The USB HID Host Mouse Driver provides the user application with an easy to use interface to the attached HID device. The USB Host Layer initializes the USB HID Host Client Driver when a device is attached. This process does not require application intervention. The following sections describe the steps and methods required for the user application to interact with the attached mouse devices through the USB Host HID Mouse Driver.

HID Device TPL Table Configuration

Provides information on configuring the TPL table for HID devices.

Description

The Host Layer attaches the USB HID Host Client Driver to a device when the device class, subclass, protocol in the device descriptor or when the class, subclass and protocol fields in the Interface descriptor matches the entry in the TPL table. When specifying the entry for the HID device along with the Usage driver, the driver interface must be set to USB_HOST_HID_INTERFACE and the usage driver interface must be set to usageDriverInterface. usageDriverInterface must be properly initialized to capture the Mouse driver APIs. This will attach the USB HID Host Mouse Driver to the device when the USB Host HID Client Driver is attached. The following code shows possible TPL table options for matching HID Devices.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of TPL table entries for supporting HID mouse devices.
 * Note that the driver interface is set to USB_HOST_HID_INTERFACE. This
 * will load the HID Host Client Driver when there is TPL match. Usage driver
 * interface is initialized with appropriate function pointer for Mouse driver.
 * This facilitates subsequent loading of Mouse driver post HID client driver.
 */
USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_INTERFACE usageDriverInterface =
{
    .initialize = NULL,
    .deinitialize = NULL,
    .usageDriverEventHandler = _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler,
    .usageDriverTask = _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task
};

USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_TABLE_ENTRY usageDriverTableEntry[1] =
{
    {
        .usage = USB_HID_USAGE_MOUSE,
        .initializeData = NULL,
        .interface = &usageDriverInterface
    }
};
const USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY USBTPLList[1] =
{
    /* This entry looks for any HID Mouse device */
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL(0x03, 0x01, 0x02, usageDriverTableEntry,
                                         USB_HOST_HID_INTERFACE) ,
};


```

Detecting Device Attach

Describe how to detect when a HID mouse device is attached.

Description

The application will need to know when a HID mouse device is attached. To receive this attach event from the USB HID Host Mouse Driver, the application must register an Attach Event Handler by calling the [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet](#) function. This function should be called before calling the [USB_HOST_BusEnable](#) function; otherwise, the application may miss HID attach events.

Mouse Data Event Handling

Describes mouse data event handling, which includes a code example.

Description

No extra event handler is required to be registered to receive mouse data. A call to function [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet](#) once is adequate to receive mouse data as well.

The mouse button state along with the X, Y, and Z relative coordinate positions are provided by the USB Host HID Mouse Driver. The data type is [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA](#) and is defined in [usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#). The following code shows an event handler example.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of HID Mouse Event Handler */

void APP_USBHostHIDMouseEventHandler
(
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE handle,
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT event,
    void * pData
)
{
    /* This function gets called in the following scenarios:
    1. USB Mouse is Attached
    2. USB Mouse is detached
    3. USB Mouse data has been obtained.
    */

    switch ( event )
    {
        case USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_ATTACH:
            /* Mouse Attached */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_DEVICE_ATTACHED;
            break;

        case USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_DETACH:
            /* Mouse Detached */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_DEVICE_DETACHED;
            break;

        case USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED:
            /* Mouse data event */
            appData.state = APP_STATE_READ_HID;
            /* Mouse Data from device */
            memcpy(&appData.data, pData, sizeof(appData.data));

            /* Now the Mouse data has been obtained. This is a parsed data
            in a simple format defined by USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA type.
            */
            break;
    }

    void APP_Tasks(void)
    {
        switch (appData.state)
        {
```

```

case APP_STATE_BUS_ENABLE:
    /* In this state the application enables the USB Host Bus. Note
     * how the USB Mouse event handler is registered before the bus
     * is enabled. */

    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet(APP_USBHostHIDMouseEventHandler);
    USB_HOST_BusEnable(0);
    appData.state = APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE;
    break;

case APP_STATE_WAIT_FOR_BUS_ENABLE_COMPLETE:
    /* Here we wait for the bus enable operation to complete. */
    break;
}
}

```

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB HID Host Mouse Driver.

Macros

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| _USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| USB_HID_GLOBAL_PUSH_POP_STACK_SIZE | Specifies the Global PUSH POP stack size supported. |
| USB_HOST_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Specifies the number of HID instances. |
| USB_HOST_HID_INTERRUPT_IN_ENDPOINTS_NUMBER | Specifies the maximum number of INTERRUPT IN endpoints supported. |
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Mouse buttons supported. |
| USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_SUPPORT_NUMBER | Specifies the number of Usage driver registered |

Description

The USB HID Host Mouse Driver requires configuration constants to be specified in the `system_config.h` file. These constants define the build time configuration (functionality and static resources) of the USB HID Host Mouse Driver.

_USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

[usb_host_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define _USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro _USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_.

USB_HID_GLOBAL_PUSH_POP_STACK_SIZE Macro

Specifies the Global PUSH POP stack size supported.

File

[usb_host_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HID_GLOBAL_PUSH_POP_STACK_SIZE
```

Description

USB Host HID Global PUSH POP stack size supported

This macro defines the size of the Global PUSH POP stack per HID driver instance. If the application wants to support HID device having 2 continuous PUSH item or 2 continuous POP item in the Report Descriptor, then the value should be set to 2.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of HID instances.

File

[usb_host_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB host HID Maximum Number of instances

This macro defines the number of instances of the HID host Driver. For example, if the application needs to implement two instances of the HID host Driver, value should be set to 2.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_INTERRUPT_IN_ENDPOINTS_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the maximum number of INTERRUPT IN endpoints supported.

File

[usb_host_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HID_INTERRUPT_IN_ENDPOINTS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host HID Maximum Number of INTERRUPT IN endpoints supported

This macro defines the number of INTERRUPT IN endpoints supported by USB Host HID driver. If the application needs to work with HID device which has 2 INTERRUPT IN endpoints, the value should be set to 2.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Mouse buttons supported.

File

[usb_host_hid_config_template.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host HID number of Mouse buttons supported

This macro defines the number of Mouse buttons supported. If the application wants to support HID Mouse device having 5 buttons, then the value should be set to 5.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_SUPPORT_NUMBER Macro

Specifies the number of Usage driver registered

File

```
usb_host_hid_config_template.h
```

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_SUPPORT_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host HID number of Usage driver registered

This macro defines the number of Usage driver registered with USB Host Hid driver. If the application wants HID driver to support 2 HID device having different usage, then the value should be set to 2.

Remarks

None.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the USB HID Host Mouse Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is <install-dir>/framework/usb.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using #include) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_hid_mouse.h | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the YSB HID Host Mouse Driver API. |

Required File(s)

All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_host_hid.c | This file implements the USB HID Host Client Driver interface and should be included in the project if any usage driver operation is desired. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_host_hid_mouse.c | This file implements the USB HID Host Mouse Driver interface and should be included in the project if any usage driver operation is desired. |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Host Layer Library](#)
- [USB Host HID Client Driver Library](#)

Library Interface

a) Mouse Access Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet | This function registers application callback function with the mouse driver. |
| ≡ | _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler | This is function _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler. |
| ≡ | _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task | This is function _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA | Defines the USB Host HID mouse data object. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT | Defines the possible USB HOST HID mouse driver events. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER | USB HOST mouse driver event handler function pointer type. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE | USB HOST HID mouse driver instance handle. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT | USB Host HID mouse driver results. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN | USB Host HID mouse driver result minimum constant. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID | This is macro USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library.

The USB Mouse driver does not require explicit API call by the application to obtain Mouse data. The data in the appropriate format is sent to the application during an application event handler function call.

a) Mouse Access Functions

[USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet Function](#)

This function registers application callback function with the mouse driver.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet(USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER
appMouseEventHandler);
```

Returns

Returns data structure of [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT](#) type.

[USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER](#): Invalid Parameter

[USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_FAILURE](#): On failure [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_SUCCESS](#): On success

Description

This function registers application callback function with the mouse driver. Any subsequent mouse events is passed to the application by calling the registered application function. The function prototype should be of the [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER](#) type.

Remarks

This function should be called before the USB bus is enabled.

Preconditions

This function should be called before the USB bus is enabled.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| appMouseEventHandler | Function pointer to the application function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet
(
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER appMouseEventHandler
);
```

_USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler Function**File**

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
void _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler(USB_HOST_HID_OBJ_HANDLE handle, USB_HOST_HID_EVENT event,
void * eventData);
```

Description

This is function _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler.

_USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task Function**File**

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
void _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task(USB_HOST_HID_OBJ_HANDLE handle);
```

Description

This is function _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task.

b) Data Types and Constants

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA Structure

Defines the USB Host HID mouse data object.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
typedef struct {
    USB_HID_BUTTON_STATE buttonState[USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER];
    USB_HID_BUTTON_ID buttonID[USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER];
    int16_t xMovement;
    int16_t yMovement;
    int16_t zMovement;
} USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HID_BUTTON_STATE buttonState[USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER]; | Button state for the buttons. <code>USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER</code> is system configurable option. The actual number of buttons in the mouse needs to be <= <code>USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER</code> |
| int16_t xMovement; | Applicable for 2D Mouse Y - Coordinate displacement |
| int16_t yMovement; | Applicable for 2D Mouse Z - Coordinate displacement |
| int16_t zMovement; | Applicable only for 3D Mouse |

Description

USB Host HID Mouse Data Object

This structure defines the USB Host HID mouse data object.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT Enumeration

Defines the possible USB HOST HID mouse driver events.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_ATTACH = 0,
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_DETACH,
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED
} USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_ATTACH = 0 | Mouse has been attached |
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_DETACH | Mouse has been detached |
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_REPORT_RECEIVED | Mouse IN Report data available |

Description

USB HOST HID Mouse Driver Events

This enumeration lists the possible mouse events that the mouse driver can provide to the application. Some of these events have event data associated with them.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER Type

USB HOST mouse driver event handler function pointer type.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER)(USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE handle,
USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT event, void *pData);
```

Description

USB HOST Mouse Driver Event Handler Function Pointer Type.

This defines the USB HOST HID mouse driver event handler function pointer type. Application must register a function of this type to receive HID mouse events. Registration should happen before USB BUS is enabled by the application.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE Type

USB HOST HID mouse driver instance handle.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB HOST HID Mouse Driver Instance Handle

This defines a USB Host HID mouse driver handle.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT Enumeration

USB Host HID mouse driver results.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_FAILURE = USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN,
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER,
    USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_SUCCESS = 0
} USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_FAILURE = USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN | An unknown failure occurred |
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_INVALID_PARAMETER | Invalid or NULL parameter passed |
| USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_SUCCESS = 0 | Indicates that the operation succeeded or the request was accepted and will be processed. |

Description

USB Host HID MOUSE Result

This enumeration defines the possible returns values of USB Host HID mouse driver API. A function may only return some of the values in this enumeration. Refer to function description for details on which values will be returned.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN Macro

USB Host HID mouse driver result minimum constant.

File

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN -50
```

Description

USB Host HID Mouse Driver Result Minimum Constant

This constant identifies the minimum value of the USB Host HID mouse driver and is used in the [USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT](#) enumeration.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID Macro**File**

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID ((USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE)(-1))
```

Description

This is macro `USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID`.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_hid_mouse.h | USB Host HID Mouse Driver Definition Header |
| usb_host_hid_config_template.h | USB host HID Class configuration definitions template |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

[usb_host_hid_mouse.h](#)

USB Host HID Mouse Driver Definition Header

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT | Defines the possible USB HOST HID mouse driver events. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT | USB Host HID mouse driver results. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|----|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡◊ | _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler | This is function _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler. |
| ≡◊ | _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task | This is function _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task. |
| ≡◊ | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet | This function registers application callback function with the mouse driver. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID | This is macro USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN | USB Host HID mouse driver result minimum constant. |

Structures

| | Name | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA | Defines the USB Host HID mouse data object. |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER | USB HOST mouse driver event handler function pointer type. |
| | USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE | USB HOST HID mouse driver instance handle. |

Description

USB HOST HID Mouse Driver Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface between HID Mouse driver and top level application.

File Name

usb_host_hid_mouse.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_host_hid_config_template.h

USB host HID Class configuration definitions template

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <u>_USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_</u> | This is macro _USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | <u>USB_HID_GLOBAL_PUSH_POP_STACK_SIZE</u> | Specifies the Global PUSH POP stack size supported. |
| | <u>USB_HOST_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER</u> | Specifies the number of HID instances. |
| | <u>USB_HOST_HID_INTERRUPT_IN_ENDPOINTS_NUMBER</u> | Specifies the maximum number of INTERRUPT IN endpoints supported. |
| | <u>USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER</u> | Specifies the number of Mouse buttons supported. |
| | <u>USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_SUPPORT_NUMBER</u> | Specifies the number of Usage driver registered |

Description

USB Host HID Class Configuration Definitions

This file contains configurations macros needed to configure the HID host Driver. This file is a template file only. It should not be included by the application. The configuration macros defined in the file should be defined in the configuration specific system_config.h.

File Name

usb_host_hid_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Hub Host Client Driver Library

This section describes the USB Hub Host Client Driver Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB Hub Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The USB Hub Host Client Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack allows USB Host Applications to interact with a USB Hub and thus manage multiple USB devices simultaneously in one application. The key features of the Hub Host Client Driver include:

- Allows multiple USB devices to be connected to the host and hence allow the USB Host application to interact simultaneously with multiple USB devices.
- Implemented as per Chapter 11 of the USB 2.0 specification.
- Support multiple Hub tiers. A Hub can be connected to another Hub.
- Does not require application intervention for its operation. The application does not have to call an Hub Driver API.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB Hub Host Client Driver Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB Hub Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The USB Hub Host Client Driver abstracts the complexities of Hub operation and presents a simple interface to the Host Layer. The interface allows the Host Layer to perform port operations such as port reset, port suspend and port resume. The port interface offered by the Hub Host Client Driver is the same as that offered by the root hub driver. In that, the Host Layer does not differentiate between an external hub and the root hub.

The USB Hub Host Client Driver does not have any application callable API. It only interacts with the Host Layer. The USB Hub Host Client Driver performs the task of powering up the ports, detecting device attach and detach and notifying the same to the Host Layer and detecting over current conditions. The USB Hub Host Client Driver performs the control transfers required for these tasks.

Library Overview

The USB Hub Host Client Driver does not contain any application callable functions.

How the Library Works

Describes how the Library works and how it should be used.

Description

The USB Hub Host Client Driver does not contain any application callable functions. The only step that the application code must implement is to enable USB Host Layer Hub support and to provision the USB Hub Host Client Driver in the TPL table.

The USB Host Layer enables Hub Support when the [USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE](#) configuration macro is defined in system_config.h. Refer to the [Configuring the Library](#) section of the USB Host Layer Library Help Topic for more information.

Hub TPL Table Configuration

Provides information on configuring the TPL table for adding Hub support.

Description

The Host Layer attaches the USB Hub Host Client Driver to a Hub device only if the TPL table contains an entry to enable this feature. The driver interface for such a TPL entry should point to [USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE](#). The following code shows an example of the TPL entry for the adding Hub support to the application.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example of how to initialize the TPL table to
 * support a USB Hub Host Client Driver */

#include "usb/usb_host_hub.h"
#include "usb/usb_hub.h"

const USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY USBTPLList[ 2 ] =
{
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL(USB_HUB_CLASS_CODE, 0x00, 0x00, NULL,
USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE),

    /* A high-speed hub will report the number of transaction translators in the
     * protocol field. We can ignore this and let the host layer load the hub
     * driver for a high-speed hub */

    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS (USB_HUB_CLASS_CODE, NULL, USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE)
};
```

USB Hub Host Client Driver Test Results

Provides test results for the USB Hub Host Client Driver.

Description

The following table lists the commercially available USB hubs, which have been tested to successfully enumerate and operate with the USB Hub Host Client Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack. Note that if the Hub you are using is not included in the table, this indicates that this Hub has not been tested with the USB Hub Host Client Driver. However, the Hub could still potentially work with the USB Hub Host Client Driver.

The hubs were tested with the hub_msd USB Host demonstration in the latest version of the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack.

| Hub Model | Number of Ports | VID | PID |
|----------------|-----------------|--------|--------|
| Belkin USB 2.0 | 4 | 0x050D | 0x0233 |
| QHMPL | 4 | 0x1A40 | 0x0101 |
| Portronics | 3 | 0x1A40 | 0x0101 |
| Sanda | 4 | 0x05E3 | 0x0606 |
| iBall | 4 | 0x1A40 | 0x0101 |

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB Hub Host Client Driver.

Description

The USB Hub Host Client Driver requires configuration constants to be specified in `system_config.h` file. These constants define the build time configuration (functionality and static resources) of the Hub Host Client Driver.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the USB Hub Host Client Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is `<install-dir>/framework/usb`.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using `#include`) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>usb_host_hub.h</code> | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Hub Host Client Driver API. |

Required File(s)

 **MHC** All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /src/dynamic/usb_host_hub.c | This file implements the USB Hub Host Client Driver interface and should be included in the project if the USB Hub Host Client Driver operation is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB Hub Host Client Driver Library depends on the following modules:

- [USB Host Layer Library](#)

Library Interface

Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE | USB Hub Host Client Driver Interface Pointer. |

Description

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Hub Host Client Driver Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

Data Types and Constants

USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE Macro

USB Hub Host Client Driver Interface Pointer.

File

[usb_host_hub.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE
```

Description

USB Hub Host Client Driver Interface Pointer

This constant is a pointer to a table of function pointers that define the interface between the Hub Host Client Driver and the USB Host Layer. This constant should be used while adding support for the Hub Driver in TPL table.

Remarks

None.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_hub.h | USB Host Hub Client Driver Interface Header |

Description

This section lists the source and header files used by the library.

usb_host_hub.h

USB Host Hub Client Driver Interface Header

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE | USB Hub Host Client Driver Interface Pointer. |

Description

USB Host Hub Client Driver Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface to the USB HOST Hub Client Driver.

File Name

usb_host_hub.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB MSD Host Client Driver Library

This section describes the USB MSD Host Client Driver Library.

Introduction

Introduces the MPLAB Harmony USB Mass Storage Device (MSD) Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The USB MSD Host Client Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host Stack allows USB Host Applications to support and interact with Mass Storage Class (MSC) USB devices. Examples of such devices are USB Pen Drives and USB Card readers. The USB MSD Host Client Driver along with the SCSI Block Storage Driver Library implement a multi-layer solution to reading and writing to mass storage USB device that implement the SCSI command protocol. The USB MSD Host Client Driver has the following features:

- Implements the Bulk Only Transport (BOT) protocol in the USB MSD specification
- Supports multiple instances, which allows the application to interact with multiple storage devices
- Supports multi-LUN devices such as USB Card Reader
- Automatically (without application intervention) attaches the SCSI Block Driver to an identified device
- Implements automatic clearing of endpoint stall conditions
- Implements all three stages of a BOT transfer and provide a simple event driver transfer interface to the top-level application (which is typically a block storage driver library such as the SCSI Block Storage Driver Library)
- Typically operates without application intervention. The BOT transfers are typically invoked by the SCSI Block Storage Driver

Library.

Using the Library

This topic describes the basic architecture of the USB MSD Host Client Drier Library and provides information and examples on its use.

Abstraction Model

Describes the Abstraction Model of the USB MSD Host Client Driver Library.

Description

The USB MSD Host Client Driver provides the transport for SCSI commands that implements media read, write and control operations. It abstracts the details of initiating and completing a BOT transfer and performing error handling and presents a simple event driven interface to the top-level block storage command driver library.

The USB MSD Host Client Driver uses the USB Host data transfer and pipe management routines to implement the three stages of a BOT transfer. The library accepts a SCSI command from the SCSI Block Storage driver and transports this command in the command block of the Command Block Wrapper in the CBW stage of the BOT transfer. If the command requires a data stage, the USB MSD Host Client Driver library will transfer data between the USB Host and the device. The USB MSD Host Client Driver will then terminate the BOT transfer by requesting for the Command Status Wrapper (CSW) from the device.

If the device stalls any stage of the transfer, the USB MSD Host Client Driver will clear the stall and will automatically initiate the CSW stage to complete the transfer. The transfer result is communicated to the top level block storage driver library through a callback mechanism.

The USB Host layer will attach the USB MSD Host Client Driver to a mass storage device based on a TPL entry match. The USB MSD Host Client Driver will then open data and communication control pipes to the device. It will first get the number of logical units (LUN) that the device contains. It will then initialize the SCSI block storage driver for each reported LUN and mark the device state as being ready for data transfers.

Library Overview

Provides an overview of the USB Host MSD Library.

Description

The USB MSD Host Client Driver can be grouped functionally as shown in the following table.

| Library Interface Section | Descriptions |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data Transfer Functions | These functions allow the application client to transfer data to the attached device. |

How the Library Works

Describes how the library works and how it should be used.

Description

The USB MSD Host Client Driver provides the top level block storage driver with an easy to use, event driven, interface to transport the block storage command and data between the block storage command driver library and a compliant mass storage device. The USB MSD Host Client Driver in the MPLAB Harmony USB Host stack immediately supports mass storage devices that advertise support of the SCSI command set. Indeed, most of the commercially available USB storage devices such as USB pen driver and USB card readers respond to SCSI command requests.

The process of initializing the SCSI block storage driver library when a device is attached is performed automatically, by the USB MSD Host Client Driver. This does not require user application intervention. The following sections describe the TPL table design (application responsibility) and USB MSD Host Client Driver data transfer function (typically called by the SCSI block storage driver library).

MSD TPL Table Configuration

Describes TPL table design for matching MSD devices.

Description

The Host Layer attaches the MSD Host Client Driver to a device when the class, subclass and protocol fields in the Interface Association Descriptor (IAD) or Interface descriptor match the entry in the TPL table. When specifying the entry for the MSD device, the driver interface must be set to [USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE](#). This will attach the USB MSD Host Client Driver to the device when the USB Host matches the TPL entry to the device. The following code shows a TPL table design for matching MSD Devices.

Example:

```
/* This code shows an example TPL table entry for supporting a Mass
 * Storage Device */

const USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY USBTPLList[ 1 ] =
{
    TPL_INTERFACE_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL(USB_MSD_CLASS_CODE,
                                         USB_MSD_SUBCLASS_CODE_SCSI_TRANSPARENT_COMMAND_SET, USB_MSD_PROTOCOL, NULL,
                                         USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE)
};
```

Data Transfer

Describes how to transfer data, which includes a code example.

Description

The USB MSD Host Client Driver data transfer function is typically called by the SCSI Block Storage Driver Library. The [USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer](#) function allows the SCSI Block Storage Driver to transport SCSI commands to the mass storage device. The cdb parameter and the cdbLength parameter of the function specify the command and its size respectively. If the command requires the transport of data, then data must contain the pointer to the buffer and size specifies the amount of data expected to be transported. When the BOT transfer complete, the USB MSD Host Client Diver will call the callback function. The following code snippet shows an example of using the [USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer](#) function.

Example:

```
/* This code shows usage of the USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer function. The SCSI Block
 * Driver Library uses this function to send a SCSI Inquiry Command to the
 * device. Note how the commandCompleted flag in the SCSI instance object
 * tracks the completion of the transfer. This flag is updated in the transfer
 * callback. */

void _USB_HOST_SCSI_TransferCallback
(
    USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE lunHandle,
    USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT result,
    size_t size,
    uintptr_t context
)
{
    int scsiObjIndex;
    USB_HOST_SCSI_OBJ * scsiObj;
    USB_HOST_SCSI_COMMAND_OBJ * commandObj;
    USB_HOST_SCSI_EVENT event;

    /* Get the SCSI object index from the lunHandle */
    scsiObjIndex = _USB_HOST_SCSI_LUNHandleToSCSIInstance(lunHandle);

    /* Get the pointer to the SCSI object */
    scsiObj = &gUSBHostSCSIObj[scsiObjIndex];
```

```

/* Pointer to the command object */
commandObj = &scsiObj->commandObj;

/* The processed size */
commandObj->size = size;

/* The result of the command */
commandObj->result = result;

/* Let the main state machine know that the command is completed */
commandObj->commandCompleted = true;

/* The rest of code is not shown here for the sake of brevity */
}

void USB_HOST_SCSI_Tasks(USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE lunHandle)
{
    switch(scsiObj->state)
    {
        /* For the sake of brevity, only one SCSI command is show here */
        case USB_HOST_SCSI_STATE_INQUIRY_RESPONSE:

            /* We get the SCSI Enquiry response. Although there isn't much
             * that we can do with this data */
            _USB_HOST_SCSI_InquiryResponseCommand(scsiObj->commandObj.cdb);

            /* The commandCompleted flag will be updated in the callback.
             * Update the state and send the command. */
            scsiObj->commandObj.inUse = true;
            scsiObj->commandObj.commandCompleted = false;
            scsiObj->commandObj.generateEvent = false;

            result = USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer(scsiObj->lunHandle,
                scsiObj->commandObj.cdb, 6, scsiObj->buffer, 36,
                USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION_DEVICE_TO_HOST,
                _USB_HOST_SCSI_TransferCallback, (uintptr_t)(scsiObj));

            if(result == USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_SUCCESS)
            {
                scsiObj->state = USB_HOST_SCSI_STATE_WAIT_INQUIRY_RESPONSE;
            }

            break;

        default:
            break;
    }
}

```

Configuring the Library

Describes how to configure the USB Host Layer.

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of MSD devices to be supported by this host application. |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of MSD Device LUNs to be supported in the application. |
| | _USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |

Description

The USB MSD Host Client Driver requires configuration constants to be specified in `system_config.h` file. These constants define the build time configuration (functionality and static resources) of the USB MSD Host Client Driver.

USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of MSD devices to be supported by this host application.

File

`usb_host_msd_config_template.h`

C

```
#define USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host MSD Client Driver Instances Number.

This constant defines the maximum number of MSD devices to be supported by this host application. For example, if 3 USB Pen Drives need to be supported, then this value should be 3. This value cannot be greater than `USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER`, which defines the maximum number of devices to be supported in the application. If this constant is less than `USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER`, then only `USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER` of MSD devices will be enumerated.

Remarks

None

USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER Macro

Defines the maximum number of MSD Device LUNs to be supported in the application.

File

`usb_host_msd_config_template.h`

C

```
#define USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER
```

Description

USB Host MSD Client Driver LUNs Number.

An MSD device may have multiple storage units, each addressable through a LUN number. An example is a USB Card reader with multiple card slots. Each card slot has a LUN number. The `USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER` constant defines the maximum number of such logical units that can be managed by the USB Host application. This number should atleast be equal to `USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER`. To configure this value, consider an example of an application that will support a maximum of 2 USB Storage device. These 2 storage devices are expected to have at the most 3 LUNs each. Then the the `USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER` constant should be set to 6 (2 devices and 3 LUNs per device)/

Remarks

None

_USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ Macro

File

`usb_host_msd_config_template.h`

C

```
#define _USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_
```

Description

This is macro `_USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_`.

Building the Library

Describes the files to be included in the project while using the MSD Host Function Driver.

Description

The following three tables list and describe the header (.h) and source (.c) files that implement this library. The parent folder for these files is `<install-dir>/framework/usb`.

Interface File(s)

This table lists and describes the header files that must be included (i.e., using `#include`) by any code that uses this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>usb_host_msd.h</code> | This header file should be included in any .c file that accesses the USB Host MSD Client Driver API. |

Required File(s)

 **MHC** All of the required files listed in the following table are automatically added into the MPLAB X IDE project by the MHC when the library is selected for use.

This table lists and describes the source and header files that must always be included in the MPLAB X IDE project to build this library.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/src/dynamic/usb_host_msd.c</code> | This file implements the USB Host MSD Client Driver interface and should be included in the project if USB Host MSD Client Driver operation is desired. |

Optional File(s)

This table lists and describes the source and header files that may optionally be included if required for the desired implementation.

| Source File Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| N/A | There are no optional files for this library. |

Module Dependencies

The USB MSD Host Library depends on the following modules:

- USB Host Layer Library

Library Interface

a) Data Transfer Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | <code>USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer</code> | This function schedules a MSD BOT transfer. |
| ≡ | <code>USB_HOST_MSD_TransferErrorTasks</code> | This function maintains the MSD transfer error handling state machine. |

b) Data Types and Constants

| | Name | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| | <code>USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT</code> | USB HOST MSD Result |
| | <code>USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK</code> | USB HOST MSD Transfer Complete Callback |

| | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION | USB HOST MSD Transfer Direction. |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE | USB HOST MSD Client Driver Interface |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle Invalid |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE | USB HOST MSD LUN Handle |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID | USB HOST MSD LUN Handle Invalid |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE | USB Host MSD Error Codes. |

Description

a) Data Transfer Functions

[USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer](#)

This function schedules a MSD BOT transfer.

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT USB\_HOST\_MSD\_Transfer(USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE lunHandle, uint8_t * cdb,  
uint8_t cdbLength, void * data, size_t size, USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION transferDirection,  
USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK callback, uintptr_t context);
```

Returns

USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_FAILURE - An unknown failure occurred. **USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_BUSY** - The transfer cannot be scheduled right now. The caller should retry. **USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID** - This LUN does not exist in the system. **USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_SUCCESS** - The transfer request was scheduled.

Description

This function schedules a MSD BOT transfer. The command to be executed is specified in the cdb. This should be pointer to a 16 byte command descriptor block. The actual length of the command is specified by cdbLength. If there is data to be transferred, the pointer to the buffer is specified by data. The size of the buffer is specified in size. When the transfer completes, the callback function will be called. The context will be returned in the callback function.

Remarks

This is a local function and should not be called directly by the application.

Preconditions

None.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cdb | pointer to the command to be executted. Should be a pointer to a 16 byte array. Unused bytes should be zero-padded. |
| cdbLength | Actual size of the command. |
| data | pointer to the data buffer if a data stage is involved. |
| size | size of the data buffer. |
| callback | callback function to called when the transfer has completed. |
| transferDirection | specifies the direction of the MSD transfer. |
| context | caller defined context that is returned in the callback function. |

Function

```
USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer
(
    uint8_t * cdb,
    uint8_t cdbLength,
    void * data,
    size_t size,
    USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK callback,
    uintptr_t context
)
```

USB_HOST_MSD_TransferErrorTasks Function

This function maintains the MSD transfer error handling state machine.

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
void USB_HOST_MSD_TransferErrorTasks(USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE lunHandle);
```

Returns

None.

Description

This function maintains the MSD transfer error handling state machine. This function should be called periodically after the [USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer](#) function has been called to schedule a transfer. The function should be called periodically atleast till the transfer completion event has been received. Calling this function while a BOT transfer is in progress allows the MSD Host Client driver to perform BOT error handling in a non-blocking manner.

Calling this function when there is no BOT transfer in progress will not have any effect. In case of BOT error handling, calling this function will eventually result in a BOT transfer event. It is not necessary to call this function after this event has occurred (till the next BOT transfer has been scheduled).

Remarks

While running in an RTOS application, this function should be called in the same thread that requested the BOT Transfer and operating the logical unit.

Preconditions

The lunHandle should be valid.

Parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|----------------------|
| lunHandle | handle to valid LUN. |

Function

```
void USB_HOST_MSD_TransferErrorTasks
(
    USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE lunHandle,
);
```

b) Data Types and Constants

USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT Enumeration

USB HOST MSD Result

File[usb_host_msd.h](#)**C**

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_PASSED = 0,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_FAILED = 1,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_PHASE_ERROR = 2,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_SUCCESS,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_FAILURE,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_BUSY,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID,
    USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_STALLED
} USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_PASSED = 0 | MSD Command result was success. The command issued to the MSD device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • passed. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_FAILED = 1 | MSD Command failed. The command issued to the MSD device failed. The <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • device BOT state machine is in sync with the host. The data residue • length is valid. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_PHASE_ERROR = 2 | MSD Command failed with phase error. The command issued to the MSD device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • has failed. The failure reason is unknown. The MSD Host Client driver has • reset the device BOT state machine. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_SUCCESS | The operation was successful |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_FAILURE | An unknown failure has occurred. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_BUSY | The request cannot be accepted at this time |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID | The specified LUN is not valid |
| USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT_COMMAND_STALLED | The MSD request was stalled |

Description

USB HOST MSD Result

This enumeration defines the possible return values of different USB HOST MSD Client driver function call. Refer to the specific function documentation for details on the return values.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK Type

USB HOST MSD Transfer Complete Callback

File[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef void (* USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK)(USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE lunHandle,  

USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE transferHandle, USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT result, size_t size, uintptr_t  

context);
```

Description

USB HOST MSD Transfer Complete Callback

This type defines the type of the callback function that the application must register in the [USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer](#) function to receive notification when a transfer has completed. The callback function will be called with the following parameters.

lunHandle - The handle to the LUN from where this notification originated.

transferHandle - the handle to the MSD transfer.

result - result of the transfer.

size - of the transfer.

context - context that specified when this transfer was scheduled.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION Enumeration

USB HOST MSD Transfer Direction.

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {  

    USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION_HOST_TO_DEVICE = 0x00,  

    USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION_DEVICE_TO_HOST = 0x80  

} USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION_HOST_TO_DEVICE = 0x00 | Data moves from host to device |
| USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION_DEVICE_TO_HOST = 0x80 | Data moves from device to host |

Description

USB HOST Transfer Direction

This enumeration specifies the direction of the data stage.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE Type

USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle

This type defines a USB Host MSD Transfer Handle.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE Macro

USB HOST MSD Client Driver Interface

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE
```

Description

USB HOST MSD Client Driver Interface

This macro should be used by the application in TPL table while adding support for the USB MSD Host Client Driver.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle Invalid

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle Invalid

This value defines an invalid Transfer Handle.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE Type

USB HOST MSD LUN Handle

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef uintptr_t USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE;
```

Description

USB HOST MSD LUN Handle

This type defines a MSD LUN Handle. This handle is used by SCSI driver to identify the LUN.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID Macro

USB HOST MSD LUN Handle Invalid

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
#define USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID
```

Description

USB HOST MSD LUN Handle Invalid

This value defines an invalid LUN Handle.

Remarks

None.

USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE Enumeration

USB Host MSD Error Codes.

File

[usb_host_msd.h](#)

C

```
typedef enum {
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_INSUFFICIENT_INSTANCES = 1,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_NOT_FOUND_BULK_IN_ENDPOINT,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_NOT_FOUND_BULK_OUT_ENDPOINT,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_PIPE_OPEN,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_GET_MAX_LUN,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_BOT_TRANSFER,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_RESET_RECOVERY,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_CBW_STALL_RESET_RECOVERY,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_TRANSFER_BUSY,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_CSW_PHASE_ERROR,
    USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_CSW_UNKNOWN_ERROR
} USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE;
```

Members

| Members | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_INSUFFICIENT_INSTANCES = 1 | <p>This error occurs when the number of MSD instances defined via</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER (in system_config.h) is insufficient. For example, this error would occur if the value of USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER is 2, two MSC devices are already connected and third MSC device is connected to the host. The object identifier in this case will be the USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE value. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_NOT_FOUND_BULK_IN_ENDPOINT | This error occurs when the driver descriptor parser could not find a Bulk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IN endpoint in the interface descriptor. The object identifier in this case will be the USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE value. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_NOT_FOUND_BULK_OUT_ENDPOINT | This error occurs when the driver descriptor parser could not find a Bulk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OUT endpoint in the interface descriptor. The object identifier in this case will be the USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE value. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_PIPE_OPEN | This error occurs when the driver could not open a Bulk pipe. This <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • typically happens either due to a host layer error or due to insufficient • number of pipes (which is configured via USB_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER). The • object identifier in this case will be the USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE value. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_GET_MAX_LUN | This error occurs when the Get Max LUN request issued by the driver fails <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for any reason. The object identifier in this case will be the MSC device • instance index. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_BOT_TRANSFER | This error occurs when any stage of the BOT has failed due to bus error <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • or an unknown failure. The object identifier in this case will be the MSC • device instance index. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_FAILED_RESET_RECOVERY | This error occurs when the MSD Reset Recovery procedure has failed. A MSC <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • device should not fail a MSD Reset Recovery procedure. The object • identifier in this case will be the device instance index. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_CBW_STALL_RESET_RECOVERY | This error code indicates a condition where the CBW stage of the BOT was <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • stalled and the driver is about to launch MSD reset recovery. The • identifier in this case is the MSC Device instance index. This code is • generated from an interrupt context. The driver may continue to function • normally post this condition. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_TRANSFER_BUSY | This error code indicates a condition where the BOT transfer could not be <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • initiated because a transfer is already in progress. The identifier in this case is the MSC Device Instance Index. The driver may continue to function normally post this condition. This condition may occur several times. |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_CSW_PHASE_ERROR | <p>This error code indicates a condition where the BOT transfer failed due to a</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> phase error in the CSW stage of the BOT. The identifier in this case is the MSC Device instance index. This code is generated from an interrupt context. The driver may continue to function normally post this condition. |
| USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE_CSW_UNKNOWN_ERROR | <p>This error code indicates that a condition where an unknown error has</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> occurred during the CSW stage of the BOT. The identifier in this case is the MSC Device instance index. This code is generated from an interrupt context. The driver may continue to function normally post this condition. |

Description

USB Host MSD Error Codes.

This enumeration defines the codes that the MSD Client Driver returns for possible errors that lead to the device being placed in an error state. The MSD client driver will not operate on a device which is in an error state. The errors are returned in the USB_HOST_MSD_ErrorCallback function.

Remarks

None.

Files

Files

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| usb_host_msd.h | USB Host MSD Class Driver Interface Header |
| usb_host_msd_config_template.h | USB Host MSD configuration template header file |

Description

usb_host_msd.h

USB Host MSD Class Driver Interface Header

Enumerations

| | Name | Description |
|--|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE | USB Host MSD Error Codes. |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT | USB HOST MSD Result |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION | USB HOST MSD Transfer Direction. |

Functions

| | Name | Description |
|---|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≡ | USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer | This function schedules a MSD BOT transfer. |
| ≡ | USB_HOST_MSD_TransferErrorTasks | This function maintains the MSD transfer error handling state machine. |

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE | USB HOST MSD Client Driver Interface |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID | USB HOST MSD LUN Handle Invalid |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID | USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle Invalid |

Types

| | Name | Description |
|--|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| | USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE | USB HOST MSD LUN Handle |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK | USB HOST MSD Transfer Complete Callback |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE | USB HOST MSD Transfer Handle |

Description

USB Host MSD Class Driver Interface Definition

This header file contains the function prototypes and definitions of the data types and constants that make up the interface to the USB Host MSD Class Driver.

File Name

usb_host_msd.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_host_msd_config_template.h

USB Host MSD configuration template header file

Macros

| | Name | Description |
|--|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | _USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ | This is macro _USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_. |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of MSD devices to be supported by this host application. |
| | USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER | Defines the maximum number of MSD Device LUNs to be supported in the application. |

Description

USB Host MSD function driver compile time options

This file contains USB host MSD function driver compile time options(macros) that has to be configured by the user. This file is a template file and must be used as an example only. This file must not be directly included in the project.

File Name

usb_host_msd_config_template.h

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

USB Common Driver Interface

This section describes the interface that a USB peripheral driver should implement in order to function with the Harmony USB Stack

Common Interface

Provides information on the USB Driver interface that is common to all PIC32 devices.

Description

The USB Driver Common Interface definition specifies the functions and their behavior that a USB Driver must implement so that the driver can be used by the MPLAB Harmony USB Host and Device Stack.



Note: The MPLAB Harmony USB Driver for PIC32MX and PIC32MZ devices implements the USB Driver Common Interface.

The USB Driver Common Interface contains functions that are grouped as follows:

- *Driver System Functions* - These functions are called by MPLAB Harmony to initialize and maintain the operational state of the USB Driver. The system functions can vary between different PIC32 device USB Drivers. As such, the USB Driver Common Interface does not require these functions to be of the same type. These functions are not called by the USB Host or Device Stack and therefore are allowed to (and can) vary across different PIC32 device USB Drivers. A description of these functions, along with a description of how to initialize the USB Driver for Host, Device or Dual Role operation, is provided in the specific PIC32 device USB Driver help section (see PIC32MX USB Driver and PIC32MZ USB Driver).
- *Driver General Client Functions* - These functions are called by the USB Host or Device Stack to gain access to the driver
- *Driver Host Mode Client Functions* - These functions are called exclusively by the USB Host Stack to operate and access the USB as a Host
- *Driver Device Mode Client Functions* - These functions are called exclusively by the USB Device Stack to operate and access the USB as a Device

The USB Driver Common Interface is defined in the <install-dir>\framework\driver\usb\drv_usb.h file. This file contains the data types and structures that define the interface. Specifically, the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure, contained in this file, is the common interface for USB Driver Host mode functions. It is a structure of function pointers, pointing to functions that define the Driver Host mode Client functions. The following code example shows this structure and the function pointer it contains.

```
// ****
/* USB Driver Client Functions Interface (For Host mode)

Summary:
Group of function pointers to the USB Driver Host mode Client Functions.

Description:
This structure is a group of function pointers pointing to the USB Driver Host mode Client routines. The USB Driver should export this group of functions so that the Host layer can access the driver functionality.

Remarks:
None.

*/
typedef struct
{
    /* This is a pointer to the driver Open function. This function may be
     * called twice in a Dual Role application, once by the Host Stack and then
     * by the Device Stack */
    DRV_HANDLE (*open)(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX drvIndex, const DRV_IO_INTENT intent);

    /* This is pointer to the driver Close function */
    void (*close)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the event call back set function */
    void (*eventHandlerSet)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t hReferenceData,
                           DRV_USB_EVENT_CALLBACK eventHandler);

    /* This is a pointer to the Host IRP submit function */
    USB_ERROR (*hostIRPSubmit)(DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE pipeHandle, USB_HOST_IRP * irp);

    /* This is a pointer to the Host IRP Cancel all function */
}
```

```

void (*hostIRPCancel)(USB_HOST_IRP * irp);

/* This is pointer to the Host event disable function */
bool (*hostEventsDisable)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

/* This is a pointer to the Host event enable function */
void (*hostEventsEnable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, bool eventContext);

/* This is a pointer to the Host pipe setup function */
DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE (*hostPipeSetup)
(
    DRV_HANDLE client,
    uint8_t deviceAddress,
    USB_ENDPOINT endpointAndDirection,
    uint8_t hubAddress,
    uint8_t hubPort,
    USB_TRANSFER_TYPE pipeType,
    uint8_t bInterval,
    uint16_t wMaxPacketSize,
    USB_SPEED speed
);

/* This is a pointer to the Host Pipe Close function */
void (*hostPipeClose)(DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE pipeHandle);

/* This is a pointer to the Host Root Hub functions */
DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE rootHubInterface;

} DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE;

```

The DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure, contained in this file, is the common interface for USB Driver Device mode functions. It is a structure of function pointers, pointer to functions that define the Driver Device mode Client functions. The following code example shows this structure and the function pointer it contains.

```
/*
 * ***** *****
 * USB Driver Client Functions Interface (For Device Mode)
```

Summary:

Group of function pointers to the USB Driver Device Mode Client Functions.

Description:

This structure is a group of function pointers pointing to the USB Driver Device Mode Client routines. The USB Driver should export this group of functions so that the Device Layer can access the driver functionality.

Remarks:

None.

```
*/
```

```

typedef struct
{
    /* This is a pointer to the driver Open function */
    DRV_HANDLE (*open)(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX drvIndex, const DRV_IO_INTENT intent);

    /* This is pointer to the driver Close function */
    void (*close)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the event call back set function */
    void (*eventHandlerSet)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t hReferenceData,
                           DRV_USB_EVENT_CALLBACK eventHandler);

    /* This is a pointer to the device address set function */
    void (*deviceAddressSet)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uint8_t address);

    /* This is a pointer to the device current speed get function */
    USB_SPEED (*deviceCurrentSpeedGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the SOF Number get function */

```

```

    uint16_t (*deviceSOFNumberGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the device attach function */
    void (*deviceAttach)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the device detach function */
    void (*deviceDetach)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the device endpoint enable function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointEnable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint,
                                      USB_TRANSFER_TYPE transferType, uint16_t endpointSize);

    /* This is a pointer to the device endpoint disable function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointDisable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);

    /* This is a pointer to the device endpoint stall function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointStall)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);

    /* This is a pointer to the device endpoint stall clear function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointStallClear)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);

    /* This is pointer to the device endpoint enable status query function */
    bool (*deviceEndpointIsEnabled)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);

    /* This is pointer to the device endpoint stall status query function */
    bool (*deviceEndpointIsStalled)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);

    /* This is a pointer to the device IRP submit function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceIRPSubmit)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint,
                                 USB_DEVICE_IRP * irp);

    /* This is a pointer to the device IRP Cancel all function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceIRPCancelAll)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);

    /* This is a pointer to the device remote wakeup start function */
    void (*deviceRemoteWakeupStart)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the device remote wakeup stop function */
    void (*deviceRemoteWakeupStop)(DRV_HANDLE handle);

    /* This is a pointer to the device Test mode enter function */
    USB_ERROR (*deviceTestModeEnter)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_TEST_MODE_SELECTORS testMode);
}

} DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE;

```

Both of these structures also contain pointers to General Client functions. The specific PIC32 device USB Driver allocates and initializes such a structure. The following code example shows how the PIC32MX USB Host mode Driver allocates and initializes the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure. This code is contained in the

```

<install-dir>\framework\driver\usb\usbhbs\src\dynamic\drv_usbfs_host.c file.
*****
* This structure is a set of pointer to the USBFS driver
* functions. It is provided to the Host layer as the
* interface to the driver.
*****

```

```

DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE gDrvUSBFSHostInterface =
{
    .open = DRV_USBFS_Open,
    .close = DRV_USBFS_Close,
    .eventHandlerSet = DRV_USBFS_ClientEventCallBackSet,
    .hostIRPSubmit = DRV_USBFS_HOST_IRPSubmit,
    .hostIRPCancel = DRV_USBFS_HOST_IRPCancel,
    .hostPipeSetup = DRV_USBFS_HOST_PipeSetup,
    .hostPipeClose = DRV_USBFS_HOST_PipeClose,
    .hostEventsDisable = DRV_USBFS_HOST_EventsDisable,
    .hostEventsEnable = DRV_USBFS_HOST_EventsEnable,
    .rootHubInterface.rootHubPortInterface.hubPortReset = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_PortReset,
}

```

```

.rootHubInterface.rootHubPortInterface.hubPortSpeedGet =
    DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_PortSpeedGet,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubPortInterface.hubPortResetIsComplete =
    DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_PortResetIsComplete,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubPortInterface.hubPortSuspend = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_PortSuspend,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubPortInterface.hubPortResume = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_PortResume,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubMaxCurrentGet = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_MaximumCurrentGet,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubPortNumbersGet = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_PortNumbersGet,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubSpeedGet = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_BusSpeedGet,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubInitialize = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_Initialize,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubOperationEnable = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_OperationEnable,
.rootHubInterface.rootHubOperationisEnabled = DRV_USBFS_HOST_ROOT_HUB_OperationisEnabled,
};

}

```

Similarly, the PIC32MX USB Device mode Driver allocates and initializes the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure. This can be reviewed in the <install-dir>\framework\driver\usb\usbhs\src\dynamic\drv_usbfs_device.c file.

```
*****
* This structure is a pointer to a set of USB Driver
* Device mode functions. This set is exported to the
* Device Layer when the Device Layer must use the
* PIC32MX USB Controller.
*****
```

```

DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE gDrvUSBFSDDeviceInterface =
{
    .open = DRV_USBFS_Open,
    .close = DRV_USBFS_Close,
    .eventHandlerSet = DRV_USBFS_ClientEventCallBackSet,
    .deviceAddressSet = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_AddressSet,
    .deviceCurrentSpeedGet = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_CurrentSpeedGet,
    .deviceSOFNumberGet = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_SOFNumberGet,
    .deviceAttach = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_Attach,
    .deviceDetach = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_Detach,
    .deviceEndpointEnable = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointEnable,
    .deviceEndpointDisable = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointDisable,
    .deviceEndpointStall = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointStall,
    .deviceEndpointStallClear = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear,
    .deviceEndpointisEnabled = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointisEnabled,
    .deviceEndpointisStalled = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointisStalled,
    .deviceIRPSubmit = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_IRPSubmit,
    .deviceIRPCancelAll = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_IRPCancelAll,
    .deviceRemoteWakeUpStop = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStop,
    .deviceRemoteWakeUpStart = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStart,
    .deviceTestModeEnter = NULL
};

}

```

A pointer to the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure is passed to the USB Host Stack as part of USB Host Stack initialization. The following code example shows how this is done.

```
*****
* This is a table of the USB Host mode drivers that this application will
* support. Also contained in the driver index. In this example, the
* application will want to use instance 0 of the PIC32MX USB Full-Speed driver.
*****
```

```

const USB_HOST_HCD hcdTable =
{
    .drvIndex = DRV_USBFS_INDEX_0,
    .hcdInterface = DRV_USBFS_HOST_INTERFACE
};

/* Here the pointer to the USB Driver Common Interface is provided to the USB
 * Host Layer via the hostControllerDrivers member of the Host Layer
 * Initialization data structure. */
const USB_HOST_INIT usbHostInitData =
{
    .nTPEEntries = 1 ,
    .tplList = (USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY *)USBTPLList,

```

```
.hostControllerDrivers = (USB_HOST_HCD *) &hcdTable
};
```

A pointer to the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure is passed to the USB Device Stack as part of the USB Device Stack initialization. The Host Stack and Device Stack then access the driver functions through the function pointers contained in these structures.

The Driver General Client, Host mode and Device mode Client functions are described in this section. Any references to a USB Driver Client in the following sections, implies the client is a USB Host Stack and/or the USB Device Stack.

Driver Host Mode Client Functions

Provides information on the Host mode Client functions for the USB Driver.

Description

The DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure contains pointers to the USB Driver's Host mode Client functions. These functions are only applicable when the USB module is operating as a USB Host. Along with the function pointers to the driver's Host mode specific functions, the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure also contains another structure of function pointers of the type DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE. This structure contains function pointers to the USB Driver's Root Hub functions. A USB Driver must implement these functions and ensure that the Host Stack can access these functions through the driver's DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure. The Driver Host mode Client functions in the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure are:

- Driver Host Pipe Setup Function
- Driver Host Pipe Close Function
- Driver Host Events Disable Function
- Driver Host Events Enable Function
- Driver Host IRP Submit Function
- Driver Host IRP Cancel Function

Driver Host Pipe Setup Function

The hostPipeSetup member of the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Host Pipe Setup function. The signature of the Host Pipe Setup function is as follows:

```
DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE (*hostPipeSetup) ( DRV_HANDLE client, uint8_t deviceAddress,
                                             USB_ENDPOINT endpointAndDirection, uint8_t hubAddress,
                                             uint8_t hubPort, USB_TRANSFER_TYPE pipeType, uint8_t bInterval,
                                             uint16_t wMaxPacketSize, USB_SPEED speed);
```

The USB Driver Host mode Pipe Setup function must match this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to create a communication pipe to the attached device. The function parameters define the property of this communication pipe. The driverHandle parameter is the handle to the driver obtained through the driver Open function. The deviceAddress and the endpointAddress parameters specify the address of the USB device and the endpoint on this device to which this pipe must connect.

If the device is connected to the Host though a hub, hubAddress and hubPort must specify the address of the hub and port to which the device is connected. The USB Driver will use these parameters to schedule split transactions if the target device is a Low-Speed or Full-Speed device and is connected to the Host through a high-speed hub. If the device is connected directly to the Host, these parameters should be set to zero ('0').

The pipeType parameter specifies the type of USB transfers that this pipe would support. The bInterval parameter is interpreted as per the USB 2.0 Specification based on the transfer type and the speed of the pipe. The wMaxPacketSize parameter defines the maximum size of a transaction that the driver should use while transporting a transfer on the pipe. The Host layer will use the information obtained from the USB device descriptors of the attached device to decide the wMaxPacketSize parameter.

The Driver Host Pipe Setup function should be thread-safe, but does not have to be event safe. The Host layer (or the Host Client Drivers) will not, and should not attempt to create a pipe in an interrupt, and therefore, an event context. The function should return DRV_USB_PIPE_HANDLE_INVALID if the driver could not open the pipe. The driver may not be able to open a pipe due to incorrect function parameters or due to lack of resources.

Driver Host Pipe Close Function

The hostPipeClose member of the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Host Pipe Close function. The signature of the Host Pipe Close function is as follows:

```
void (*hostPipeClose)(DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE pipeHandle);
```

The USB Driver Host mode Pipe Close function must match this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to close communication pipes. The `pipeHandle` parameter is the pipe handle obtained from the Pipe Setup function. The Host Client Driver typically closes pipes when a device detach was detected. The Client Driver may also close pipes when a device configuration needs to change or when the Client Driver is being unloaded by the Host. The Pipe Close function has no side effect if the pipe handle is invalid. Closing the pipe will abort all I/O Request Packets (IRP) that are scheduled on the pipe. Any transaction in progress will complete. The IRP callback functions for each IRP scheduled in the pipe will be called with a `USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED` status.

The USB Driver Pipe Close function must be thread-safe and event-safe. The latter requirement allows the Pipe Close function to be called in the context of the device detach Interrupt Service Routine.

Driver Host Event Disable Function

The `hostEventsDisable` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Host mode Driver Events Disable function. The signature of the Events Disable function is as follows:

```
bool (*hostEventsDisable)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Host mode Driver Events Disable function must match this signature. The Host Stack will call this function when it wants to execute a section of code that should not be interrupted by the USB Driver. Calling this function should disable USB Driver event generation. The `handle` parameter is set to the driver handle obtained via the driver Open function. The function will return the present state of the event generation, whether it is enabled or disabled. The Host Stack will pass this value to the USB Driver Host mode Driver Events Enable function when it needs to enable the driver events.

Driver Host Events Enable Function

The `hostEventsEnable` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Host mode Driver Events Enable function. The signature of the events enable function is as follows:

```
void (*hostEventsEnable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, bool eventContext);
```

The USB Driver Host mode Driver Events Enable function must match this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to re-enable the USB Driver Host mode Events (if they were enabled) after it called the USB Driver Host mode Events Disable function to disable driver events. The `handle` parameter is set to the driver handle obtained via the driver Open function. The `eventContext` parameter is set to the value returned by the Host mode Driver Events Disable function. The USB Driver will use the `eventContext` parameter to restore the event generation status (enabled or disabled) to what it was when the USB Driver Host mode Driver Events Disable function was called.

Driver Host IRP Submit Function

The `hostIRPSubmit` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Host IRP Submit function. The signature of the IRP Submit function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*hostIRPSubmit)(DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE pipeHandle, USB_HOST_IRP * irp);
```

The USB Driver Host IRP Submit function must match this signature. The Host Stack calls this function to submit an IRP to the USB Driver. The USB Driver provides this mechanism to transfer data between the Host Stack and the attached device. The `pipeHandle` parameter should be set to the pipe handle obtained by the Pipe Setup function. The pipe handle specifies the pipe, and therefore, the target device, endpoint, speed and transfer type, on which the I/O must be processed. The `irp` parameter should point to the IRP data structure. The IRP data structure will transport an entire transfer over the pipe. The USB Driver will split up the transfer into transactions based on the parameters specified at the time of pipe creation. This process does not require Host Stack intervention.

The function will return `USB_ERROR_HOST_PIPE_INVALID` if the pipe handle is not valid. It will return `USB_ERROR_OSAL_FUNCTION` if an error occurred while performing a RTOS-related operation. It will return `USB_ERROR_NONE` if the IRP was submitted successfully.

The USB Driver will queue the IRP if there is already an IRP being processed on the pipe. The completion of the IRP processing is indicated by the USB Driver calling the IRP Callback function specified within the IRP. The Host IRP Submit function must be thread-safe and IRP callback-safe. The Host Stack may resubmit the IRP within the IRP Callback function. The IRP Callback function itself executes within an interrupt context. The completion status of the IRP will be available in the `status` member of the IRP when the IRP callback function is invoked.

Driver Host IRP Cancel Function

The `hostIRPCancel` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Host IRP Cancel function. The signature of the IRP Cancel function is as follows:

```
void (*hostIRPCancel)(USB_HOST_IRP * irp);
```

The USB Driver Host IRP Cancel function must match this signature. The Host Stack and Host Client Drivers will call this function to cancel an IRP that was submitted. The IRP will be aborted successfully if it is not in progress. If the IRP processing has begun,

the on-going transaction will complete and pending transactions in the transfer will be aborted. In either case, the IRP Callback function will be called with the IRP status as USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED.

Driver Host Root Hub Interface

Provides information on the Root Hub interface for the USB Host Driver.

Description

The USB Driver Common Interface requires the USB Driver to be operating in Host mode to provide root hub control functions. If the USB peripheral does not contain root hub features in hardware, these features must be emulated in software by the driver. The USB peripheral on PIC32MX and PIC32MZ devices does not contain root hub features; therefore, the USB Driver for these peripherals emulates the root hub functionality in software. The `rootHubInterface` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` structure is a structure of type `DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE`. The members of this structure are function pointers to the root hub control functions of the USB Driver.

Along with other Host mode functions, the USB Driver while operating in Host mode must also ensure that the `rootHubInterface` member of `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` is set up correctly so that the USB Host Stack can access the root hub functions. Descriptions of the function pointer types in the `DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE` include:

- Driver Host Root Hub Speed Get Function
- Driver Host Root Hub Port Numbers Get Function
- Driver Host Root Hub Maximum Current Get Function
- Driver Host Root Hub Operation Enable Function
- Driver Host Root Hub Operation Enable Status Function
- Driver Host Root Hub Initialize Function

Driver Host Root Hub Speed Get Function

The `rootHubSpeedGet` member of the `DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Speed Get function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_SPEED (*rootHubSpeedGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Speed Get function must match this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to identify the speed at which the root hub is operating. The `handle` parameter is the handle obtained by calling the USB Driver Open function. The operation speed is configured by the USB Driver initialization and depends on the capability of the USB peripheral. For example, the USB peripheral on PIC32MZ devices supports both Hi-Speed and Full-Speed Host mode operation. It can be configured through initialization to only operate at Full-Speed. The Root Hub Speed Get function must return the USB speed at which the USB peripheral is operating. This should not be confused with the speed of the attached device.

Driver Host Root Hub Port Numbers Get Function

The `rootHubPortNumbersGet` member of the `DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port Numbers Get function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_SPEED (*rootHubPortNumbersGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Speed Get function must match this signature. This function should return the number of ports that the root hub contains. On the USB peripheral for both PIC32MZ and PIC32MX devices, this value is always '1'.

Driver Host Root Hub Maximum Current Get Function

The `rootHubMaxCurrentGet` member of the `DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Maximum Current Get function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
uint32_t (*rootHubMaxCurrentGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Maximum Current Get function must match this signature. This function returns the maximum VBUS current that the root hub can provide. The USB Host Stack calls this function to know the maximum current that the root hub VBUS power supply can provide. This value is then used to determine if the Host can support the current requirements of the attached device. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained by calling the driver Open function.

The PIC32MX and the PIC32MZ USB peripherals cannot supply VBUS. The root hub driver only switches the VBUS supply. The current rating of the VBUS is specified through the USB Driver initialization. The root hub maximum current get function implementation in these drivers returns this value to the Host Stack.

Driver Host Root Hub Operation Enable Function

The `rootHubOperationEnable` member of the `DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver

Root Hub Operation Enable function. The signature of this function is as follows"

```
void (*rootHubOperationEnable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, bool enable);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Operation Enable function must match this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function when it ready to receive device attach events from the root hub. Calling this function will cause the USB Driver root hub functionality to enable detection of device attach and detach. The USB Driver will then raise events to the USB Host Stack. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained by calling the driver Open function. Setting the enable parameter to true enables the root hub operation. Setting the enable parameter to false disables the root hub operation.

Driver Host Root Hub Operation Enable Status Function

The rootHubOperationIsEnabled member of the DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Operation Enable Status function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
bool (*rootHubOperationIsEnabled)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Operation Enable Status function must match this signature. This USB Host Stack calls this function after calling the operation enable function to check if this has completed. The function returns true if the operation enable function has completed. The USB Host Stack will call this function periodically until it returns true.

Driver Host Root Hub Initialize Function

The rootHubInitialize member of the DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Initialize function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
void (*rootHubInitialize)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE usbHostDeviceInfo);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Initialize function must match this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to assign a device identifier (usbHostDeviceInfo) to the root hub. This function is called before the Host Stack enables the root hub operation. The USB Driver root hub should use this identifier as the parent identifier when it calls the USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate function to enumerate the attached device. At the time of enumeration, the USB Host Stack will use this parent identifier to identify the parent hub (whether root hub or external hub) of the attached device. The USB Driver root hub should retain the usbHostDeviceInfo parameter for the life time of its operation.

Driver Host USB Root Hub Port Interface

Provides information on the Root Hub Port interface of the USB Host Driver.

Description

The rootHubPortInterface member of the DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port functions. The data type of this member is USB_HUB_INTERFACE. This data type is a structure containing function pointers pointing to the port control functions of the root hub. The USB Driver must assign the function pointers in this structure to the root hub port control functions. These same functions are also exported by a Hub Driver to the USB Host Stack, which allow the Host Stack to control a device regardless of whether it is connected to a root hub or an external hub. The port functions are valid only when a device is attached to the port. The behavior of these functions on a port to which no device is connected is not defined. Descriptions of the port control functions are provided, which include:

- Driver Host Hub Port Reset Function
- Driver Host Hub Port Reset Completion Status Function
- Driver Host Hub Port Suspend Function
- Driver Host Hub Port Resume Function
- Driver Host Hub Port Speed Get Function

Driver Host Hub Port Reset Function

The hubPortReset member of the USB_HUB_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port Reset function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*hubPortReset)(uintptr_t hubAddress, uint8_t port);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Port Reset function must follow this signature. This function starts reset signaling on the port. If the device is connected to the root hub, the USB Host Stack will set the hubAddress parameter to the driver handle obtained through the driver Open function. The USB Host Stack uses the parent identifier provided by the root hub driver when the USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate function was called to query the driver handle that is linked to this root hub. If the device is connected to an external hub, the hubAddress parameter is directly set to the parent identifier.

For the PIC32MX and PIC32MZ USB Drivers, the port parameter is ignored. For an external hub, this must be set to the port to which the device is connected. The function returns USB_ERROR_NONE if the function was successful. If the reset signaling is already in progress on the port, calling this function has no effect. The USB Driver will itself time duration of the reset signal. This

does not require USB Host Stack intervention. The USB Host Stack will call the port reset completion status function to check if the reset signaling has completed. Calling this function on a port which exists on an external hub will cause the hub driver to issue a control transfer to start the port reset procedure.

Driver Host Hub Port Reset Completion Status Function

The `hubPortResetIsComplete` member of the `USB_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port Reset Completion Status function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
bool (*hubPortResetIsComplete)(uintptr_t hubAddress, uint8_t port);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Port Reset Completion Status function must follow this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to check if the port reset sequence that was started on a port has completed. The function returns true if the reset signaling has completed. If the device is connected to the root hub, the USB Host Stack will set the `hubAddress` parameter to the driver handle obtained through the driver Open function. If the device is connected to an external hub, the `hubAddress` parameter is directly set to the parent identifier.

For the PIC32MX and PIC32MZ USB Drivers, the `port` parameter is ignored. For an external hub, this parameter must be set to the port to which the device is connected.

Driver Host Hub Port Suspend Function

The `hubPortSuspend` member of the `USB_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port Suspend function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR(*hubPortSuspend)(uintptr_t hubAddress, uint8_t port);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Port Suspend function must follow this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to suspend the port. If the device is connected to the root hub, the USB Host Stack will set the `hubAddress` parameter to the driver handle obtained through the driver Open function. If the device is connected to an external hub, the `hubAddress` parameter is directly set to the parent identifier.

For the PIC32MX and PIC32MZ USB Drivers, the `port` parameter is ignored. For an external hub, this parameter must be set to the port to which the device is connected. The function returns `USB_ERROR_NONE` if the request was successful. Calling this function on a suspended port will not have any effect.

Driver Host Hub Port Resume Function

The `hubPortResume` member of the `USB_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port Resume function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR(*hubPortResume)(uintptr_t hubAddress, uint8_t port);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Port Resume function must follow this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to resume a suspended port. If the device is connected to the root hub, the USB Host Stack will set the `hubAddress` parameter to the driver handle obtained through the driver Open function. If the device is connected to an external hub, the `hubAddress` parameter is directly set to the parent identifier.

For the PIC32MX and PIC32MZ USB Drivers, the `port` parameter is ignored. For an external hub, this parameter must be set to the port to which the device is connected. The function returns `USB_ERROR_NONE` if the request was successful. Calling this function on a port that is not suspended will not have any effect.

Driver Host Hub Port Speed Get Function

The `hubPortSpeedGet` member of the `USB_HUB_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Root Hub Port Speed Get function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_SPEED(*hubPortSpeedGet)(uintptr_t hubAddress, uint8_t port);
```

The USB Driver Root Hub Port Speed Get function must follow this signature. The USB Host Stack calls this function to obtain the USB speed of the device that is attached to the port. The Host Stack calls this function only after it has completed reset of the port. If the device is connected to the root hub, the USB Host Stack will set the `hubAddress` parameter to the driver handle obtained through the driver Open function. If the device is connected to an external hub, the `hubAddress` parameter is directly set to the parent identifier.

For the PIC32MX and PIC32MZ USB Drivers, the `port` parameter is ignored. For an external hub, this parameter must be set to the port to which the device is connected. The function returns `USB_SPEED_ERROR` if the request was not successful. It will return the functional USB speed otherwise.

This concludes the section describing the USB Driver Host mode Client Functions. The USB Driver Device Mode Client Functions are discussed in the next section.

Driver Device Mode Client Functions

Provides information on the USB Driver Device mode Client functions.

Description

The DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure contains pointers to the USB Driver's Device mode Client Functions. These functions are only applicable when the USB module is operating as a USB Device. A USB Driver must implement these functions and ensure that the Device Stack can access these functions through the driver's DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure. Descriptions of the Driver Device Mode Client functions in the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure include:

- Driver Device Address Set Function
- Driver Device Current Speed Get Function
- Driver Device SOF Number Get Function
- Driver Device Attach Function
- Driver Device Detach Function
- Driver Device Endpoint Enable Function
- Driver Device Endpoint Disable Function
- Driver Device Endpoint Stall Function
- Driver Device Endpoint Stall Clear Function
- Driver Device Endpoint Enable Status Function
- Driver Device Endpoint Stall Status Function
- Driver Device IRP Submit Function
- Driver Device IRP Cancel All Function
- Driver Device IRP Cancel Function
- Driver Device Remote Wakeup Start Function
- Driver Device Remote Wakeup Stop Function
- Driver Device Test Mode Enter Function

The PIC32MZ and the PIC32MX USB peripheral drivers implement the Device mode functions and export these functions to the Device Stack though their respective DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure.

Driver Device Address Set Function

The deviceAddressSet member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Device Address Set function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
void (*deviceAddressSet)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uint8_t address);
```

The USB Driver Device Address Set Function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call this function to set the Device USB Address. The function will be called in an interrupt context and hence the function implementation must be interrupt-safe. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The address parameter is the address provided by the USB Host through the Set Device Address Standard request.

Driver Device Current Speed Get Function

The deviceCurrentSpeedGet member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Current Speed Get function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_SPEED (*deviceCurrentSpeedGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Device Current Speed Get function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call this function to obtain the speed at which the device has connected to the USB. It will call this function after reset signaling has completed. The handle parameter is driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. This function is called in an interrupt context and should be interrupt-safe.

Driver Device SOF Number Get Function

The deviceSOFNumberGet member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Start-Of-Frame Number Get function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
uint16_t (*deviceSOFNumberGet)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver SOF Number Get function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call this function to obtain the current SOF number. The USB peripheral uses a 16 bit counter to count the number of SOFs that have occurred since USB reset. This value is returned along with the Device Stack Start of Frame event. This function is called from an interrupt context and

should be interrupt-safe. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function.

Driver Device Attach Function

The deviceAttach member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Attach function.

The signature of this function is as follows:

```
uint16_t (*deviceAttach)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Attach function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call this function when the Device application calls the USB Device Stack Device Attach function. The USB Driver will enable the required signaling resistors for indicate attach to the Host. The application could call this function in response to a VBUS power available event. This function must be interrupt-safe. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function.

Driver Device Detach Function

The deviceDetach member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Detach function.

The signature of this function is as follows:

```
uint16_t(*deviceDetach)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Detach function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call this function when the Device application calls the USB Device Stack Device Detach function. The USB Driver will disable the required signaling resistors to indicate detach to the Host. The application could call this function in response to a VBUS power not available event. This function should be interrupt-safe. The handle parameter is driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function.

Driver Device Endpoint Enable Function

The deviceEndpointEnable member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Endpoint Enable function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointEnable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint,
                                 USB_TRANSFER_TYPE transferType, uint16_t endpointSize);
```

The USB Driver Endpoint Enable function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack Function Driver will call this function when it is initialized by the USB Device Layer. The Device Layer, on receiving the Set Configuration request from the Host, identifies the function drivers that are required by the configuration and initializes them. The function drivers will call the endpoint enable function to enable the endpoints required for their operation. Enabling the endpoint will cause it reply to transaction requests from the Host and accept transfer requests from the device application.

The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The endpoint parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) that should be enabled. The transferType is the type of the USB transfer that this endpoint will handle. The endpointSize is the size of the maximum transaction that the endpoint will handle. This should match the endpoint size communicated to the Host via the device endpoint descriptors.

The function will return USB_ERROR_NONE if the endpoint was configured successfully. The function will return USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID if the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system configuration. It will return USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID if the driver handle is not valid.

The endpoint enable function will be called in an interrupt context and should be interrupt-safe. It is not expected to be thread safe. For standard function drivers, the endpoint enable function will be called in the context of the USB Device Layer Client. For vendor USB devices, the vendor application must call the endpoint enable function in response to and within the context of the device configured event. Again this event itself will execute in the context of the Device Layer.

Driver Device Endpoint Disable Function

The deviceEndpointDisable member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Endpoint Disable function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointDisable)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);
```

The USB Driver Endpoint Disable function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack Function Driver will call this function when it is deinitialized by the USB Device Layer. The Device Layer will deinitialize function drivers when it receives a USB reset event from the driver or on receiving the Set Configuration request from the Host with configuration parameter 0. Disabling the endpoint will cause it NAK transaction request from the Host and not accept transfer requests from the device application.

The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The endpoint parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) that should be disabled.

The function will return USB_ERROR_NONE if the function executed successfully. The function will return USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID if the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system configuration. It will return USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID if the driver handle is not valid.

The endpoint disable function will be called in an interrupt context and should be interrupt-safe. It is not expected to be thread safe. For standard function drivers, the endpoint disable function will be called in the context of the USB Device Layer Client. For

vendor USB devices, the vendor application must call the endpoint enable function in response to and within the context of the device reset event. Again this event itself will execute in the context of the Device Layer. Disabling the endpoint will not cancel any transfers that have been queued against the endpoint. The function drivers will call the IRP Cancel All function to cancel any pending transfers.

Driver Device Endpoint Stall Function

The `deviceEndpointStall` member of the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Endpoint Stall function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointStall)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);
```

The USB Driver Endpoint Stall function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack Function Driver will call this function to stall an endpoint. The Device Layer itself will stall endpoint 0 for several reasons including non-support of the Host request or failure while executing the request. A function driver will also stall an endpoint for protocol specific reasons. The driver will stall both, receive and transmit directions when stalling Endpoint 0. The driver will stall the specified direction while stalling a non-zero endpoint.

This function must be thread safe and interrupt safe. Stalling the endpoint will abort all the transfers queued on the endpoint with the completion status set to `USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED_ENDPOINT_HALT`. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The `endpoint` parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) that should be stalled. The function will return `USB_ERROR_NONE` if the function executed successfully. The function will return `USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID` if the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system configuration. It will return `USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID` if the driver handle is not valid.

Driver Device Endpoint Stall Clear Function

The `deviceEndpointStallClear` member of the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Endpoint Stall Clear function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceEndpointStallClear)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);
```

The USB Driver Endpoint Stall Clear function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack Function Driver will call this function to clear the stall on a non-zero endpoint. The Device Layer will call this function to clear the stall condition on Endpoint 0. Clearing the stall on a non-zero endpoint will clear all transfers scheduled on the endpoint and transfer completion status will be set to `USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_TERMINATED_BY_HOST`. When the stall is cleared, the data toggle for non-zero endpoint will be set to DATA0. The data toggle on Endpoint 0 OUT endpoint will be set to DATA1. The USB Driver will clear the Stall condition on an endpoint even if it was not stalled.

This function must be thread safe and interrupt safe. Stalling the endpoint will flush all the transfers queued on the endpoint. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The `endpoint` parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) whose stall condition must be cleared. The function will return `USB_ERROR_NONE` if the function executed successfully. The function will return

`USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID` if the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system configuration. It will return `USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID` if the driver handle is not valid.

Driver Device Endpoint Enable Status Function

The `deviceEndpointIsEnabled` member of the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Endpoint Enable Status function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
bool (*deviceEndpointIsEnabled)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);
```

The USB Driver Endpoint Enable Status function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack function will call this function to check if an endpoint has been enabled. The function returns true if the endpoint is enabled. The endpoint is enabled through the USB Driver Endpoint Enable function. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The `endpoint` parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) whose enable status needs to be queried.

Driver Device Endpoint Stall Status Function

The `deviceEndpointIsStalled` member of the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Endpoint Stall Status function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
bool (*deviceEndpointIsStalled)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);
```

The USB Driver Endpoint Stall Status function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack function will call this function to check if an endpoint has been stalled. The function returns true if the endpoint is stalled. The endpoint is stalled through the USB Driver Endpoint Stall function. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The `endpoint` parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) whose stall status needs to be queried.

Driver Device IRP Submit Function

The deviceIRPSubmit member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Device IRP Submit function. The signature of the IRP submit function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceIRPSubmit)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint, USB_DEVICE_IRP * irp);
```

The USB Driver Device IRP Submit function must match this signature. The Device Stack (USB Device calls this function to submit an IRP to the USB Driver. The USB Driver provides this mechanism to transfer data between the device and the Host. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The endpoint parameter should set to endpoint through which transfer must be processed. The irp parameter should point to the Device IRP data structure. The IRP data structure will transport an entire transfer over the endpoint. The USB Driver will split up the transfer into transactions based on the endpoint size specified at the time of enabling the endpoint. This process does not require Device Stack intervention.

The function will return USB_ERROR_NONE if the function executed successfully. The function will return USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID if the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system configuration. It will return USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID if the driver handle is not valid. It will return USB_ERROR_DEVICE_IRP_IN_USE if an in progress IRP is resubmitted. It will return USB_ERROR_ENDPOINT_NOT_CONFIGURED if the IRP is submitted to an endpoint that is not enabled.

The USB Driver will queue the IRP if there is already an IRP being processed on the endpoint. The completion of the IRP processing is indicated by the USB Driver calling the IRP callback function specified within the IRP. The Device IRP Submit function must be thread safe and IRP callback safe. The Device Stack may resubmit the IRP within the IRP callback function. The IRP callback function itself executes within an interrupt context. The completion status of the IRP will be available in the status member of the IRP when the IRP callback function is invoked.

Driver Device IRP Cancel All Function

The deviceIRPCancelAll member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Device IRP Cancel All function. The signature of this is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceIRPCancelAll)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_ENDPOINT endpoint);
```

The USB Driver Device IRP Cancel All function must match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call this function before disabling the endpoint. Calling this function will call all IRPs that are queued on the endpoint to be canceled. The callback of each IRP will be invoked and the IRP completion status will be set to USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED. If an IRP is in progress, an ongoing transaction will be allowed to complete and pending transactions will be canceled. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The endpoint parameter is the USB endpoint (which indicates the direction along with endpoint number) whose queued IRPs must be canceled.

The function is thread safe and interrupt safe and will return USB_ERROR_NONE if it executed successfully. The function will return USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID if the specified endpoint is not provisioned in the system configuration. It will return USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID if the driver handle is not valid.

Driver Device IRP Cancel Function

The deviceIRPCancel member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Device IRP Cancel function. The signature of this is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceIRPCancel)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_DEVICE_IRP * irp);
```

The USB Driver Device IRP Cancel function must match this signature. This function is called by the USB Device Stack function driver to cancel a scheduled IRP. If the IRP is in the queue but it's processing has not started, the IRP will removed from the queue and the IRP callback function will be called from within the cancel function. The callback will be invoked with the IRP completion status set to USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED. If an IRP is in progress, an ongoing transaction will be allowed to complete and pending transactions will be canceled. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The irp parameter is the IRP to be canceled.

The function is thread safe and will return USB_ERROR_NONE if it executed successfully. It will return USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID if the driver handle is not valid or if the IRP has status indicates that this IRP is not queued or not in progress. The application should not release the data memory associated with IRP unless the callback has been received.

Driver Device Remote Wakeup Start Function

The deviceRemoteWakeupsStart member of the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure should point to the USB Driver Device Remote Wakeup Start function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
void (*deviceRemoteWakeupsStart)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Device Remote Wakeup Start function must match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call the function when the device application wants to start remote wakeup signaling. This would happen if the device supports remote wake-up capability and this has been enabled by the Host. The handle parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function.

Driver Device Remote Wakeup Stop Function

The `deviceRemoteWakeupsStop` member of the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Device Remote Wakeup Stop function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
void (*deviceRemoteWakeupsStop)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Device Remote Wakeup Stop function must match this signature. The USB Device Stack will call the function when the device application wants to stop remote wakeup signaling. The application would call after calling the remote wakeup start function. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function.

Driver Device Test Mode Enter Function

The `deviceTestModeEnter` parameter of the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure should point to the USB Driver Device Test Mode Enter function. The signature of this function is as follows:

```
USB_ERROR (*deviceTestModeEnter)(DRV_HANDLE handle, USB_TEST_MODE_SELECTORS testMode);
```

The USB Driver Device Test Mode Enter function should match this signature. The USB Device Stack calls this driver function to place the driver into test mode. This is required when the USB Host (operating at Hi-Speed) send the Set Feature request with the feature selector test set to test mode. This request also specifies which of the test mode signals, the driver should enable. The `handle` parameter is the driver handle obtained from calling the driver Open function. The `testMode` parameter should be set to one of the test modes as defined in table 9-7 of the USB 2.0 specification.

The test mode enter function is only supported by the PIC32MZ USB Driver as the USB peripheral on this controller supports Hi-Speed operation. The function will return `USB_ERROR_NONE` if it executed successfully. It will return `USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID` if the driver handle is not valid.

This concludes the discussion on the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structure. The following sections describe using the USB Common Driver.

Driver General Client Functions

Provides information on the General Client functions for the USB Driver.

Description

The `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` and the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structures contain pointers to the USB Driver's General Client functions. These functions are not specific to the operation mode (Host, Device, or Dual Role) of the driver. A USB Driver must implement these functions and ensure that the Host or Device Stack can access these functions through the driver's common interface structures. The common interface contains three general client functions:

- Driver Open Function
- Driver Close Function
- Driver Event Handler Set Function

Driver Open Function

The `open` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` and the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structures should point to the USB Driver Open function. The signature of the Open function is as follows:

```
DRV_HANDLE (*open)(const SYS_MODULE_INDEX drvIndex, const DRV_IO_INTENT intent);
```

The USB Driver Open function must match this signature. The Driver Client uses the USB Driver index (`drvIndex`) to specify the instance of the USB module that Host Stack or the Device Stack should open. The USB Driver should ignore the `intent` parameter. The function should return a driver handle. If the driver is not ready to be opened, it should return an invalid handle (`DRV_HANDLE_INVALID`). In such a case, the client will continue trying to open the driver by calling the Open function again. The driver may also fail to open for an invalid `index` parameter or if USB module is in an error condition.

When supporting Dual Role operation, both the Host Stack and Device Stack will call the Driver Open function in one application. The USB Driver must support multiple calls to the Open function in the same application. The Open function should be thread-safe.

Driver Close Function

The `close` member of the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` and the `DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE` structures should point to the USB Driver Close function. The signature of the Close function is as follows:

```
void (*close)(DRV_HANDLE handle);
```

The USB Driver Close function must match this signature. The Driver Client passes the handle obtained from the Driver Open function as a parameter to the close. The USB Host Stack or USB Device Stack will close the driver only when the stack is deinitialized (which is typically a rare case). The USB Driver should deallocate any client-related resources in the Close function. If

the specified driver handle is not valid, the Close function should not have any side effects. The USB Driver expects the Close function to be called from the context of the thread in which the driver was opened; therefore, this function *is not* expected to be thread-safe.

Driver Event Handler Set Function

The eventHandlerSet member of the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE and the DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structures should point to the USB Driver Event Handler Set function. The signature of the Event Handler Set function is as follows:

```
void (*eventHandlerSet)(DRV_HANDLE handle, uintptr_t hReferenceData, DRV_USB_EVENT_CALLBACK eventHandler);
```

The USB Driver Event Handler Set function must match this signature. The signature of the Client Event Handling function should match DRV_USB_EVENT_CALLBACK. The USB Driver calls this function when it must communicate USB events to the client. The client can set the eventHandler parameter to NULL if it does not want to receive USB Driver events. The client will receive Host mode events if the USB Driver is operating in Host mode. It will receive Device mode events if the USB Driver is operating in Device mode. The DRV_USB_EVENT type enumeration contains all the possible events that the USB Driver would generate. The following code example shows the enumeration.

```
// ****
/* USB Driver Events Enumeration
```

Summary:

Identifies the different events that the USB Driver provides.

Description:

Identifies the different events that the USB Driver provides. The USB Driver should be able to provide these events.

Remarks:

None.

```
*/
```

```
typedef enum
{
    /* Bus error occurred and was reported. This event can be generated in both
     * Host and Device mode. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_ERROR = 1,

    /* Host has issued a device Reset. This event occurs only in Device mode */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_RESET_DETECT,

    /* Resume detected while USB in suspend mode. This event can be generated in
     * both Host and Device mode. In Host mode, the events occurs when a remote
     * wakeup capable device has generated resume signaling. In Device mode,
     * this event will occur when the Host has issued resume signaling. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_RESUME_DETECT,

    /* This event is generated in Device mode only. It occurs when the Host
     * suspends the bus and the bus goes idle. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_IDLE_DETECT,

    /* This event is generated in Host mode and Device mode. In Host mode, this
     * event occurs when the device has stalled the Host. In Device mode, this
     * event occurs when the Host has accessed a stalled endpoint thus
     * triggering the device to send a STALL to the Host. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_STALL,

    /* This event is generated in Host mode and Device mode. In Device mode,
     * this event occurs when a SOF has been generated by the Host. In Host
     * mode, this event occurs when controller is about to generate an SOF.
     * */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_SOFTWARE_STALL,

    /* This event is generated in Device mode when the VBUS voltage is above
     * VBUS session valid. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_DEVICE_SESSION_VALID,

    /* This event is generated in Device mode when the VBUS voltage falls
     * below VBUS session valid. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_SOFTWARE_SESSION_VALID
};
```

```

    * below VBUS session valid. */
    DRV_USB_EVENT_DEVICE_SESSION_INVALID,
}

} DRV_USB_EVENT;

```

This completes the discussion on the Driver General Client Functions.

Opening the Driver

Provides information and examples for opening the driver.

Description

The USB Host Stack and the USB Device Stack must obtain a handle to the USB Driver to access the functionality of the driver. This handle is obtained through the USB Driver Open function. The DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE structure and DRV_USB_DEVICE_HOST_INTERFACE structure provide access to the USB Driver Open function through the open member of these structures. Calling the Open function may not return a valid driver handle the first time the function is called. In fact, the USB Driver will return an invalid driver handle until the driver is ready to be opened. The Host and the Device Stack call the Open function repetitively in a state machine, until the function returns a valid handle.

The USB Host Stack can open the USB Driver but can call its Host mode functions only if the USB Driver was initialized for Host mode or Dual Role operation. The USB Host Stack accesses the driver functions through the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE pointer that was provided to the Host Layer through the Host Stack initialization. The USB Device Stack can open the USB Driver but can call its Device mode functions only if the USB Driver was initialized for Device mode or Dual Role operation. The USB Device Stack accesses the driver functions through the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE pointer that was provided to the Host Layer through the Host Stack initialization

The following code example shows how the USB Host Layer opens the USB Driver.

```

/* This code example shows how the Host Layer open the HCD via the hcdInterface.
 * The driver handle is stored in hcdHandle member of the busObj data structure.
 * The busObj data structure Host Layer local data structure. The Host Layer
 * opens the HCD when the bus is enabled. This operation takes place in the
 * USB_HOST_BUS_STATE_ENABLING state. */

/* Note the Host Layer calls the Open function by accessing the open member of
 * the hcdInterface which is of the type DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE. Also note how
 * the function is called repetitively until the Open function returns a valid
 * handle. */

case USB_HOST_BUS_STATE_ENABLING:

    /* The bus is being enabled. Try opening the HCD */
    busObj->hcdHandle = busObj->hcdInterface->open(busObj->hcdIndex, DRV_IO_INTENT_EXCLUSIVE |
        DRV_IO_INTENT_NONBLOCKING | DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

    /* Validate the Open function status */
    if (DRV_HANDLE_INVALID == busObj->hcdHandle )
    {
        /* The driver may not open the first time. This is okay. We
         * should try opening it again. The state of bus is not
         * changed. */
    }

```

The following code example shows how the USB Device Layer opens the USB Driver.

```

/* This code example shows how the USB Device Layer calls the USBCD open
 * function to open the USBCD. The Device Layer accesses the USBCD Open function
 * through the driverInterface member of the usbDeviceInstanceState object. The
 * driverInterface member is a DRV_USB_DEVICE_INTERFACE type. The
 * usbDeviceInstanceState is a USB Device Layer local object. */

/* The Device Layer attempts to open the USBCD when it is initializing. Note how
 * the Device Layer advances to the next state only when the USBCD returns a
 * valid handle. */

switch(usbDeviceThisInstanceState->taskState)
{
    case USB_DEVICE_TASK_STATE_OPENING_USBCD:

```

```

/* Try to open the driver handle. This could fail if the driver is
 * not ready to be opened. */
usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle =
    usbDeviceThisInstance->driverInterface->open( usbDeviceThisInstance->driverIndex,
    DRV_IO_INTENT_EXCLUSIVE|DRV_IO_INTENT_NONBLOCKING|DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

/* Check if the driver was opened */
if(usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle != DRV_HANDLE_INVALID)
{
    /* Yes the driver could be opened. */

    /* Advance the state to the next state */
    usbDeviceThisInstance->taskState = USB_DEVICE_TASK_STATE_RUNNING;

    /* Update the USB Device Layer state to indicate that it can be
     * opened */
    usbDeviceThisInstance->usbDeviceInstanceState = SYS_STATUS_READY;
}

break;

```

USB Driver Host Mode Operation

Provides information on Host mode operation.

Description

The USB Driver operates or can operate in the Host mode when it is initialized for Host mode or Dual Role operation. When operating in Host mode, the USB Driver is also referred to as the Host Controller Driver (HCD). In Dual Role mode, the USB Driver will switch to Host mode when the USB Driver Host Root Hub Operation Enable function is called.

The USB Driver Client must perform these steps to operate the USB Driver in Host mode.

1. Open the USB Driver to obtain the driver handle.
2. Set the event handler.
3. Call the Root Hub Control function to obtain the speed of the root hub, the number of ports that the root hub supports, and the maximum current that the root hub VBUS can supply.
4. Calls the Root Hub Initialize function with an identifier parameter. This `identifier` parameter allows the Host Stack to uniquely identify the root hub when there are multiple root hubs.
5. The Driver Client will then enable the root hub operation and will wait until the root hub operation is enabled.
6. The Driver Client can now call the USB Driver Host mode functions.

The following sections explain Steps 2 through 6 in more detail.

Handling Host Mode Driver Events

Currently, the HCD does not provide any events to the client. The client can optionally register an event handler through the `eventHandlerSet` function pointer in the `DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE` structure. Future releases of the USB Driver may contain features that provide events to the Driver Client. Please refer to the following **Root Hub Operation** section for details on how the driver indicates device attach and detach to the client.

Root Hub Operation

A key feature of the HCD is the Root Hub Driver. The Root Hub Driver emulates hub operation in USB Driver software and provides a hub like interface to the USB Host Layer. The USB Host Layer treats the root hub like an external hub. This simplifies the implementation of USB Host Layer while supporting multiple devices through a hub. In that, the USB Host layer does not have to treat a device connected directly to the USB peripheral differently than a device connected to an external hub. The following code example shows how the USB Host Layer calls the root hub function to obtain information about the root hub.

```

/* This code example shows how the USB Host Layer calls the root hub functions to
 * obtain information about the root. The USB Host Layer first opens the HCD and
 * then accesses the root hub functions through the rootHubInterface member of
 * hcdInterface. rootHubInterface is of the type DRV_USB_ROOT_HUB_INTERFACE and
 * the hcdInterface is of the type of DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE. */

/* The code example shows how the Host Layer gets to know the root hub operation

```

```

* speed, number of root hub ports and the maximum amount of current that the
* root can supply. These function can be called only after HCD was opened and a
* valid driver handle obtained. */

case USB_HOST_BUS_STATE_ENABLING:

    /* The bus is being enabled. Try opening the HCD */
    busObj->hcdHandle = busObj->hcdInterface->open(busObj->hcdIndex, DRV_IO_INTENT_EXCLUSIVE |
        DRV_IO_INTENT_NONBLOCKING | DRV_IO_INTENT_READWRITE );

    /* Validate the Open function status */
    if (DRV_HANDLE_INVALID == busObj->hcdHandle)
    {
        /* The driver may not open the first time. This is okay. We
         * should try opening it again. The state of bus is not
         * changed. */
    }
    else
    {
        /* Update the bus root hub information with the
         * details of the controller. Get the bus speed, number of
         * ports, the maximum current that the HCD can supply,
         * pointer to the root hub port functions. */

        SYS_DEBUG_PRINT(SYS_ERROR_INFO,
            "\r\nUSB Host Layer: Bus %d Root Hub Driver Opened.", hcCount);

        busObj->rootHubInfo.speed =
            busObj->hcdInterface->rootHubInterface.rootHubSpeedGet(busObj->hcdHandle);

        busObj->rootHubInfo.ports =
            busObj->hcdInterface->rootHubInterface.rootHubPortNumbersGet(busObj->hcdHandle);

        busObj->rootHubInfo.power =
            busObj->hcdInterface->rootHubInterface.rootHubMaxCurrentGet(busObj->hcdHandle);

        busObj->rootHubInfo.rootHubPortInterface =
            busObj->hcdInterface->rootHubInterface.rootHubPortInterface;
    }

```

The USB Host Layer must initialize and enable the operation of the root hub. While initializing the Root Hub Driver, the Host layer will assign a unique identifier to the root hub. The root hub will return this value as the parent identifier while calling the USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate function. The USB Host Layer must then enable the operation of the root hub driver. This will cause the root hub driver to detect device attach and detach. The following code example shows how the USB Host Layer initializes and enables the root hub driver

```

/* The following code example show how the USB Host Layer initializes the root
 * hub and then enables the root hub operation. The
 * rootHubDevice->deviceIdentifier is a unique identifier that allows the USB
 * Host layer to identify this root hub. It is returned by the root hub driver
 * in the USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate() function as the parent identifier when the
 * device is connected to the root hub. */

/* The hcdHandle is the driver handle. The hcdInterface pointer is of the type
 * DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE and points to the HCD interface. */

```

```

busObj->hcdInterface->rootHubInterface.rootHubInitialize( busObj->hcdHandle ,
                                                               rootHubDevice->deviceIdentifier );
busObj->hcdInterface->rootHubInterface.rootHubOperationEnable( busObj->hcdHandle , true );

```

When a device is attached, the Root Hub Driver will implement the required settling attach settling delay and will then call the USB Host Layer's USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate function to enumerate the device. While calling this function, the root hub driver will provide the identifier that was provided to it in its initialize function. The USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate function will return an identifier which uniquely identifies the attached device. The root hub driver uses this value to identify the device to the Host when the USB_HOST_DeviceDenumereate function is called on device detach. The following code example shows how the Root Hub driver calls the USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate and the USB_HOST_DeviceDenumereate functions.

```

/* The following code shows how the root hub driver calls the
 * USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate() function in the device attach interrupt. As seen
 * here, the root hub returns the identifier that the USB Host Layer assigned to

```

```

* it the rootHubInitialize function call. The pUSBDrvObj->usbHostDeviceInfo
* variable contains this identifier. */

if(PLIB_USB InterruptFlagGet(usbID, USB_INT_ATTACH))
{
    /* We can treat this as a valid attach. We then clear the
     * detach flag and enable the detach interrupt. We enable
     * the Transaction interrupt */

    PLIB_USB InterruptFlagClear(usbID, USB_INT_HOST_DETACH);
    PLIB_USB InterruptEnable(usbID, USB_INT_HOST_DETACH);
    PLIB_USB InterruptEnable(usbID, USB_INT_TOKEN_DONE);

    /* Ask the Host layer to enumerate this device. While calling
     * this function, the UHD of the parent device which is the
     * root hub in this case.
     */
    pUSBDrvObj->attachedDeviceObjHandle = USB_HOST_DeviceEnumerate
        (pUSBDrvObj->usbHostDeviceInfo, 0);
}

/* The following code example shows how the root hub driver calls the
 * USB_HOST_DeviceDenumereate() function in the device detach interrupt. Note how
 * the attachedDeviceObjHandle that was assigned at the time of device
 * enumeration is returned to the Host Layer to let the Host know which device
 * is being detached. */

if((usbInterrupts & USB_INT_HOST_DETACH) && (enabledUSBInterrupts & USB_INT_HOST_DETACH))
{
    /* Perform other detach related handling */

    /* Ask the Host Layer to de-enumerate this device. */
    USB_HOST_DeviceDenumereate (pUSBDrvObj->attachedDeviceObjHandle);

    /* Disable the LS Direct Connect. It may have been enabled if the last
     * attach was for a Low-Speed device. */
    PLIB_USB_EP0LSDirectConnectDisable(pUSBDrvObj->usbID);

    /* Continue to perform detach handling */
}

```

Root Hub Port Operation

The HCD Root Hub Driver exposes a set of port related functions that allow the USB Host Layer to control the port. The most commonly used functions are the function to reset the port and get the port speed. In this case, this is the speed of the attached device. The following code example shows how the USB Host Layer calls the hubPortReset, hubPortResetIsComplete and hubPortSpeedGet port functions.

```

/* The following code shows an example of how the Host Layer called the
 * hubPortReset function to reset the port to which the device is connected.
 * The code proceeds with the port reset if no device on the bus is in an
 * enumeration state. It will then call the hubPortReset function of the parent
 * hub of the device. The parent hub, hubInterface member of deviceObj points to
 * this driver, can be the root hub or an external hub */

if(!busObj->deviceIsEnumerating)
{
    /* Remember which device is enumerating */
    busObj->enumeratingDeviceIdentifier = deviceObj->deviceIdentifier;

    /* Grab the flag */
    busObj->deviceIsEnumerating = true;

    /* Reset the device */
    deviceObj->hubInterface->hubPortReset( deviceObj->hubHandle, deviceObj->devicePort );
}

/* The following code example shows how the Host checks if the port reset

```

```

* operation has completed. If the reset operation has completed, the speed of
* the attached device can be obtained. The reset settling delay can then be
* started. */

case USB_HOST_DEVICE_STATE_WAITING_FOR_RESET_COMPLETE:

    /* Check if the reset has completed */
    if(deviceObj->hubInterface->hubPortResetIsComplete
        ( deviceObj->hubHandle ,deviceObj->devicePort ))
    {
        /* The reset has completed. We can also obtain the speed of the
         * device. We give a reset recovery delay to the device */

        deviceObj->speed = deviceObj->hubInterface->hubPortSpeedGet
                            (deviceObj->hubHandle, deviceObj->devicePort);

        deviceObj->deviceState = USB_HOST_DEVICE_STATE_START_RESET_SETTLING_DELAY;
    }
}

```

Opening and Closing a Pipe

The HCD client can open a pipe to the device after resetting the device. The USB Host Layer calls the hostPipeSetup function in the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure to open a pipe. The USB Host Layer must open a pipe to communicate to a specific endpoint on a target device. While opening the pipe, the USB Host Layer must specify parameters which specify the address of the target device, the type of the transfer that the pipe must support and the speed of the pipe. If the device is connected to a hub, the address of the hub must be specified. The HCD Pipe Setup function is not interrupt-safe. It should not be called in any event handler that executes in an interrupt context.

The Pipe Setup function returns a valid pipe handle if the pipe was opened successfully. Pipe creation may fail if the target device was disconnected or if there are insufficient resources to open the pipe. The pipe handle is then used along with the hostIRPSumit function to transfer data between the Host and the device. The following code shows example usage of a Pipe Open function.

```

/* The following code example shows how the Host Layer uses the hostPipeSetup
 * function to open a control pipe to the attached device. Most of the
 * parameters that are passed to this function become known when the device is
 * attached. The pipe handle is checked for validity after the hostPipeSetup
 * function call. */

if(busObj->timerExpired)
{
    busObj->busOperationsTimerHandle = SYS_TMR_HANDLE_INVALID;
    /* Settling delay has completed. Now we can open default address
     * pipe and get the configuration descriptor */

    SYS_DEBUG_PRINT(SYS_ERROR_INFO,
                    "\r\nUSB Host Layer: Bus %d Device Reset Complete.", busIndex);

    deviceObj->controlPipeHandle =
        deviceObj->hcdInterface->hostPipeSetup( deviceObj->hcdHandle,
                                                USB_HOST_DEFAULT_ADDRESS , 0 /* Endpoint */,
                                                deviceObj->hubAddress /* Address of the hub */,
                                                deviceObj->devicePort /* Address of the port */,
                                                USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_CONTROL, /* Type of pipe to open */
                                                0 /* bInterval */, 8 /* Endpoint Size */, deviceObj->speed );

    if(DRV_USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE_INVALID == deviceObj->controlPipeHandle)
    {
        /* We need a pipe else we cannot proceed */
        SYS_DEBUG_PRINT(SYS_ERROR_DEBUG,
                        "\r\nUSB Host Layer: Bus %d Could not open control pipe. Device not supported.", busIndex);
    }
}

```

An open pipe consumes computational and memory resources and must therefore must be closed if it will not be used. This is especially true of pipes to a device that is detached. The Host Layer calls the hostPipeClose function in the DRV_USB_HOST_INTERFACE structure to close the pipe. The pipe to be closed is specified by the pipe handle. The Pipe Close

function can be called from an event handler. It is interrupt safe. Closing a pipe will cancel all pending transfers on that pipe. The IRP callback for such canceled transfers will be called with the status USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED. The following code example shows an example of closing the pipe.

```
/* The following code example shows an example of how the Host Layer calls the
 * hostPipeClose function to close an open pipe. Pipe should be closed if it
 * will not be used. An open pipe consumes memory resources. In this example, the
 * Host Layer closes the pipe if it was not able successfully submit an IRP to
 * this pipe. */

/* Submit the IRP */
if(USB_ERROR_NONE != deviceObj->hcdInterface->hostIRPSubmit
    ( deviceObj->controlPipeHandle, & (deviceObj->controlTransferObj.controlIRP) ))
{
    /* We need to be able to send the IRP. We move the device to
     * an error state. Close the pipe and send an event to the
     * application. The assigned address will be released when
     * the device is unplugged. */

    SYS_DEBUG_PRINT(SYS_ERROR_DEBUG,
        "\r\nUSB Host Layer: Bus %d Set Address IRP failed. Device not supported.", busIndex);

    /* Move the device to error state */
    deviceObj->deviceState = USB_HOST_DEVICE_STATE_ERROR;

    /* Close the pipe as we are about mark this device as unsupported. */
    deviceObj->hcdInterface->hostPipeClose(deviceObj->controlPipeHandle);
}
```

Transferring Data to an Attached Device

The USB Host Layer, the HCD client, needs to transfer data to the attached device to understand the device capabilities and to operate the device. The HCD uses a concept of Input Output Request Packet (IRP) to transfer data to and from the attached device. IRPs are transported over pipes which are setup by calling the USB Driver Pipe Setup function.

A Host IRP is a USB_HOST_IRP type data structure. The IRP is created by the Host layer and submitted to the HCD for processing through the hostIRPSubmit function. At the time of submitting the IRP, the pipe over which the IRP must be transported is specified. The data request in the IRP is transported using the attributes of pipe. When an IRP is submitted to the HCD, it is owned by the HCD and cannot be modified by the Host Layer until the HCD issues an IRP callback. The HCD will issue the IRP callback when it has completed or terminated processing of the IRP.

An IRP does not have its own transfer type. It inherits the properties of the pipe to which it is submitted. Hence an IRP becomes a control transfer IRP if it was submitted to a control transfer pipe. A pipe allows multiple IRPs to be queued. This allows the Host Layer to submit IRPs to a pipe even while an IRP is being processed on the pipe. The HCD will process an IRP in the order that it was received. The following code example shows the USB_HOST_IRP data structure.

```
/* The following code example shows the USB_HOST_IRP structure. The Host Layer
 * uses this structure to place data transfer requests on a pipe. */

typedef struct _USB_HOST_IRP
{
    /* Points to the 8 byte setup command packet in case this is a IRP is
     * scheduled on a CONTROL pipe. Should be NULL otherwise */
    void * setup;

    /* Pointer to data buffer */
    void * data;

    /* Size of the data buffer */
    unsigned int size;

    /* Status of the IRP */
    USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS status;

    /* Request specific flags */
    USB_HOST_IRP_FLAG flags;

    /* User data */
    uintptr_t userData;
```

```

/* Pointer to function to be called when IRP is terminated. Can be NULL, in
 * which case the function will not be called. */
void (*callback)(struct _USB_HOST_IRP * irp);

*****
* These members of the IRP should not be
* modified by client
*****/
uintptr_t privateData[7];

} USB_HOST_IRP;

```

The `setup` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure must point to the 8 byte setup packet for control transfers. The driver will send this 8 byte data in the Setup phase of the control transfer. It can be `NULL` for non-control transfers. This member is only considered if the IRP is submitted to a control transfer pipe. It is ignored for non-control transfer pipes. The structure of the setup command should match that specified in the USB 2.0 specification.

The `data` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure points to a data buffer. This data buffer will contain the data that needs to be sent to the device for data stage of a OUT transfer, or it will contain the data that was received from the device during an IN transfer. Any hardware specific cache coherency and address alignment requirements must be considered while allocating this data buffer. The Driver Client should not modify or examine the contents of the IRP after the IRP has been submitted and is being processed. It can be examined after the driver has released the IRP.

The `size` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure contains the size of the transfer. for Bulk transfers, the size of the transfer can exceed the size of the transaction (which is equal to size of the endpoint reported by the device). The HCD in such a case will split up the transfer into transactions. This process does not require external intervention. For control transfers, the size of the transfer is specified in the setup packet (pointed to by the `setup` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure). The driver will itself process the Setup, Data (if required) and Handshake stages of control transfer. This process again does not require external intervention. For interrupt and isochronous transfers, the size of transfer specified in the IRP cannot exceed the size of the transaction. If size is specified as 0, then the driver will send a zero length packet. The `size` parameter of the IRP is updated by the driver when IRP processing is completed. This will contain the size of the completed transfer.

The `status` member of the IRP provides the completion status of the IRP and should be checked only when the IRP processing has completed. This is indicated by the driver calling the IRP callback function. The IRP status is a `USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS` type. The following code example shows the different possible values of the `status` member and an example of submit a control transfer IRP.

```

/* The following code shows an example of how the Host Layer populates
 * the IRP object and then submits it. IRP_Callback function is called when an
 * IRP has completed processing. The status of the IRP at completion can be
 * checked in the status flag. The size field of the irp will contain the amount
 * of data transferred. */

void IRP_Callback(USB_HOST_IRP * irp)
{
    /* irp is pointing to the IRP for which the callback has occurred. In most
     * cases this function will execute in an interrupt context. The application
     * should not perform any hardware access or interrupt unsafe operations in
     * this function. */

    switch(irp->status)
    {
        case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ERROR_UNKNOWN:
            /* IRP was terminated due to an unknown error */
            break;

        case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED:
            /* IRP was terminated by the application */
            break;

        case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ERROR_BUS:
            /* IRP was terminated due to a bus error */
            break;

        case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ERROR_DATA:
            /* IRP was terminated due to data error */
            break;
    }
}

```

```

    case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ERROR_NAK_TIMEOUT:
        /* IRP was terminated because of a NAK timeout */
        break;
```

```

    case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_ERROR_STALL:
        /* IRP was terminated because of a device sent a STALL */
        break;
```

```

    case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_COMPLETED:
        /* IRP has been completed */
        break;
```

```

    case USB_HOST_IRP_STATUS_COMPLETED_SHORT:
        /* IRP has been completed but the amount of data processed was less
         * than requested. */
        break;
```

```

default:
    break;
```

 }

}

/* In the following code example the a control transfer IRP is submitted to a
 * control pipe. The setup parameter of the IRP points to the Setup command of
 * the control transfer. The direction of the data stage is specified by the
 * Setup packet. */

USB_HOST_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE controlPipe;
USB_SETUP_PACKET setup;
uint8_t controlTransferData[32];

irp.setup = setup;
irp.data = controlTransferData;
irp.size = 32;
irp.flags = USB_HOST_IRP_FLAG_NONE ;
irp.userData = &someApplicationObject;
irp.callback = IRP_Callback;

result = DRV_USBFS_HOST_IRPSubmit(controlPipeHandle, &irp);

switch(result)
{
 case USB_ERROR_NONE:
 /* The IRP was submitted successfully */
 break;

```

    case USB_ERROR_HOST_PIPE_INVALID:
        /* The specified pipe handle is not valid */
        break;
```

```

    case USB_ERROR_OSAL_FUNCTION:
        /* An error occurred while trying to grab mutex */
        break;
```

```

default:
    break;
```

}

The `flags` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure specifies flags which affect the behavior of the IRP. The `USB_HOST_IRP_FLAG` enumeration specifies the available option. The `USB_HOST_IRP_FLAG_SEND_ZLP` causes the driver to add a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to the data stage of the transfer when the transfer size is an exact multiple of the endpoint size. The `USB_HOST_IRP_WAIT_FOR_ZLP` flag will cause the driver to wait for a ZLP from the device in a case where the size of data received thus far in the transfer is an exact multiple of the endpoint size.

The `callback` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure points to a function which the driver calls when the IRP processing is completed. The Driver Client must implement this function and assign the pointer to this function to the `callback` member of the

IRP. Every IRP can have its own callback function or one common callback function could be used. The callback function will execute in an interrupt context. The Driver Client should not execute interrupt unsafe, blocking, or computationally intensive operations in the callback function. The client can call hostIRPSubmit function in the IRP callback function to submit another IRP or resubmit the same IRP. The client can check the status and size of the IRP in the callback function.

The `userData` member of the `USB_HOST_IRP` structure can be used by the client to associate a client specific context with the Host. This context can then be used by the client, in the IRP callback function to identify the context in which the IRP was submitted. This member is particularly useful if the client wants to implement one callback function for all IRPs.

The `privateData` member of the IRP is used by the driver and should not be accessed or manipulated by the Driver Client. The following code examples show usage of IRPs to transfer data between the Host and the attached device and along with the different flags.

```
/* The following code shows an example of submitting an IRP to send data
 * to a device. In this example we will request the driver to send a ZLP after
 * sending the last transaction. The driver will send the ZLP only if the size
 * of the transfer is a multiple of the endpoint size. This is not a control
 * transfer IRP. So the setup field of the IRP will be ignored. */
```

```
USB_HOST_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE bulkOUTPipeHandle;
uint8_t data[128];

irp.data = data;
irp.size = 128;
irp.flags = USB_HOST_IRP_FLAG_SEND_ZLP ;
irp.userData = &someApplicationObject;
irp.callback = IRP_Callback;

result = DRV_USBFS_HOST_IPRSubmit( bulkOUTPipeHandle, &irp );
```

```
/* The following code shows an example of submitting an IRP to receive
 * data to a device. In this example we will request the driver to wait for a
 * ZLP after receiving the last transaction. The driver will wait for the ZLP
 * only if the size of the transfer is a multiple of the endpoint size. This is
 * not a control transfer IRP. So the setup field of the IRP will be ignored.
 * */
```

```
USB_HOST_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
USB_HOST_PIPE_HANDLE bulkINPipeHandle;
uint8_t data[128];

irp.data = data;
irp.size = 128;
irp.flags = USB_HOST_IRP_FLAG_WAIT_FOR_ZLP ;
irp.userData = &someApplicationObject;
irp.callback = IRP_Callback;

result = DRV_USBFS_HOST_IPRSubmit( bulkINPipeHandle, &irp );
```

USB Driver Device Mode Operation

Provides information on Device mode operation.

Description

The USB Driver operates can operate in the Device mode when it is initialized for Device mode or Dual Role operation. When operating in Device mode, the USB Driver is also referred to as the USB Controller Driver (USBCD). In Dual-Role mode, the USB Driver will switch to USBCD mode when the USB Driver Device Attach function is called.

The USB Driver Client must perform these steps to operate the USB Driver in Device mode.

1. Open the USB Driver to obtain the driver handle.
2. Set the event handler.

3. Wait for the application to attach the device to the bus.
 4. Enable Endpoint 0 and respond to USB Host Enumeration requests.
 5. Allow the application and function drivers to enable other endpoints and communicate with the Host.
- The following sections discuss these operations in more detail.

General Device Mode Operations

Provides information on general Device mode operations.

Description

This section describes the USBCD operations such as setting event handlers and attaching and detaching the device.

Handling Device Mode Driver Events

The Device Layer will call the USBCD eventHandlerSet function to register the Device mode event handling function. The USBCD generates various events that indicate different states of the USB. These events are defined by the DRV_USB_EVENT enumeration. The following code example shows how the Device Layer registers the driver event handling function.

```
/* This code example shows the implementation of the USB_DEVICE_Attach and the
 * USB_DEVICE_Detach function. These functions are actually macro that map
 * directly deviceAttach and the deviceDetach function of the driverInterface
 * member of the deviceClient Object (which is the macro parameter) */

#define USB_DEVICE_Attach( x ) ((USB_DEVICE_OBJ *)x)->driverInterface->deviceAttach
                           ( ((USB_DEVICE_OBJ *)x))->usbCDHandle)
#define USB_DEVICE_Detach( x ) ((USB_DEVICE_OBJ *)x)->driverInterface->deviceDetach
                           ( ((USB_DEVICE_OBJ *)x))->usbCDHandle)
```

If the driver is operating in interrupt mode, the client event handling function will execute in an interrupt context. The client should not call interrupt unsafe, computationally intensive or blocking functions in the event handler. The following code shows a small example of the Device Layer USBCD Event Handler:

```
/* This code example shows a partial implementation of the USB Device Layer
 * event handler. Note how the code type casts the referenceHandle parameter to
 * a USB_DEVICE_OBJ type. This referenceHandle is the same value that the Device
 * Layer passed when the event handler was set. This now easily allows one
 * implementation of the event handling code to be used by multiple Device
 * Layer instances. */

void _USB_DEVICE_EventHandler
(
    uintptr_t referenceHandle,
    DRV_USB_EVENT eventType,
    void * eventData
)
{
    USB_DEVICE_OBJ* usbDeviceThisInstance;
    USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR * ptrMasterDescTable;
    USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOF SOFFrameNumber;

    usbDeviceThisInstance = (USB_DEVICE_OBJ *)referenceHandle;

    /* Handle events, only if this instance is in initialized state */
    if( usbDeviceThisInstance->usbDeviceInstanceState <= SYS_STATUS_UNINITIALIZED )
    {
        /* The device should anyway not be attached when the Device Layer is
         * not initialized. If we receive driver event when the Device Layer is
         * not initialized, there is nothing we can do but ignore them. */
        return;
    }

    switch(eventType)
    {
        case DRV_USB_EVENT_RESET_DETECT:
            /* Clear the suspended state */
    }
}
```

```

    usbDeviceThisInstance->usbDeviceStatusStruct.isSuspended = false;

    /* Cancel any IRP already submitted in the RX direction. */
    DRV_USB_DEVICE_IRPCancelAll( usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle,
                                 controlEndpointRx );

    /* Code not shown for the sake of brevity. */

}
}

```

In the previous code example, the Device Layer (the Driver Client) sets the `hReferenceData` parameter, of the Event Handler Set function, to point to a local object. This pointer is returned to the Device Layer, in the event handler when an event occurs. For multiple instances of USB drivers in one application, this allows the Device Layer to easily associate a Device Layer specific context to the driver instance, thus simplifying implementation of the event handler.

Attaching and Detaching the Device

The USB Device Layer calls the USBCD `deviceAttach` and `deviceDetach` functions to attach and detach the device on the USB. The USB Device Layer should be ready to handle events which would occur when the device is attached on the bus. Hence the USB Device Layer should register the USBCD event handler before the attach function is called. The `deviceAttach` and `deviceDetach` functions can be called in an interrupt context. These functions are respectively called when the USB Device application detects a valid VBUS voltage and when the VBUS voltage is not valid.

Setting the Device Address

The USB Device Layer will call the USBCD `deviceAddressSet` function to set the USB address of the device. The Device Layer will do this when it receives the Set Address control request from the Host. The USBCD will reset the device address to '0' when it has received reset signaling from the root hub. The following code example shows how the USB Device Layer calls this function.

```

/* The following code example shows how the USB Device Layer calls the
 * DRV_USB_DEVICE_AddressSet function to set the address. The
 * DRV_USB_DEVICE_AddressSet function is actually a macro that calls the
 * deviceAddressSet function of the driverInterface of usbDeviceThisInstance
 * object. The usbDeviceThisInstance is Device Layer object.
 *
 * As seen in this code, the Device Layer calls the address set function when
 * the it a pending set address control request from the Host has completed. */

```

```

void _USB_DEVICE_Ep0TransmitCompleteCallback(USB_DEVICE_IRP * handle)
{
    USB_DEVICE_IRP * irpHandle = (USB_DEVICE_IRP *)handle;
    USB_DEVICE_OBJ * usbDeviceThisInstance;
    USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_STRUCT * controlTransfer;

    usbDeviceThisInstance = (USB_DEVICE_OBJ *)irpHandle->userData;
    controlTransfer = &(usbDeviceThisInstance->controlTransfer);

    if(irpHandle->status == USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED)
    {
        return;
    }

    if(usbDeviceThisInstance->usbDeviceStatusStruct.setAddressPending)
    {
        DRV_USB_DEVICE_AddressSet(usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle,
                                  usbDeviceThisInstance->deviceAddress);
        usbDeviceThisInstance->usbDeviceStatusStruct.setAddressPending = false;
    }

    /* Code not shown for the sake of brevity */
}

```

Device Current Speed and SOF Number

The USB Device Layer will call the USBCD `deviceCurrentSpeedGet` function to know the speed at which the device is attached to the USB. This allows the Device Layer to select the correct endpoint settings at the time of processing the Set Configuration

request issued by the Host. The USB Device Layer will call the deviceSOFNumberGet function to return the SOF number at the time of the SOF event.

Device Remote Wake-up

The USB Device Layer will call the USBCD deviceRemoteWakeUpStop and deviceRemoteWakeUpStart functions to stop and start remote signaling. The Device layer application will call the USB Device Layer Stop and Start Remote Wakeup Signaling functions to remotely let the root hub know that the device is ready to be woken up. The timing of the remote signaling is controlled by the Device Layer. The client should call the remote wakeup function only when the device is suspended by the Host.

Device Endpoint Operations

Provides information on Device Endpoint operations.

Description

The UBSCD Endpoint functions allow the Driver Client to enable, disable, stall and clear the stall condition on an endpoint. The client submits requests to transmit and receive data from the USB Host on an endpoint.

Endpoint Enable and Disable functions

The USBCD client must enable an endpoint it must use the endpoint for communicating with the USB Host. The client will call the USBCD deviceEndpointEnable function to enable the endpoint. While calling this function, the client must specify the endpoint address, the transfer type to be processed on this endpoint and the maximum size of a transaction on this endpoint. This function is thread-safe when called in an RTOS application. The USBCD allows an endpoint to be accessed by one thread only. The USB Device Layer and the device function drivers will enable the endpoint when the Host sets the device configuration. The USBCD deviceEndpointIsEnabled function is available to check if an endpoint is enabled. The following code example shows how the USB Device Layer enables the device endpoint.

```
/* The following code example shows the USB Device Layer enables Endpoint 0 to
 * prepare for the enumeration process after it has received reset signaling
 * from the Host. The Device Layer calls the deviceEndpointEnable function to
 * to enable the endpoint. The driverInterface member of the
 * usbDeviceThisInstance structure points to the USB Device Mode Driver Common
 * Interface. */

void _USB_DEVICE_EventHandler(
{
    uintptr_t referenceHandle,
    DRV_USB_EVENT eventType,
    void * eventData
}
{
    /* Code not shown due to space constraints */

    switch(eventType)
    {
        case DRV_USB_EVENT_RESET_DETECT:

            /* Clear the suspended state */
            usbDeviceThisInstance->usbDeviceStatusStruct.isSuspended = false;

            /* Cancel any IRP already submitted in the RX direction. */
            DRV_USB_DEVICE_IRPCancelAll( usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle,
                                         controlEndpointRx );

            /* Cancel any IRP already submitted in the TX direction. */
            DRV_USB_DEVICE_IRPCancelAll( usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle,
                                         controlEndpointTx );

            /* Deinitialize all function drivers.*/
            _USB_DEVICE_DeInitializeAllFunctionDrivers ( usbDeviceThisInstance );

            /* Disable all endpoints except for EP0.*/
            DRV_USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisableAll(usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle);
    }
}
```

```

/* Enable EP0 endpoint in RX direction */
(void)usbDeviceThisInstance->driverInterface->deviceEndpointEnable
    (usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle,
     controlEndpointTx, USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_CONTROL, USB_DEVICE_EP0_BUFFER_SIZE);

/* Code not shown due to space constraints */

break;
}
}

```

The USB Device Layer and the Function drivers will disable an endpoint when the Host sets a zero-device configuration or when the Host resets the device. The USBCD deviceEndpointDisable function disables an endpoint. When an endpoint is disabled, it does not accept requests for Host communication. Disabling an endpoint does not cancel any communication requests that have been submitted on the endpoint. These requests must be canceled explicitly.

Device Endpoint Stall and Stall Clear

The USBCD client can call the deviceEndpointStall and deviceEndpointStallClear functions to stall and clear the stall on an endpoint respectively. The USB Device Layer and function driver may stall endpoint to indicate error or to indicate a protocol state. The endpoint stall condition may be cleared in response to a USB Host Clear Feature request. Stalling or clearing the stall on an endpoint will cause all communication requests on the endpoint to be canceled. The function calls are thread safe and interrupt safe. The deviceEndpointIsStalled function is also available to check if an endpoint is in a stalled state. The following code example shows how the USB Device Layer calls these functions to stall and clear the stall on an endpoint.

```

/* The following code example shows how the USB Device Layer calls the driver
 * endpoint stall function (deviceEndpointStall) to stall an endpoint when the a
 * Host send a Set Feature request with feature selector set to endpoint halt.
 * The endpoint to be halted is identified in the setup packet and is identified
 * in this code example as usbEndpoint. Also shown is how the stall clear
 * (deviceEndpointStallClear) and stall status check (deviceEndpointIsStalled)
 * functions are called. */

/* The driverInterface member of the usbDeviceThisInstance structure is a
 * pointer to the USB Driver Common Interface. */

void _USB_DEVICE_ProcessStandardEndpointRequest
(
    USB_DEVICE_OBJ * usbDeviceThisInstance,
    uint8_t interfaceNumber,
    USB_SETUP_PACKET * setupPkt
)
{
    USB_ENDPOINT usbEndpoint;
    usbEndpoint = setupPkt->bEPID;

    if( setupPkt->bRequest == USB_REQUEST_GET_STATUS )
    {
        usbDeviceThisInstance->getStatusResponse.status = 0x00;
        usbDeviceThisInstance->getStatusResponse.endPointHalt
            = usbDeviceThisInstance->driverInterface->deviceEndpointIsStalled
            (usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle, usbEndpoint );

        USB_DEVICE_ControlSend( (USB_DEVICE_HANDLE)usbDeviceThisInstance,
                               (uint8_t *)&usbDeviceThisInstance->getStatusResponse, 2 );
    }
    else if( setupPkt->bRequest == USB_REQUEST_CLEAR_FEATURE )
    {
        if( setupPkt->wValue == USB_FEATURE_SELECTOR_ENDPOINT_HALT )
        {
            usbDeviceThisInstance->driverInterface->deviceEndpointStallClear
            (usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle, usbEndpoint );
            USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus( (USB_DEVICE_HANDLE)usbDeviceThisInstance,
                                     USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK );
        }
    }
    else if (setupPkt->bRequest == USB_REQUEST_SET_FEATURE )
    {

```

```

    if( setupPkt->wValue == USB_FEATURE_SELECTOR_ENDPOINT_HALT )
    {
        usbEndpoint = setupPkt->bEPID;
        usbDeviceThisInstance->driverInterface->deviceEndpointStall
            (usbDeviceThisInstance->usbCDHandle, usbEndpoint );
        USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus((USB_DEVICE_HANDLE)usbDeviceThisInstance,
                                USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS_OK );
    }
}

/* Additional code is not shown due to space constraints */
}

```

Transferring Data to the Host

Provides information on transferring data to the Host.

Description

The USB Device Layer, the USBCD client, needs to transfer data to the Host in response to enumeration requests for general operation on the device. The USB uses a concept of Input Output Request Packet (IRP) to transfer data to and from the Host. IRPs are transported over endpoints which are enabled by calling the USBCD Endpoint Enable function.

A Device IRP is a USB_DEVICE_IRP type data structure. The IRP is created by the Device Layer and submitted to the USBCD for processing through the deviceIRPSubmit function. At the time of submitting the IRP, the endpoint over which the IRP must be transported is specified. The data request in the IRP is transported using the attributes of the endpoint. When an IRP is submitted to the USBCD, it is owned by the USBCD and cannot be modified by the Device Layer until the USBCD issues an IRP callback. The USBCD will issue the IRP callback when it has completed or terminated processing of the IRP.

An IRP does not have its own transfer type. It inherits the properties of the endpoint to which it is submitted. Hence an IRP becomes a control transfer IRP if it was submitted to a control endpoint. An endpoint allows multiple IRPs to be queued. This allows the Device Layer to submit IRPs to an endpoint even while an IRP is being processed on the endpoint. The USBCD will process an IRP in the order that it was received. The following code example shows the USB_DEVICE_IRP data structure:

```

/* This code example shows the USB_DEVICE_IRP structure. The Device Layer
 * uses such a structure to transfer data through the driver. A structure of
 * this type is allocated by the Device Layer and the other function drivers and
 * passed to the deviceIRPSubmit function. */

typedef struct _USB_DEVICE_IRP
{
    /* Pointer to the data buffer */
    void * data;

    /* Size of the data buffer */
    unsigned int size;

    /* Status of the IRP */
    USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS status;

    /* IRP Callback. If this is NULL, then there is no callback generated */
    void (*callback)(struct _USB_DEVICE_IRP * ipr);

    /* Request specific flags */
    USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG flags;

    /* User data */
    uintptr_t userData;

    *****
    * The following members should not
    * be modified by the client
    *****
    uint32_t privateData[3];
}

USB_DEVICE_IRP;

```

The data member of the USB_DEVICE_IRP structure points to a data buffer. This data buffer will contain the data that needs to be sent to the Host for the data stage of an IN transfer. For an OUT transfer, it will contain the data that was received from the Host. Any hardware specific cache coherency and address alignment requirements must be considered while allocating this data buffer. The Driver Client should not modify or examine the contents of the IRP after the IRP has been submitted and is being processed. It can be examined after the driver has released the IRP.

The size member of the USB_DEVICE_IRP structure specifies the size of the data buffer. The transfer will end when the device has sent or received size number of bytes. While sending data to the Host, the IRP size can exceed the size of the transaction (which is equal to the size of the endpoint). The USBCD in such a case will split up the transfer into transactions. This process does not require external intervention. The driver uses receive and transmit IRPs to process control transfers. When the driver receives a Setup packet, the IRP completion status would be USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS. The Driver Client should then use additional receive and transmit IRPs to complete the control transfer.

For interrupt and isochronous transfers, the size of transfer specified in the IRP cannot exceed the size of the transaction. If size is specified as 0, then the driver will send or expect a zero length packet. The size parameter of the IRP is updated by the driver when IRP processing is completed. This will contain the size of the completed transfer.

The status member of the IRP provides the completion status of the IRP and should be checked only when the IRP processing has completed. This is indicated by the driver calling the IRP callback function. The IRP status is a USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS type. The following code example shows the different possible values of the status member and example usage of IRPs to transfer data between the device and the Host.

```
/* The following code shows example usage of the device IRP. The submit status
 * of the IRP is available when IRP submit function returns. The completion
 * status of the IRP is available when the IRP has terminated and the IRP
 * callback function is invoked. The IRP callback
 * function shown in this example shows the possible complete status of the IRP.
 * The end application may or may not handle all the cases. Multiple IRPs can be
 * queued on an endpoint. */
```

```
void IRP_Callback(USB_DEVICE_IRP * irp)
{
    /* irp is pointing to the IRP for which the callback has occurred. In most
     * cases this function will execute in an interrupt context. The application
     * should not perform any hardware access or interrupt unsafe operations in
     * this function. */

    switch(irp->status)
    {
        case USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_TERMINATED_BY_HOST:
            /* The IRP was aborted because the Host cleared the stall on the
             * endpoint */
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED_ENDPOINT_HALT:
            /* IRP was aborted because the endpoint halted */
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ABORTED:
            /* USB Device IRP was aborted by the function driver */
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_ERROR:
            /* An error occurred on the bus when the IRP was being processed */
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_COMPLETED:
            /* The IRP was completed */
            break;

        case USB_DEVICE_IRP_STATUS_COMPLETED_SHORT:
            /* The IRP was completed but the amount of data received was less
             * than the requested size */
            break;

        default:
            break;
    }
}
```

```
        }

/*
 * In the following example, the IRP is submitted to Endpoint 0x84. This is
 * interpreted as an IN direction endpoint (MSB of 0x84 is 1) and Endpoint 4.
 * The data contained in source will be sent to the USB Host. Assuming
 * the endpoint size is 64, the 130 bytes of data in this case will be sent to
 * the Host in three transaction of 64, 64 and 2 bytes. A transaction completes
 * when the Host polls (sends an IN token) the device. The callback function
 * will then be called indicating the completion status of the IRP. The application
 * should not modify the privateData field of the IRP. If the IRP was submitted
 * successfully, the buffer will be owned by the driver until the IRP callback
 * function has been called. Because the size of the transfer is not a multiple
 * of the endpoint size, the IRP flag must be set
 * USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_COMPLETE. This directs the driver to not perform any
 * explicit signaling to the Host to indicate end of transfer. The last packet
 * in this case is a short packet and this signals the end of the transfer. */

```

```
USB_DEVICE_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
uint8_t source[130];

irp.data = source;
irp.size = 130;
irp.called = IRP_Callback;
flags = USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_COMPLETE;
userData = &someApplicationObject;

result = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_IRPSubmit(driverHandle, 0x84, &irp);

switch(result)
{
    case USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID:
        /* This can happen if the driverHandle is invalid */
        break;

    case USB_ERROR_DEVICE_IRP_IN_USE:
        /* This can happen if the IRP is being resubmitted while it is still in
         * process (it was submitted before but processing has not completed */
        break;

    case USB_ERROR_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_INVALID:
        /* The endpoint to which this IRP is being submitted is not provisioned
         * in the system. This is controlled by DRV_USBFS_ENDPOINTS_NUMBER
         * configuration parameter. */
        break;

    case USB_ERROR_ENDPOINT_NOT_CONFIGURED:
        /* The endpoint to which this IRP is being submitted is not enabled. It
         * must be enabled by calling the DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_EndpointEnable()
         * function. */
        break;

    case USB_ERROR_PARAMETER_INVALID:
        /* The USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_PENDING flag was specified but the
         * transfer size is not a multiple of the endpoint size. If the IRP was
         * submitted to a receive endpoint, this error can occur if the size is
         * not a multiple of the endpoint size. */
        break;

    case USB_ERROR_OSAL_FUNCTION:
        /* An error occurred while trying to grab a mutex. This is applicable
         * when the driver is running with a RTOS. */
        break;

    case USB_ERROR_NONE:
```

```

/* The IRP was submitted successfully. */
break;

default:
break;
}

/* The following code example shows how an IRP is submitted to an OUT endpoint.
* In this case data will be pointing to a buffer where the received data will
* be stored. Note that the size of the IRP should be a multiple of the endpoint
* size. The flags parameter is ignored in the data receive case. The IRP
* terminates when the specified size of bytes has been received (the Host sends
* OUT packets) or when a short packet has been received. */

```

```

USB_DEVICE_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
uint8_t destination[128];

irp.data = destination;
irp.size = 128;
irp.called = IRP_Callback;
userData = &someApplicationObject;

result = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_IRPSubmit(driverHandle, 0x04, &irp);

```

For IRPs submitted to an Interrupt or Isochronous endpoints, the driver will always send either the less than or equal to the maximum endpoint packet size worth of bytes in a transaction. The application could either submit an IRP per Interrupt/Isochronous polling interval or it could submit one IRP for multiple polling intervals.

The `flags` member of the `USB_DEVICE_IRP` structure specifies flags which affect the behavior of the IRP. The `USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG` enumeration specifies the available option. The `USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_COMPLETE` causes the driver to add a Zero Length Packet (ZLP) to the data stage of the IN transfer when the transfer size is an exact multiple of the endpoint size. If the transfer size is not a multiple of the endpoint size, no ZLP will be sent. The `USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_PENDING` flag will cause the driver to not send a ZLP in a case where the size of the IN transfer is an exact multiple of the endpoint size. The following code example demonstrates this.

```

/* In the following code example, the IRP is submitted to an IN endpoint whose size
* is 64. The transfer size is 128, which is an exact multiple of the endpoint
* size. The flag is set to USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_COMPLETE. The driver
* will send two transactions of 64 bytes each and will then automatically send a
* Zero Length Packet (ZLP), thus completing the transfer. The IRP callback will
* be invoked when the ZLP transaction has completed. */

```

```

USB_DEVICE_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
uint8_t source[128];

irp.data = source;
irp.size = 128;
irp.called = IRP_Callback;
flags = USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_COMPLETE;
userData = &someApplicationObject;

result = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_IRPSubmit(driverHandle, 0x84, &irp);

/* In the following code example, the IRP is submitted to an IN endpoint whose size
* is 64. The transfer size is 128, which is an exact multiple of the endpoint
* size. The flag is set to USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_PENDING. The driver will
* send two transactions of 64 bytes each but will not send a ZLP. The USB Host
* can then consider that there is more data pending in the transfer. The IRP
* callback will be invoked when the two transactions have completed. */

```

```

USB_DEVICE_IRP irp;
USB_ERROR result;
uint8_t source[128];

irp.data = source;
irp.size = 128;

```

```
irp.called = IRP_Callback;
flags = USB_DEVICE_IRP_FLAG_DATA_COMPLETE;
userData = &someApplicationObject;

result = DRV_USBFS_DEVICE_IRPSubmit(driverHandle, 0x84, &irp);
```

The `callback` member of the `USB_DEVICE_IRP` structure points to a function which the driver calls when the IRP processing is completed. The Driver Client must implement this function and assign the pointer to this function to the `callback` member of the IRP. Every IRP can have its own callback function or one common callback function could be used. The callback function will execute in an interrupt context. The Driver Client should not execute interrupt unsafe, blocking or computationally intensive operations in the callback function. The client can call `deviceIRPSumit` function in the IRP callback function to submit another IRP or resubmit the same IRP. The client can check the status and size of the IRP in the callback function.

The `userData` member of the `USB_DEVICE_IRP` structure can be used by the client to associate a client specific context with the Host. This context can then be used by the client, in the IRP callback function to identify the context in which the IRP was submitted. This member is particularly useful if the client wants to implement one callback function for all IRPs.

The `privateData` member of the IRP is used by the driver and should not be accessed or manipulated by the Driver Client.

Driver Signing and Windows 8 (for v1.08)

This section provides information on driver signing with Window 8.

Description

This section provides information related to USB driver signatures, the types of signatures needed for the different versions of Windows operating system, and how to get a signed driver package.

What are "Signed" Drivers?

Provides a description of signed drivers.

Description

Most USB drivers operate in what is known as "Kernel mode" on Windows-based personal computers (PC). Kernel mode drivers have low-level access to the PC and its resources. This low-level access to the PC is normally necessary to implement the kind of functionality that the driver is intended to provide to top-level applications.

Malicious software developers would want their software to operate, since it provides the greatest control and access to the PC. Therefore, in the interest of protecting Windows security, Windows operating systems place restrictions on what code is allowed to be operated in Kernel mode.

Windows "trusts" drivers and executable programs that have been signed, more so than software that is unsigned. Signing a driver package is analogous to placing an embossed wax seal on an envelope. The signature/wax seal does not effect or alter the contents of the package, but it provides proof that the contents have not been modified or tampered with, since the time that the signature/wax seal was first applied.

There are three types of USB driver signatures:

- Embedded digital signatures
- Full driver package (digital signature - Microsoft Authenticode)
- Full driver package (digital signature - WHQL)

Embedded Digital Signatures

This type of signature resides inside of driver .sys files (Kernel mode driver binary files). No additional/external files are associated with this type of signature. These types of signatures only protect against tampering with the .sys file itself, and do not include other files that may be a part of the driver package (i.e., .inf and .dll files). All driver .sys files provided by Microsoft operating systems, as well as most third-party Kernel mode drivers will contain at least this level of signature.

"Full Driver Package" Digital Signature – Microsoft Authenticode

This type of signature can be thought of as a "wrapper" over the entire driver package content files. A driver package can be as simple as a single .inf file (a plain text installation instruction file that Windows uses when installing new drivers), or may encompass additional files (such as .dll and/or .sys files). The full driver package signature comes in the form of a properly created security catalog file (.cat), which will be part of the driver package distribution. A driver package signed with an Authenticode signature is relatively easy to create; however, it less trustworthy to that of a WHQL digital signature.

“Full Driver Package” Digital Signature – WHQL

This type of signature is the most trusted by Windows, and is very similar to the full driver package Microsoft Authenticode signature, but is more expensive and harder to obtain. To obtain a Windows Hardware Quality Labs (WHQL) signature, a driver package must undergo extensive testing, and passing log files and submission fees must be supplied to Microsoft. If a driver package has already previously been tested and WHQL-certified, but has since been modified, in some cases it is possible to get the driver recertified through a simpler and less expensive "Driver Update Acceptable" process with Microsoft.

Any modifications to a driver package once the signature has been applied, including adding or deleting a single character of whitespace in the driver .inf file, will invalidate a full driver package signature. However, a driver package can have two simultaneous signatures, one covering the full driver package, and one embedded inside the driver binary file(s). Modifications to a .inf file do not invalidate an embedded digital signature inside of a driver binary file.

Once a signature has been invalidated, Windows will no longer trust the driver package as much, and will place restrictions on its installation (or outright prevent its installation on some operating systems). The driver package can however be resigned, to restore the trustworthiness of the driver to Windows.

Minimum Driver Signature Requirements

Provides information on minimum driver signature requirements.

Description

Full driver package WHQL signatures are the best and most trusted by all versions of Windows. Windows allows the installation of properly WHQL signed drivers, without producing a prompt warning the user about the driver's trustworthiness.

However, current Windows versions do not require WHQL signatures to allow installation. Lesser signatures (or no signatures in some cases) are allowed, but will generate user dialogs/warnings during the installation process.

| Operating System | Minimum Signature to Allow Installation |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows 2000 | None. |
| Windows XP 32-bit | None. |
| Windows XP 64-bit | None. |
| Windows Vista 32-bit | None. |
| Windows Vista 64-bit | Embedded. |
| Windows 7 32-bit | Embedded. |
| Windows 7 64-bit | Embedded. |
| Windows 8 32-bit | Embedded. |
| Windows 8 64-bit | Embedded plus full package Authenticode. |
| Windows RT (ARM) | Third -party drivers and driver packages are not currently allowed. All USB devices for this operating system must use Microsoft supplied drivers. |

Using Older Drivers With Windows 8

Provides information on using older drivers with Windows 8.

Description

In general, USB driver packages that are designed for Windows 7 and prior operating system versions will also work in Windows 8, but there is one important exception to this. Starting with Windows 8 64-bit, all drivers must contain a proper "full driver package" digital signature (prior operating systems only required an embedded signature in the .sys file, rather than the entire driver package including the .inf file). The driver package signature exists as a .cat file that comes with the driver package, and needs to be correctly referenced from within the .inf file. If either the .cat file is entirely missing, or it is not being correctly referenced from the .inf file, Windows 8 will generate the following error message when the user attempts to install the driver: *The third party INF does not contain digital signature information.*

If the .cat file is present and is correctly referenced, but something in the driver package was modified since the signature was

applied, a slightly different error message will occur: *The hash for the file is not present in the specified catalog file. The file is likely corrupt or the victim of tampering.*

In both cases, Windows 8 64-bit will not allow the driver package to be installed, even though it may technically be capable of functioning correctly. To correct this, the driver package must be properly signed with a full package signature. This signature may be either a WHQL signature (which is the best kind of signature), or a Microsoft Authenticode signature.

The MPLAB Harmony USB CDC and WinUSB Application driver packages include a WHQL signature and can be installed successfully on Windows 8 32-bit and 64-bit (as well as prior operating systems). When the firmware is using the same VID/PID as the default value from the demonstration, the latest driver package from MPLAB Harmony should install directly.

When the application uses a customized .inf file (e.g., VID/PID and/or strings are different), it will not be possible to directly use the driver package from MPLAB Harmony. The reason for this is that any time anyone makes any changes to the driver package (including adding or deleting one character of whitespace in the .inf file), this action will break and invalidate the driver package signature. Therefore, even if the .cat file is present, the signature will be invalid (and will not install correctly).

Therefore, if an application needs to use a custom-modified driver package, the only practical solution is to make the modifications, and then resign the driver package. A driver package can be signed with an Authenticode signature using the procedure described in [Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages](#). A package signed with the Microsoft Authenticode signature will install successfully on Windows 8, but will still produce a user prompt asking if they would like to trust the company that signed the driver package. This user dialog can be suppressed if the driver package instead contains a WHQL signature.

Although not very suitable for end-consumers, Windows 8 does have a feature that allows driver package signing enforcement to be temporarily disabled. This is particularly useful for development and testing purposes. The feature is hidden under several layers of menus and requires the following steps to enable:

1. From the desktop, move the mouse to the lower right hand corner of the screen, to launch the charm bar.
2. Click the Settings “gear” icon.
3. Click the “Change PC Settings” option.
4. In the PC Settings menu on the left, select the “General” option.
5. In the right hand pane, scroll down to the bottom of the options list. Under the “Advanced startup” section, click the “Restart now” button. This does not directly reboot the computer, but launches a page that provides additional restart options.
6. In the “Choose an option” page, select the “Troubleshoot” option.
7. From the Troubleshoot menu, click “Advanced options”.
8. In the “Advanced options” dialog, click the “Startup Settings” option.
9. From the “Startup Settings” dialog, click the “Restart” button.
10. The computer should now begin a reboot cycle. During the boot up sequence, a special “Startup Settings” dialog screen should appear.
11. On the “Startup Settings” dialog, press the “F7” key, to select the “Disable driver signature enforcement” option.
12. Allow Windows 8 to finish booting.

Once driver signing enforcement is disabled, unsigned driver packages can then be installed. After rebooting the PC, driver signing enforcement will be reenabled, but Windows 8 will continue to allow the installed unsigned driver(s) to be loaded for the hardware, without requiring the system to be repeatedly rebooted into the driver signing enforcement disabled mode.

USB Application Project Driver Signatures

Provides information on driver signatures for MPLAB Harmony USB application projects.

Description

Projects Based on WinUSB

WinUSB is a Microsoft created/supplied driver. All Microsoft-supplied drivers contain an embedded signature from Microsoft. In operating systems prior to Windows 8, WinUSB-based devices require the user to install a driver package for the hardware. However, starting with Windows 8, it is possible to make WinUSB-based devices that are fully "plug and play", and do not require any user-supplied driver package. Windows 8 allows for automatic installation of the WinUSB driver, when the device firmware implements the correct Microsoft specific "OS" and related USB descriptors. These special descriptors are optional, but when implemented, allow for automatic driver installation using the WinUSB driver that is distributed with the operating system installation.

Projects Based on CDC

When used with Windows, the CDC projects in MPLAB Harmony use the Microsoft created/supplied usbser.sys driver. This

driver contains an embedded signature from Microsoft.

Projects Based on HID, MSD, Audio Class

These USB device classes/projects rely on Microsoft-supplied drivers that are distributed with the operating system, and do not require any user-supplied driver packages or .inf files. Therefore, driver package signing is usually not relevant for these types of applications, as the drivers are normally installed automatically when the hardware is attached to the PC.

Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate

Provides information on obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode code signing certificate.

Description

There are several Certificate Authority (CA) companies that can sell your organization a signing certificate, which will allow you to sign your own driver packages. However, when submitting a driver package to Microsoft for WHQL certification, either as a new device/driver, or by reusing a previous submission through the Driver Update Acceptable (DUA) process, Microsoft currently requires that the submitted files be signed with an Authenticode signing certificate issued by VeriSign.

Therefore, it is generally preferred to obtain the Microsoft Authenticode code signing certificate from VeriSign (now a part of Symantec Corporation). Before purchasing the certificate, it is recommended to search for possible promotional/discounted rates. Historically, Microsoft has run a program providing for discounted prices for first-time purchasers of VeriSign certificates.

Authenticode code signing certificates are usually sold on an annual or multi-year basis. Once purchased, the signing certificate can normally be used to sign an unlimited number of driver package security catalog files (e.g., .cat files), along with other types of files (e.g., .exe executable programs). The certificate itself (i.e., typically a .pvk file, though other extensions are possible) needs to be kept physically secure, and should never be distributed publicly.

Code Signing Certificates (Other Uses)

Provides information on other uses of code signing certificates.

Description

In addition to signing driver packages, a Microsoft Authenticode signing certificate can be used to sign certain other types of files, such as executable (.exe) programs. Windows, especially Windows 8, does not trust unsigned executables as much as signed executables. In Windows 8, an unsigned executable that has "no history" and has no reputation established with Microsoft will be treated as relatively untrustworthy, and is blocked from execution, unless the user manually overrides the operating system behavior, through an advanced options dialogue that is typically hard for new users to find.

Additionally, some virus scanning applications also rely on executable signatures, to help establish relative trustworthiness. In some cases, unsigned executables, free of malware/viruses, can still be blocked from execution by the virus scanning software, until a history/reputation is built up establishing the executable as trustworthy. Signing the executable with a Microsoft Authenticode signing certificate will generally make the executable more trustworthy and less likely to be (incorrectly) flagged as malware.

Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages

Provides information on using a code signing certificate to sign driver packages.

Description

If you make modifications to a driver package and need to resign the package, the easiest method is to sign it with a Microsoft Authenticode code signing certificate. This can be done using the following procedure:

1. Start from a known working driver package .inf file from the latest MPLAB Harmony release.
2. Modify the .inf file as desired. The .inf file is a plain text file (i.e., editable with a text editor, such as Notepad) that contains installation instruction/information that tells the operating system what driver needs to be used for the hardware, and anything else that may need to occur during the driver installation process. When changing the .inf file device list sections, please remove all existing Microchip VID/PIDs, before replacing them with your own. The manufacturer and product strings should also be updated as applicable for your device.
3. Delete the security catalog (.cat) file that is already supplied with the package. After modifying the .inf file, the security

catalog file will no longer be valid and you will need to create a new one.

4. Download the latest version of the Windows Driver Kit (WDK) from Microsoft by visiting:
<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/hardware/gg487428.aspx> Version 8.0 or later is needed (prior versions don't have awareness of Windows 8 specifics).
5. Use the Inf2Cat utility in the WDK to regenerate a new .cat file from the modified .inf file.
 - Inf2Cat is a command line utility. Open a command prompt, navigate to the directory of the inf2cat tool, and then run it at the command line to get a small help/explanation of usage syntax. The program is typically located in the following location: C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\8.0\bin\x64 (or \x86 folder for 32-bit)
 - Typical usage syntax would be similar to the following (all on one line):
inf2cat /driver:C:\[path to dir with .inf file] /os:XP_X86,XP_X64,Vista_X86,Vista_X64,7_X86,7_X64,8_X86,8_X64,Server2003_X86,Server2003_X64,Server2008_X86,Server2008_X64,Server2008R2_X64,Server8_X64.
- Assuming the Inf2Cat utility runs successfully, it will generate a raw .cat file. The .cat file will still need to be signed to be useful.
6. If your organization does not already have one, purchase a code signing certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) such as VeriSign (now Symantec Corporation). See [Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate](#) for more details.
7. Use the signtool.exe utility, along with the signing certificate purchased from the CA, to sign the .cat file. The signtool utility is a small Microsoft program that is distributed in the Windows SDK (and/or in older versions of the WDK, prior to v8.0). The Windows SDK can currently be obtained by visiting: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/desktop/hh852363.aspx>
8. Typical syntax when using the signtool would be as follows, when executed in the directory of the .cat file, assuming the directory to the signtool is in the path, and the certificate has a .pfx extension without a password, and that the certificate resides on "E:", like a typical USB flash drive: signtool sign /v /f "E:\[path to certificate]\[certificate file name].pfx" /t http://timestamp.verisign.com/scripts/timestamp.dll [FileNameToSign.cat]
9. Verify that the signature has been properly applied using the verify command line option: signtool verify /a /pa [FileNameToSign.cat]. The verify step should report success.

The driver package should now be correctly signed with a Microsoft Authenticode signature. Test it on all target operating systems. Distribute both the .inf file and .cat file together to the end-consumer (along with any other driver package files that may be necessary, which may include .dll files, particularly in the case of the WinUSB driver package). Never distribute the signing certificate that you purchased from the CA, this should be kept in a safe place, out of the hands of the public (the certificate can be reused to sign any number of driver packages, as well as .exe files, which will have some benefits).

Support

This section provides support information for MPLAB Harmony.

Using the Help

This topic contains general information that is useful to know to maximize using the MPLAB Harmony help.

Description

Help Formats

MPLAB Harmony Help is provided in three formats:

- Stand-alone HyperText Markup Language (HTML)
- Microsoft Compiled HTML Help (CHM)
- Adobe® Portable Document Format (PDF)



TIP! When using the MPLAB Harmony Help PDF, be sure to open the "bookmarks" if they are not already visible to assist in document navigation. See Using the Help for additional information.

Help File Locations

Each of these help files are included in the installation of MPLAB Harmony in the following locations:

- HTML - <install-dir>/doc/html/index.html
- CHM - <install-dir>/doc/help_harmony.chm
- PDF - <install-dir>/doc/help_harmony.pdf

Refer to [Help Features](#) for more information on using each output format.

Where to Begin With the Help

The help documentation provides a comprehensive source of information on how to use and understand MPLAB Harmony. However, it is not required to read the entire document before starting to work with MPLAB Harmony.

Prior to using MPLAB Harmony, it is recommended to review the Release Notes for any known issues. A PDF copy of the release notes is provided in the <install-dir>/doc folder of your installation.

New Users

For new users to MPLAB Harmony, it is best to follow the Guided Tour provided in *Volume I: Getting Started With MPLAB Harmony*.

Experienced Users

For experienced users already somewhat familiar with the MPLAB Harmony installation and online resources and, looking to jump right into a specific topic, follow the links provided in the table in *Volume 1: Getting Started With MPLAB Harmony Libraries and Applications > Guided Tour*.

Trademarks

Provides information on trademarks used in this documentation.

Description

Trademarks

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, AnyRate, AVR, AVR logo, AVR Freaks, BeaconThings, BitCloud, CryptoMemory, CryptoRF, dsPIC, FlashFlex, flexPWR, Heldo, JukeBlox, KeeLoq, KeeLoq logo, Kleer, LANCheck, LINK MD, maXStylus, maXTouch, MediaLB, megaAVR, MOST, MOST logo, MPLAB, OptoLyzer, PIC, picoPower, PICSTART, PIC32 logo, Prochip Designer, QTouch, RightTouch, SAM-BA, SpyNIC, SST, SST Logo, SuperFlash, tinyAVR, UNI/O, and XMEGA are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

ClockWorks, The Embedded Control Solutions Company, EtherSynch, Hyper Speed Control, HyperLight Load, IntelliMOS, mTouch, Precision Edge, and Quiet-Wire are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Adjacent Key Suppression, AKS, Analog-for-the-Digital Age, Any Capacitor, AnyIn, AnyOut, BodyCom, chipKIT, chipKIT logo, CodeGuard, CryptoAuthentication, CryptoCompanion, CryptoController, dsPICDEM, dsPICDEM.net, Dynamic Average Matching, DAM, ECAN, EtherGREEN, In-Circuit Serial Programming, ICSP, Inter-Chip Connectivity, JitterBlocker, KleerNet, KleerNet logo,

Mindi, MiWi, motorBench, MPASM, MPF, MPLAB Certified logo, MPLIB, MPLINK, MultiTRAK, NetDetach, Omniscient Code Generation, PICDEM, PICDEM.net, PICkit, PICtail, PureSilicon, QMatrix, RightTouch logo, REAL ICE, Ripple Blocker, SAM-ICE, Serial Quad I/O, SMART-I.S., SQI, SuperSwitcher, SuperSwitcher II, Total Endurance, TSHARC, USBCheck, VariSense, ViewSpan, WiperLock, Wireless DNA, and ZENA are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

SQTP is a service mark of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Silicon Storage Technology is a registered trademark of Microchip Technology Inc. in other countries.

GestIC is a registered trademark of Microchip Technology Germany II GmbH & Co. KG, a subsidiary of Microchip Technology Inc., in other countries.

ARM and Cortex are registered trademarks of ARM Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the EU and other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are property of their respective companies.

© 2017, Microchip Technology Incorporated, All Rights Reserved.

Typographic Conventions

This topic describes the typographic conventions used in the MPLAB Harmony Help.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony Help uses the following typographic conventions:

| Convention | Represents | Example |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  TIP! | Provides helpful information to assist the user. |  TIP! Throughout this documentation, occurrences of <install-dir> refer to the default MPLAB Harmony installation path, which is: C:/microchip/harmony/<version>. |
|  Note: | Provides useful information to the user. |  Note: Refer to the individual Release Notes for the libraries and demonstrations for details on changes from the previous release of MPLAB Harmony. |
|  Important! | Provides important information to the user. |  Important! This tutorial is based on the PIC32MZ Embedded Connectivity (EC) Starter Kit . If you are using a different hardware platform, you may need to change some of the settings used in the tutorial (such as timer selection and clock rates) to appropriate values for your platform. |
|  Warning | Warns the user of a potentially harmful issue. |  Warning The cause of the interrupt must be removed before clearing the interrupt source or the interrupt may reoccur immediately after the source is cleared potentially causing an infinite loop. An infinite loop may also occur if the source is not cleared before the interrupt-handler returns. |
|  MHC Followed by Green italicized text | Indicates a process step that is automated by the MPLAB Harmony Configurator (MHC). |  MHC <i>Throughout the documentation, when you see this icon, it indicates that the MHC automates the associated task(s).</i> |
| Italic Characters | Referenced documentation and emphasized text. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>MPLAB X IDE User's Guide</i> ...is the <i>only</i> option. |
| Initial Capitalization | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A window A dialog A menu selection | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the Output window the SaveAs dialog the Enable Programmer menu |
| Quotation Marks | A field name in a window or dialog. | "Save project before build" |
| Italic text with right angle bracket | A menu path. | <i>File > Save</i> |
| Bold Characters | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Topic headings A dialog button or user action, such as clicking an icon or selecting an option | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prerequisites Click OK |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Courier New text enclosed in angle brackets | A key on the keyboard. | Press <Ctrl><V>. |
| Courier New text | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sample source code • File names • File paths | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • #define START • system_config.h • <install-dir>/apps/examples |
| Square Brackets | Optional arguments. | command [options] file [options] |
| Curly Braces and Pipe Character | Choice of mutually exclusive arguments; an OR selection. | errorlevel {0 1} |

Recommended Reading

The following Microchip documents are available and recommended as supplemental reference resources.

Description

Device Data Sheets

Refer to the appropriate device data sheet for device-specific information and specifications.

Reference information found in these data sheets includes:

- Device memory maps
- Device pin out and packaging details
- Device electrical specifications
- List of peripherals included on the devices

To access this documentation, please visit, <http://www.microchip.com/pic32/> and click **Documentation**. Then, expand **Data Sheets** to see the list of available documents.

MPLAB® XC32 C/C++ Compiler User's Guide (DS50001686)

This document details the use of Microchip's MPLAB XC32 Compiler for 32-bit microcontrollers to develop 32-bit applications. Please visit the Microchip website to access the latest version of this document.

MPLAB® X IDE User's Guide (DS50002027)

Consult this document for more information pertaining to the installation and implementation of the MPLAB X IDE software. Please visit the Microchip website to access the latest version of this document.

Documentation Feedback

This topic includes information on how to provide feedback on this documentation.

Description

Your valuable feedback can be provided to Microchip in several ways. Regardless of the method you use to provide feedback, please include the following information whenever possible:

- The Help platform you are viewing:
 - Adobe® Portable Document Format (PDF)
 - Windows® Compiled Help (CHM)
 - HyperText Markup Language (HTML)
- The title of the topic and the section in which it resides
- A clear description of the issue or improvement

How To Send Your Feedback

It is preferred that you use one of the following two methods to provide your feedback:

- Through the Documentation Feedback link, which is available in the header and footer of each topic when viewing compiled

Help (CHM) or HTML Help

- By email at: docerrors@microchip.com

If either of the two previous methods are inconvenient, you may also provide your feedback by:

- Contacting your local Field Applications Engineer
- Contacting Customer Support at: <http://support.microchip.com>

Help Features

Describes the features available in the Help files provided in MPLAB Harmony.

CHM Help Features

Provides detailed information on the features available in CHM Help files.

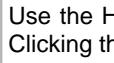
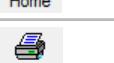
Description

The MPLAB Harmony CHM files are located in the ./doc subfolder of the package it documents. For example, documentation on the MPLAB Harmony 3 Configurator is found at ./mhc/doc/help_mhc.chm and documentation on the MPLAB Harmony Graphics Library is found at ./gfx/doc/help_harmony_gfx.chm.

Help Icons

Several icons are provided in the interface of the Help, which aid in accessing the Help content.

Table 1: Help Icon Features

| Help Icon | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  Hide  Show | Use the Hide icon to turn off the left Help pane. Once the Hide icon is selected, it is replaced with the Show icon. Clicking the Show icon restores the left Help pane. |
|  Locate | Use the Locate icon to visually locate the Help topic you are viewing in the Contents. Clicking the Locate icon causes the current topic to be highlighted in blue in the Contents pane. |
|  Back | Use the Back icon to move back through the previously viewed topics in the order in which they were viewed. |
|  Forward | Use the Forward icon to move forward through the previously viewed topics in the order in which they were viewed. |
|  Home | Use the Home icon to return to the first topic in the Help. |
|  Print | Use the Print icon to print the current topic or the selected heading and all subtopics. |
|  Options | Use the Options icon to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hide tabs • Locate a topic • Go Back, Forward, and Home • Stop • Refresh • Set Internet Explorer options • Print topics • Turn Search Highlight Off and On |

Topic Window

The Topic Window displays the current topic. In addition to the Help content, special links are provided in the upper portion of the window, as shown in Figure 2. Table 2 lists and describes the different links by their category

Figure 2: Help Links

The MPLAB Harmony Framework consists of a set of firmware libraries. MPLAB Harmony libraries are designed to be very flexible and reusable. Each library defines an application or client level interface (sometimes called an API) that can be implemented in a number of different ways to better meet the needs of specific systems.

Table 2: Help Links

| Link Category | Description |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Topic Path | The full path of the current topic is provided at the top and bottom of each topic, beginning with the top-level section name. |
| Support and Feedback Links: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Documentation Feedback • Microchip Support Click this link to send feedback in the form of an email (see Note 1). Click this link to open the Microchip Support Web page. |
| Main Help Links: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contents • Index • Home Click this link to open the Contents in the left pane. Click this link to open the Index in the left pane (see Note 2). Click this link to go to the initial Help topic (see Note 2). |
| Navigation Links: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Previous • Up • Next Click this link to go back to the previously viewed topic. Click this link to go to the parent section of the topic. Click this link to go to the next topic. |

**Notes:**

1. To use the *Documentation Feedback* link, you must have an email system, such as Outlook configured. Clicking the link automatically opens a new email window and populates the recipient and subject lines.
2. The *Home* and *Index* links do not appear initially. Once you begin traversing the topics, they dynamically appear.

Tabs

The CHM Help provides four Tabbed windows: *Contents*, *Index*, *Search*, and *Favorites*.

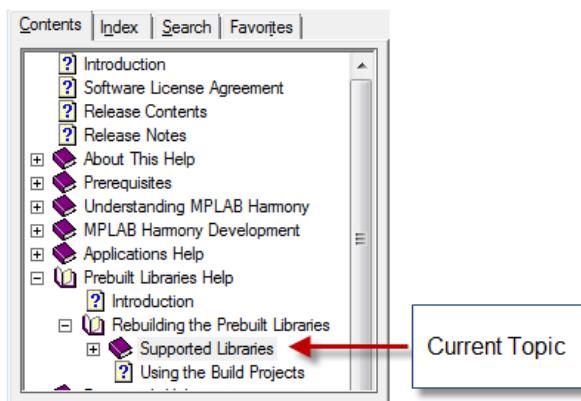
Contents

The Contents tab displays the top-level topics/sections. Figure 3 shows the initial view when the CHM Help is first opened.

Figure 3: Initial Contents Tab View

As topics are explored, the information in the Contents tab dynamically updates. For example, by clicking **Prebuilt Libraries Help** and using the **Next** link in the current topic to traverse through this section, the collapsed section automatically expands and the current topic is highlighted in light gray, as shown in Figure 4.

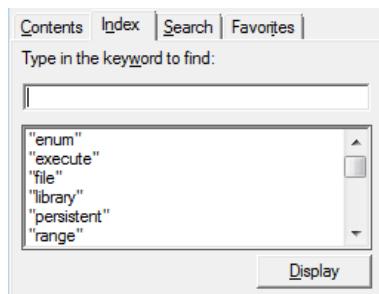
Figure 4: Current Topic Highlighting



Index

Clicking the Index tab results in an alphabetic list of all Help index entries. Figure 5 shows the default Index interface.

Figure 5: Default Index Interface

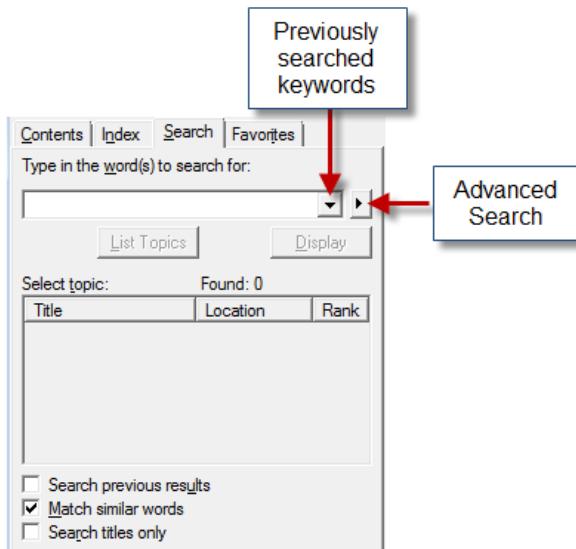


- To locate a specific entry, enter the keyword in the *Type in the keyword to find:* box. As you type, the index list dynamically updates.
- To display the desired item in the list, select the item and click **Display**, or double-click the desired item. The related content appears in the Help window.

Search

Clicking the Search tab provides an efficient way to find specific information. Figure 6 shows the default Search interface.

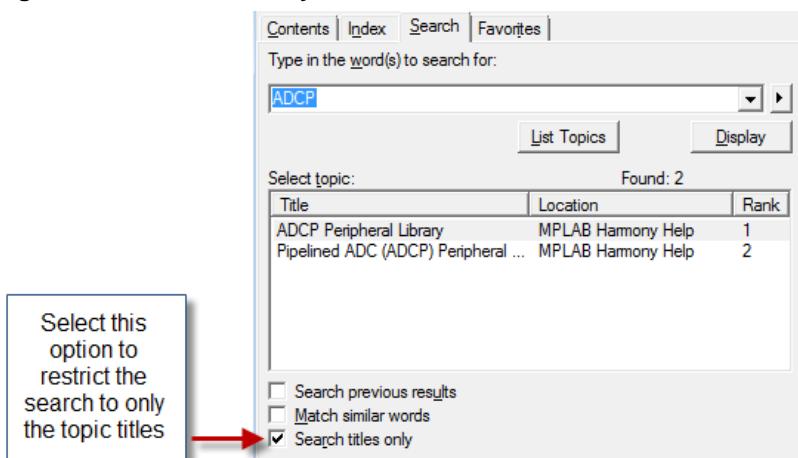
Figure 6: Default Search Interface



- Enter the specific word or words in the *Type in the word(s) to search for:* box
- Clicking the drop-down arrow provides the list of previously searched words
- The right arrow provides Advanced Search options: AND, OR, NEAR, and NOT
- Located at the bottom left of the Search window, three options are provided to narrow-down your search. By default, *Match similar words* is selected. To reduce the number of returned words, clear this box and select *Search titles only*, which restricts

the search to only the topic titles in the Help, as shown in Figure 7.

Figure 7: Search Titles Only



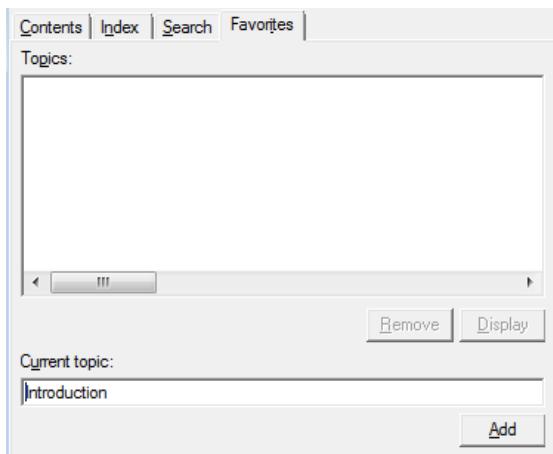
- The *Title* column provides the list of related topics
- The *Location* column lists in which Help system the topic was found (see **Note**)
- The *Rank* column determines the search result that most closely matches the specified word

 **Note:** The *Location* column is automatically included in the CHM Help when the Advanced Search features are implemented and cannot be excluded. Its purpose is to provide the name of the Help system in which the topic is located for Help output that is generated from multiple sources. Since the MPLAB Harmony Help is contained within a single Help system, this information is the same for all searches. Do not confuse this column to mean the actual topic location.

Favorites

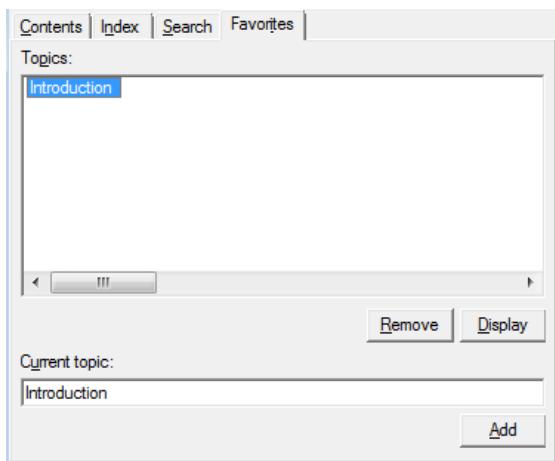
Use the Favorites tab to create a custom list of topics that you may want to repeatedly access. Figure 8 shows the default Favorites interface.

Figure 8: Default Favorites Interface



- The title of the current topic is shown in the *Current topic:* box.
- Click **Add** to add the topic to the *Topics:* list, as shown in Figure 9.
- Click **Display** to view the selected topic.
- Click **Remove** to remove the selected topic from the list of favorites.

Figure 9: Adding a Favorite Topic



HTML Help Features

Provides detailed information on the features available in the stand-alone HTML Help.

Description

The HTML Help output for MPLAB Harmony has two purposes. First, it can be used as "stand-alone" Help. Second, the HTML files are used by the MPLAB Harmony Configurator (MHC) when using MHC in MPLAB X IDE.

Stand-alone HTML Help

The MPLAB Harmony index.html file that is the root for all HTML help is located in the ./doc subfolder of the package it documents. For example, documentation on the MPLAB Harmony 3 Configurator is found at ./mhc/doc/index.html and documentation on the MPLAB Harmony Graphics Library is found at ./gfx/doc/index.html.

To use the HTML Help in a "stand-alone" manner, open the file index.html in your browser of choice. Click **Allow blocked content** if a message appears regarding ActiveX controls.

The following links are provided:

- *Table of Contents* - Located at the top left, clicking this link opens the Table of Contents in the right frame
- *Topic Path* - At the top and bottom of each topic, the full path to the current topic is listed
- *Microchip Logo* - Clicking this image opens a new browser tab and displays the Microchip website (www.microchip.com)
- *Contents* - The Contents topic is a static file, which displays and lists the major sections available in the Help in the left frame. Due to a restriction with the Help browser used by the MHC, a dynamic Contents topic cannot be used.
- *Home* - This link returns to the Introduction topic (see **Note 1**)
- *Previous* and *Next* navigation links - Use these links to traverse through the Help topics
- *Documentation Feedback* - Use this link to provide feedback in the form of an email (see **Note 2**)
- *Microchip Support* - Use this link to open the Support page of the Microchip website



Notes:

1. The *Home* link does not appear initially. Once you begin traversing the topics, it dynamically appears.
2. To use the *Documentation Feedback* link, you must have an email system such as Outlook configured. Clicking the link automatically opens a new email message and populates the recipient and subject lines.

PDF Help Features

Provides detailed information on the features available in the PDF version of the Help.

Description

The MPLAB Harmony Help provided in Portable Document Format (PDF) provides many useful features. By default, PDF bookmarks should be visible when opening the file. If PDF bookmarks are not visible, click the PDF Bookmark icon, which is located near the top of the left navigation pane or by selecting *View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Bookmarks*.

The MPLAB Harmony PDF files are located in the ./doc subfolder of the package it documents. For example, documentation on

the MPLAB Harmony 3 Configurator is found at ./mhc/doc/help_mhc.pdf and documentation on the MPLAB Harmony Graphics Library is found at ./gfx/doc/help_harmony_gfx.pdf.

To make full use of the PDF features, it is recommended that Adobe products be used to view the documentation (see **Note**).

Help on how to use the PDF features is available through your copy of Acrobat (or Acrobat Reader) by clicking **Help** in the main menu.



Note: The MPLAB Harmony Help PDF files can be viewed using a PDF viewer or reader that is compatible with Adobe PDF Version 7.0 or later.

Microchip Website

This topic provides general information on the Microchip website.

Description

The Microchip website can be accessed online at: <http://www.microchip.com>

Accessible by most Internet browsers, the following information is available:

Product Support

- Data sheets
- Silicon errata
- Application notes and sample programs
- Design resources
- User's guides
- Hardware support documents
- Latest software releases and archived software

General Technical Support

- Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs)
- Technical support requests
- Online discussion groups
- Microchip consultant program member listings

Business of Microchip

- Product selector and ordering guides
- Latest Microchip press releases
- Listings of seminars and events
- Listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors, and factory representatives

Microchip Forums

This topic provides information on the Microchip Web Forums.

Description

The Microchip Web Forums can be accessed online at: <http://www.microchip.com/forums>

Microchip provides additional online support via our web forums.

The Development Tools Forum is where the MPLAB Harmony forum discussion group is located. This forum handles questions and discussions concerning the MPLAB Harmony Integrated Software Framework and all associated libraries and components.

Additional Development Tool discussion groups include, but are not limited to:

- MPLAB X IDE - This forum handles questions and discussions concerning the released versions of the MPLAB X Integrated Development Environment (IDE)
- MPLAB XC32 - This forum handles questions and discussions concerning Microchip's 32-bit compilers, assemblers, linkers, and related tools for PIC32 microcontrollers
- Tips and Tricks - This forum provides shortcuts and quick workarounds for Microchip's development tools
- FAQs - This forum includes Frequently Asked Questions

Additional forums are also available.

Customer Support

This topic provides information for obtaining support from Microchip.

Description

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office (see [Contact Microchip Technology](#) to locate your local sales office)
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support (<http://support.microchip.com>)

Contact Microchip Technology

Worldwide sales and service contact information for Microchip Technology Inc.

Description

Please visit the following Microchip Web page for contact information: <http://www.microchip.com/about-us/contact-us>

Glossary

This topic contains a glossary of general MPLAB Harmony terms.

Description

Glossary of MPLAB Harmony Terms

| Term | Definition |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Application | One or more application modules define the overall behavior of a MPLAB Harmony system. Applications are either demonstrations or examples provided with the installation or are implemented by you, using MPLAB Harmony libraries to accomplish a desired task. |
| Client | A client module is any module that uses the services (calls the interface functions) of another module. |
| Configuration | A MPLAB Harmony configuration consists of static definitions (C language <code>#define</code> statements), executable source code, and other definitions in a set of files that are necessary to create a working MPLAB Harmony system. (See the System Configurations section for additional information.) |
| Configuration Options | Configuration options are the specific set of <code>#define</code> statements that are required by any specific MPLAB Harmony library to specify certain parameters (such as buffer sizes, minimum and maximum values, etc.) build that library. Configuration options are defined in the <code>system_config.h</code> system-wide configuration header. |
| Driver | A "driver" (or device driver) is a MPLAB Harmony software module designed to control and provide access to a specific peripheral, either built into or external to the microcontroller. |
| Driver Index | Dynamic MPLAB Harmony drivers (and other dynamic modules) can manage the more than one instance of the peripheral (and other resources) that they control. The "driver index" is a static index number (0, 1, 2,...) that identifies which instance of the driver is to be used.  Note: The driver index is not necessarily identical to the peripheral index. The association between these two is made when the driver is initialized. |
| Driver Instance | An instance of a driver (or other module) consists of a complete set of the memory (and other resources) controlled by the driver's code. Selection of which set of resources to control is made using a driver index.  Note: Even though there may be multiple instances of the resources managed by a dynamic driver, there is only ever one instance of the actual object code. However, static drivers always maintain a 1:1 relationship between resource and code instances. |
| Framework | The MPLAB Harmony framework consists of a set of libraries (and the rules and conventions used to create those libraries) that can be used to create MPLAB Harmony systems. |

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Handle | A handle is a value that allows one software module to "hold" onto a specific instance of some object owned by another software module (analogous to the way a valet holds the handle of a suitcase), creating a link between the two software modules. A handle is an "opaque" value, meaning that the "client" module (the module that receives and holds the handle) must not attempt to interpret the contents or meaning of the handle value. The value of the handle is only meaningful to the "server" module (the module that provides the handle). Internal to the server module, the handle may represent a memory address or it may represent a zero-based index or any other value, as required by the "server" module to identify the "object" to which the client is linked by the handle. |
| Initialization Overrides | Initialization overrides are configuration options that can be defined to statically override (at build time) parameters that are normally passed into the "Initialize" function of a driver or other MPLAB Harmony module. This mechanism allows you to statically initialize a module, instead of dynamically initializing the module. |
| Interface | The interface to a module is the set of functions, data types, and other definitions that must be used to interact with that module. |
| Middleware | The term "middleware" is used to describe any software that fits between the application and the device drivers within a MPLAB Harmony system. This term is used to describe libraries that use drivers to access a peripheral, and then implement communication protocols (such as TCP/IP, USB protocols, and graphics image processing), as well as other more complex processing, which is required to use certain peripherals, but is not actually part of controlling the peripheral itself. |
| Module | A MPLAB Harmony software module is a closely related group of functions controlling a related set of resources (memory and registers) that can be initialized and maintained by the system. Most MPLAB Harmony modules provide an interface for client interaction. However, "headless" modules with no interface are possible. |
| Peripheral Index | A peripheral index is a static label (usually an C language "enum" value) that is used to identify a specific instance of a peripheral.  Note: Unlike a driver index, which always starts at '0', a peripheral index may be internally represented as any number, letter, or even a base address and the user should not rely on the value itself, but only the label. |
| Peripheral Instance | An instance of a peripheral is a complete set of the registers (and internal physical resources) necessary to provide the core functionality of a given type of peripheral (either built into or external to the microcontroller).  Note: A specific peripheral instance is identified using a peripheral index. |
| System | A MPLAB Harmony system is a complete set of libraries, applications, and configuration items loaded and executing on a specific hardware platform (microcontroller, board, and external peripherals) or the source items necessary to build such a system.  Note: Since a system can multiple configurations, one MPLAB Harmony project may support multiple systems through multiple supported configurations. See the demonstration applications included in the installation for examples. |
| System Service | A system service is a MPLAB Harmony module that provides access to and control of common system resources (memory and registers) with which other modules (drivers, middleware, libraries and application) may interact.  Note: System services, much like drivers, manage sharing of resources so as to avoid conflicts between modules that would otherwise occur if each module attempted to manage the share resource itself. But, unlike drivers, system services do not normally need to be "opened" to use them. |

Interface

This section contains information about the data types in the USB Common Driver Interface.

Files

The following table lists files in this documentation.

Files

| Name | Description |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| usb_hid.h | USB HID Definitions |
| usb_msd.h | USB MSD class definitions |

usb_hid.h

USB HID Definitions

Description

USB HID Function Driver

This file contains USB HID specification definitions and included by the USB Stack. The application can include this file if it needs to access any of the HID specification definitions.

File Name

[usb_hid.h](#)

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

usb_msd.h

USB MSD class definitions

Description

USB MSD class definitions

This file describes the MSD class specific definitions. This file is included by [usb_device_msd.h](#) and [usb_host_msd.h](#) header files. File needs to be included by the application for USB MSD host/device functionality.

File Name

[usb_msd.h](#)

Company

Microchip Technology Inc.

Index

\

\.tpFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_CLASS_SUBCLASS_PROTOCOL) enumeration 358
 \.tpFlags.driverType = (TPL_FLAG_VID_PID) enumeration 359

—
 _USB_CDC_H macro 207
 _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_H macro 164
 _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V1_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 138
 _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_0_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 175
 _USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_H macro 193
 _USB_DEVICE_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 207
 _USB_DEVICE_CDC_H macro 207
 _USB_DEVICE_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 68
 _USB_DEVICE_H macro 125
 _USB_DEVICE_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 292
 _USB_DEVICE_MSD_H macro 296
 _USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_H macro 306
 _USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 418
 _USB_HOST_CDC_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 519
 _USB_HOST_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 338
 _USB_HOST_HID_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 541
 _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandler function 545
 _USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_Task function 545
 _USB_HOST_HUB_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 417
 _USB_HOST_MSD_CONFIG_TEMPLATE_H_ macro 558
 _USB_PRINTER_H macro 306

0

0 enumeration 360
 0x0000 enumeration 361
 0xFF } enumeration 363
 0xFF enumeration 362
 0xFFFF } enumeration 365
 0xFFFF enumeration 364

1

1 enumeration 366

A

Abstract Control Model (ACM) 196
 Abstraction Model 47, 129, 167, 196, 246, 281, 287, 298, 330, 388, 508, 538, 551, 555
 Generic USB Device Library 281
 USB CDC Device Library 196
 USB Device Layer Library 47
 USB MSD Device Library 287
 USB Printer Device Library 298
 Application Client Interaction 53
 Audio Data Streaming 407
 Audio Stream Event Handling 395

B

BOS Descriptor Support 63
 Building the Application 3, 8, 12, 13, 15, 18, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 27, 33, 36, 37, 39, 42
 Building the Library 68, 139, 175, 208, 256, 286, 292, 307, 341, 419, 520, 543, 552, 559

Generic USB Device Library 286

USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 175
 USB Audio Device Library 139
 USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library 419
 USB CDC Host Library 520
 USB Device Layer Library 68
 USB HID Device Library 256
 USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library 543
 USB Host Layer Library 341
 USB Hub Host Client Driver Library 552
 USB MSD Device Library 292
 USB MSD Host Library 559
 USB Printer Device Library 307

C

cdc_basic 33
 cdc_com_port_dual 3
 cdc_com_port_single 8
 cdc_msd 36
 cdc_msd_basic 12
 cdc_serial_emulator 13
 CHM Help Features 609
 classCode enumeration 367
 Code Signing Certificates (Other Uses) 604
 Common Interface 569
 Configuring the Hardware 4, 9, 12, 13, 16, 18, 20, 22, 23, 24, 26, 28, 34, 36, 38, 40, 42
 Configuring the Library 64, 136, 173, 206, 255, 286, 290, 306, 338, 415, 518, 541, 552, 557
 Generic USB Device Library 286
 USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 173
 USB Audio Device Library 136
 USB Device Layer Library 64
 USB Printer Device Library 306
 Contact Microchip Technology 615
 Control Transfer Events 282
 Creating Your Own USB Device 46
 CS_INTERFACE macro 237
 Customer Support 615

D

Data Transfer 290, 556
 Detecting Device Attach 389, 509, 539
 Device Demonstrations 3
 Device Endpoint Operations 595
 Device Layer Control Transfers 56
 Device Layer Task Routines 52
 Documentation Feedback 608
 Driver Device Mode Client Functions 578
 Driver General Client Functions 582
 Driver Host Mode Client Functions 573
 Driver Host Root Hub Interface 575
 Driver Host USB Root Hub Port Interface 576
 Driver Signing and Windows 8 601
 Driver Signing and Windows 8 (for v1.08) 601

E

Enabling Audio Stream 399
 Endpoint Data Transfer 284

- Endpoint Data Transfer Events 283
 Endpoint Management 283
 Event Handling 54, 131, 168, 198, 248, 282, 300, 338, 516
- F**
- false enumeration 368
 Files 126, 164, 193, 242, 278, 296, 325, 385, 499, 537, 549, 554, 567, 618
 USB Audio 1.0 Device Library 164
 USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 193
 USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library 499
 USB CDC Device Library 242
 USB Device Layer Library 126
 USB HID Device Library 278
 USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library 549
 USB Host Layer Library 385
 USB Hub Host Client Driver Library 554
 USB MSD Device Library 296
 USB Printer Device Library 325
- Files to Include
 USB CDC Device Library 208
 Function Driver Registration Table 50
- G**
- General Device Mode Operations 593
 Generic USB Device Library 280
 Getting Started
 USB Device Library 44
 USB Host Library 328
 Glossary 615
- H**
- Help Features 609
 HID Device TPL Table Configuration 539
 hid_basic 15
 hid_basic_keyboard 37
 hid_basic_mouse_usart 42
 hid_joystick 18
 hid_keyboard 20
 hid_mouse 21
 hid_msd_basic 22
 Host Demonstrations 33
 Host Layer - Application Interaction 334
 Host Layer Initialization 331
 How the Library Works 49, 130, 167, 197, 246, 281, 288, 299, 331, 388, 508, 539, 551, 555
 Generic USB Device Library 281
 USB Device Layer Library 49
 USB MSD Device Library 288
 HTML Help Features 613
 Hub TPL Table Configuration 551
- I**
- initData enumeration 369
 Initializing the Device Layer 52
 Initializing the Library 130, 167
 Interface 617
 Introduction 2, 44, 47, 129, 166, 195, 245, 280, 287, 298, 328, 330, 387, 507, 538, 550, 554
- L**
- Library Architecture
 USB Device Library 44
 USB Host Library 328
 Library Configuration
 USB CDC Device Library 206
 USB HID Device Library 255
 Library Initialization 49, 197, 246, 281, 288, 299
 USB CDC Device Library 197
 USB HID Device Library 246
 Library Interface 69, 139, 176, 209, 257, 287, 293, 308, 342, 419, 520, 544, 553, 559
 Generic USB Device Library 287
 USB Audio 1.0 Device Library 139
 USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 176
 USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library 419
 USB CDC Device Library 209
 USB Device Layer Library 69
 USB HID Device Library 257
 USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library 544
 USB Host Layer Library 342
 USB Hub Host Client Driver Library 553
 USB MSD Device Library 293
 USB Printer Device Library 308
- Library Overview 48, 130, 167, 197, 246, 280, 288, 299, 331, 388, 508, 538, 551, 555
 Generic USB Device Library 280
 USB Audio 1.0 Device Library 130
 USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 167
 USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library 388
 USB CDC Device Library 197
 USB Device Layer Library 48
 USB HID Device Library 246
 USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library 538
 USB Hub Host Client Driver Library 551
 USB MSD Host Library 555
 USB Printer Device Library 299
- M**
- mask enumeration 370
 Master Descriptor Table 49
 Microchip Forums 614
 Microchip Website 614
 Minimum Driver Signature Requirements 602
 Mouse Data Event Handling 540
 MSD TPL Table Configuration 556
 msd_basic 23, 39
- O**
- Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate 604
 Obtaining an Audio Stream 393
 Obtaining Audio v1.0 Device Audio Stream Details 390
 Opening the CDC Host Client Driver 510
 Opening the Driver 584
- P**
- PDF Help Features 613
 pid } enumeration 372

pid enumeration 371
printer_basic 27

R

Reading and Writing Data 514
Receiving a Report 255
Receiving Data 206, 305
Recommended Reading 608
Running the Demonstration 4, 10, 12, 14, 17, 19, 21, 22, 23, 24, 27, 28, 35, 37, 38, 41, 43
 USB Device Demonstration (hid_keyboard) 20
 USB Device Demonstrations (hid_keyboard) 21

S

Sending a Report 254
Sending Class Specific Control Transfers 412
Sending Class-specific Control Transfers 511
Sending Data 203, 303
Setting the Desired Audio Stream Sampling Rate 403
String Descriptor Table 59
subClassCode enumeration 373
Support 606

T

TPL Table Configuration for Audio v1.0 Devices 388
TPL Table Configuration for CDC Devices 509
Trademarks 606
Transferring Data 136, 172
Transferring Data to the Host 597
true enumeration 374
Typographic Conventions 607

U

USB Application Project Driver Signatures 603
USB Audio 1.0 Device Library 129
USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 166
USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library 387
USB CDC Device Library 195
USB CDC Host Library 507
USB Common Driver Interface 568
USB Demonstrations Help 2
USB Device Layer Library 47
USB Device Libraries 44
USB Device Library - Application Interaction 45
USB Device Library - Getting Started 44
USB Device Library Architecture 44
USB Device Printer Library 297
USB Driver Device Mode Operation 592
USB Driver Host Mode Operation 585
USB HID Device Library 245
USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library 538
USB Host Layer Library 330
USB Host Libraries 328
USB Host Library - Application Interaction 329
USB Host Library - Getting Started 328
USB Host Library Architecture 328
USB Hub Host Client Driver Library 550
USB Hub Host Client Driver Test Results 552
USB Libraries Help 44

USB MSD Device Library 287
USB MSD Host Client Driver Library 554
USB MSD Host USB Pen Drive Tests 2
usb_cdc.h 243
 USB_CDC_ACN_SUPPORT_BREAK macro 237
 USB_CDC_ACN_SUPPORT_COMM_FEATURE macro 237
 USB_CDC_ACN_SUPPORT_LINE_CODING_LINE_STATE_AND_NOTIFICATION macro 238
 USB_CDC_ACN_SUPPORT_NETWORK_NOTIFICATION macro 238
 USB_CDC_ACN_SUPPORT_NONE macro 238
 USB_CDC_CLASS_CODE macro 238
 USB_CDC_COMMUNICATIONS_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE macro 239
 USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE macro 239
 USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL macro 239
 USB_CDC_DATA_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE macro 239
 USB_CDC_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE enumeration 233
 USB_CDC_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR enumeration 235
 USB_CDC_INF_PROTOCOL enumeration 233
 USB_CDC_INTERFACE_TYPE enumeration 234
 USB_CDC_LINESTATE_CARRIER macro 232
 USB_CDC_LINESTATE_DTR macro 233
 USB_CDC_NOTIFICATION enumeration 234
 USB_CDC_REQUEST enumeration 235
 USB_CDC_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC macro 240
 USB_CDC_SUBCLASS enumeration 236
 USB_CDC_SUBCLASS_CODE macro 240
 USB_CDC_UNION_FUNCTIONAL_DESCRIPTOR_SUBORDINATE type 237
 usb_device.h 126
 USB_DEVICE_ActiveConfigurationGet function 88
 USB_DEVICE_ActiveSpeedGet function 89
 USB_DEVICE_Attach function 87
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT enumeration 149
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_CUR type 159
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MAX type 160
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MEM type 160
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_MIN type 160
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_GET_RES type 160
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_CUR type 161
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MAX type 161
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MEM type 161
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_MIN type 161
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_CONTROL_SET_RES type 162
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_ENTITY_GET_STAT type 162
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_INTERFACE_SETTING_CHANGED structure 162
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE structure 157
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_STATUS_SEND_COMPLETE structure 163
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE structure 157
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_HANDLER type 158
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE type 158
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 159
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_EventHandlerSet function 141
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_FUNCTION_DRIVER macro 159

USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INDEX type 148
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INIT structure 162
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 137
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING macro 137
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES macro 137
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro 138
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Read function 142
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_RESULT enumeration 156
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_StatusSend function 146
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_ABORT_NOTIFY macro 138
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 148
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 156
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_TransferCancel function 144
 usb_device_audio_v1_0.h 164
 usb_device_audio_v1_0_config_template.h 166
 usb_device_audio_v2_0.h 194
 usb_device_audio_v2_0_config_template.h 195
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT enumeration 182
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE structure 188
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_SET_ALTERNATE_INTERFACE structure 188
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE structure 189
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_HANDLER type 189
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE type 190
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 192
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_EventHandlerSet function 177
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_FUNCTION_DRIVER macro 192
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INDEX type 190
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INIT structure 190
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 173
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_ALTERNATE_SETTING macro 174
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_MAX_STREAMING_INTERFACES macro 174
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro 174
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Read function 178
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_RESULT enumeration 191
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 192
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 193
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_TransferCancel function 180
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_V2_Write function 181
 USB_DEVICE_AUDIO_Write function 145
 USB_DEVICE_BOS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE macro 66
 usb_device_cdc.h 242
 usb_device_cdc_config_template.h 245
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT enumeration 224
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE structure 221
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SEND_BREAK structure 223
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_COMPLETE structure 222
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE structure 222
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER type 228
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE type 229
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 231
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_EventHandlerSet function 211
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_FUNCTION_DRIVER macro 232
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX type 229
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_0 macro 240
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_1 macro 240
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_2 macro 240
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_3 macro 241
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_4 macro 241
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_5 macro 241
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_6 macro 241
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INDEX_7 macro 242
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INIT structure 223
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 207
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro 208
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_Read function 215
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_RESULT enumeration 230
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_SerialStateNotificationSend function 220
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_FLAGS enumeration 230
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 231
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 232
 USB_DEVICE_CDC_Write function 217
 USB_DEVICE_CLIENT_STATUS enumeration 117
 USB_DEVICE_ClientStatusGet function 77
 USB_DEVICE_Close function 76
 usb_device_config_template.h 128
 USB_DEVICE_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE type 118
 USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_STATUS enumeration 112
 USB_DEVICE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_RESULT enumeration 113
 USB_DEVICE_ControlReceive function 101
 USB_DEVICE_ControlSend function 103
 USB_DEVICE_ControlStatus function 105
 USB_DEVICE_Deinitialize function 73
 USB_DEVICE_Detach function 88
 USB_DEVICE_DRIVER_INITIALIZE_EXPLICIT macro 67
 USB_DEVICE_ENDPOINT_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro 65
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointDisable function 92
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointEnable function 94
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsEnabled function 95
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointIsStalled function 90
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointRead function 96
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointStall function 91
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointStallClear function 92
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointTransferCancel function 97
 USB_DEVICE_EndpointWrite function 99
 USB_DEVICE_EPO_BUFFER_SIZE macro 67
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT enumeration 107
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_CONFIGURED structure 118
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_READ_COMPLETE structure 122
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_ENDPOINT_WRITE_COMPLETE structure 122
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SOFTWARE_INTERRUPT structure 123
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_DATA_SYNCH_FRAME structure 123
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_HANDLER type 119
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE type 119
 USB_DEVICE_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 121
 USB_DEVICE_EventHandlerSet function 78
 USB_DEVICE_FUNCTION_REGISTRATION_TABLE structure 119
 USB_DEVICE_HANDLE type 112
 USB_DEVICE_HANDLE_INVALID macro 116

usb_device_hid.h 278
 usb_device_hid_config_template.h 279
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT enumeration 264
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_IDLE structure 269
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_GET_REPORT structure 269
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_RECEIVED structure 270
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_REPORT_SENT structure 270
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_IDLE structure 271
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_PROTOCOL structure 272
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_DATA_SET_REPORT structure 271
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_HANDLER type 273
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE type 274
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 275
 USB_DEVICE_HID_EventHandlerSet function 258
 USB_DEVICE_HID_FUNCTION_DRIVER macro 276
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX type 272
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_0 macro 276
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_1 macro 276
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_2 macro 277
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_3 macro 277
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_4 macro 277
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_5 macro 277
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_6 macro 278
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INDEX_7 macro 278
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INIT structure 275
 USB_DEVICE_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 256
 USB_DEVICE_HID_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMINED macro 256
 USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportReceive function 259
 USB_DEVICE_HID_ReportSend function 261
 USB_DEVICE_HID_RESULT enumeration 274
 USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 273
 USB_DEVICE_HID_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 275
 USB_DEVICE_HID_TransferCancel function 263
 USB_DEVICE_INDEX_0 macro 116
 USB_DEVICE_INDEX_1 macro 116
 USB_DEVICE_INDEX_2 macro 116
 USB_DEVICE_INDEX_3 macro 117
 USB_DEVICE_INDEX_4 macro 117
 USB_DEVICE_INDEX_5 macro 117
 USB_DEVICE_INIT structure 113
 USB_DEVICE_Initialize function 71
 USB_DEVICE_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 64
 USB_DEVICE_IsSuspended function 82
 USB_DEVICE_MASTER_DESCRIPTOR structure 120
 USB_DEVICE_MICROSOFT_OS_DESCRIPTOR_SUPPORT_ENABLE macro 126
 usb_device_msd.h 297
 usb_device_msd_config_template.h 297
 USB_DEVICE_MSD_FUNCTION_DRIVER macro 296
 USB_DEVICE_MSD_INIT structure 293
 USB_DEVICE_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 291
 USB_DEVICE_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER macro 291
 USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_FUNCTIONS structure 294
 USB_DEVICE_MSD_MEDIA_INIT_DATA structure 295
 USB_DEVICE_Open function 75
 USB_DEVICE_POWER_STATE enumeration 115
 USB_DEVICE_PowerStateSet function 80
 usb_device_printer.h 326
 usb_device_printer_config_template.h 327
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT enumeration 317
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_READ_COMPLETE structure 317
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_DATA_WRITE_COMPLETE structure 318
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_HANDLER type 318
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE type 319
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 324
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_EventHandlerSet function 309
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_FUNCTION_DRIVER macro 324
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX type 319
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INDEX_0 macro 325
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INIT structure 320
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 306
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_PORT_STATUS structure 320
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_QUEUE_DEPTH_COMBINED macro 307
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Read function 312
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_RESULT enumeration 321
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_FLAGS enumeration 322
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 322
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 325
 USB_DEVICE_PRINTER_Write function 314
 USB_DEVICE_REMOTE_WAKEUP_STATUS enumeration 115
 USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStart function 83
 USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStartTimed function 84
 USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStatusGet function 81
 USB_DEVICE_RemoteWakeUpStop function 85
 USB_DEVICE_RESULT enumeration 124
 USB_DEVICE_SET_DESCRIPTOR_EVENT_ENABLE macro 65
 USB_DEVICE_SOF_EVENT_ENABLE macro 66
 USB_DEVICE_StateGet function 86
 USB_DEVICE_Status function 73
 USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE_ADVANCED_ENABLE macro 67
 USB_DEVICE_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_TABLE type 121
 USB_DEVICE_SYNCH_FRAME_EVENT_ENABLE macro 66
 USB_DEVICE_Tasks function 74
 USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_FLAGS enumeration 124
 USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 125
 USB_DEVICE_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 68
 usb_hid.h 618
 USB_HID_GLOBAL_PUSH_POP_STACK_SIZE macro 541
 usb_host.h 385
 usb_host_audio_v1_0.h 499
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER type 467
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_AttachEventHandlerSet macro 493
 usb_host_audio_v1_0_config_template.h 506
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_CONTROL_CALLBACK type 467
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_ControlRequest function 425
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DeviceObjHandleGet macro 493
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_IN macro 494
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_DIRECTION_OUT macro 494
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT macro 468
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_ATTACH macro 495
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_EVENT_DETACH macro 495
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_INTERFACE macro 480
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_NumberOfStreamGroupsGet function 449
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_OBJ macro 468

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE macro 468
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID macro 481
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_RESULT enumeration 469
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_DIRECTION macro 469
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT enumeration 470
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_DISABLE_COMPLETE_DATA structure 474
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_ENABLE_COMPLETE_DATA structure 474
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER type 475
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA macro 476
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE macro 476
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE_NONE macro 495
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA macro 477
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE macro 477
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID macro 481
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_INFO structure 478
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_OBJ type 479
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_RESULT enumeration 479
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE macro 480
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 481
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamClose macro 495
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamDisable function 446
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEnable function 447
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamEventHandlerSet function 447
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetFirst function 448
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamGetNext function 426
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamOpen macro 496
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamRead function 427
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamSamplingRateSet function 428
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_0_StreamWrite function 429
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER type 482
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER macro 416
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_AttachEventHandlerSet function 430
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_CONTROL_ENTITY_OBJ type 482
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetFirst function 430
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ControlEntityGetNext function 431
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_DeviceObjHandleGet function 432
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_ENTITY_REQUEST_CALLBACK type 483
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityObjectGet function 432
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityRequestCallbackSet function 433
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EntityTypeGet function 434
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_EVENT enumeration 483
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteExists function 434
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteGet function 435
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelMuteSet function 436
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelNumbersGet function 437
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeExists function 438
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeGet function 438
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeRangeGet function 439
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSet function 440
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitChannelVolumeSubRangeNumbersGet function 465
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitIDGet function 441
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_FeatureUnitSourceIDGet function 442
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 417
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_INTERFACE macro 497
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_OBJ type 484
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE type 484
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID macro 497
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_RESULT enumeration 484
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_SAMPLING_FREQUENCIES_NUMBER macro 498
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_DIRECTION enumeration 485
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT enumeration 486
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_HANDLER type 488
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_INTERFACE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA structure 489
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA structure 489
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_RESPONSE enumeration 490
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_GET_COMPLETE_DATA structure 499
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_SAMPLING_RATE_SET_COMPLETE_DATA structure 490
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA structure 491
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE type 491
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_HANDLE_INVALID macro 498
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 492
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAM_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 498
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamClose function 450
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamEventHandlerSet function 450
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_ALTERNATE_SETTINGS_NUMBER macro 418
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_OBJ type 492
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACE_SETTING_OBJ type 492
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_STREAMING_INTERFACES_NUMBER macro 418
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceBitResolutionGet function 451
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceChannelNumbersGet function 452
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceDirectionGet function 453
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceFormatTagGet function 453
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetFirst function 454
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceGetNext function 455
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequenciesGet function 455
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSamplingFrequencyTypeGet function 456
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSet function 457
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetFirst function 458
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSettingGetNext function 459

USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceSubFrameSizeGet function 459
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamingInterfaceTerminalLinkGet function 460
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamOpen function 461
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamRead function 462
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencyGet function 462
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamSamplingFrequencySet function 463
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_StreamWrite function 464
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalAssociationGet function 443
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalIDGet function 443
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelConfigGet function 466
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalInputChannelNumbersGet function 444
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalSourceIDGet function 445
 USB_HOST_AUDIO_V1_TerminalTypeGet function 445
 USB_HOST_BUS type 375
 USB_HOST_BUS_ALL macro 383
 USB_HOST_BusEnable function 346
 USB_HOST_BusIsEnabled function 347
 USB_HOST_BusIsSuspended function 347
 USB_HOST_BusResume function 348
 USB_HOST_BusSuspend function 349
 usb_host_cdc.h 504
 USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_ControlLineStateSet function 528
 USB_HOST_CDC_ACM_LineCodingSet function 529
 USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_EVENT_HANDLER type 531
 USB_HOST_CDC_ATTACH_LISTENERS_NUMBER macro 519
 USB_HOST_CDC_AttachEventHandlerSet function 523
 USB_HOST_CDC_Close function 522
 usb_host_cdc_config_template.h 537
 USB_HOST_CDC_DeviceObjHandleGet function 525
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT enumeration 471
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_GET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_D ATA structure 531
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SEND_BREAK_COMPLETE_DATA structure 532
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE_COMPLETE_DATA structure 533
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_ACM_SET_LINE_CODING_COMPLETE_D ATA structure 533
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_HANDLER type 530
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_READ_COMPLETE_DATA structure 534
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_RESPONSE enumeration 530
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_SERIAL_STATE_NOTIFICATION_RECEIVE_D_DATA structure 534
 USB_HOST_CDC_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE_DATA structure 535
 USB_HOST_CDC_EventHandlerSet function 524
 USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE type 475
 USB_HOST_CDC_HANDLE_INVALID macro 536
 USB_HOST_CDC_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 519
 USB_HOST_CDC_INTERFACE macro 536
 USB_HOST_CDC_OBJ type 535
 USB_HOST_CDC_Open function 522
 USB_HOST_CDC_Read function 525
 USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE type 536
 USB_HOST_CDC_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID macro 537
 USB_HOST_CDC_RESULT enumeration 476
 USB_HOST_CDC_SerialStateNotificationGet function 527
 USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 478
 USB_HOST_CDC_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 530
 USB_HOST_CDC_Write function 526
 usb_host_config_template.h 387
 USB_HOST_CONTROLLERS_NUMBER macro 338
 USB_HOST_Deinitialize function 344
 USB_HOST_DEVICE_INFO structure 375
 USB_HOST_DEVICE_INTERFACES_NUMBER macro 339
 USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE type 376
 USB_HOST_DEVICE_OBJ_HANDLE_INVALID macro 383
 USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING enumeration 376
 USB_HOST_DEVICE_STRING_LANG_ID_DEFAULT macro 384
 USB_HOST_DeviceGetFirst function 350
 USB_HOST_DeviceGetNext function 350
 USB_HOST_DeviceIsSuspended function 351
 USB_HOST_DeviceResume function 352
 USB_HOST_DEVICES_NUMBER macro 339
 USB_HOST_DeviceSpeedGet function 353
 USB_HOST_DeviceStringDescriptorGet function 353
 USB_HOST_DeviceSuspend function 354
 USB_HOST_EVENT enumeration 376
 USB_HOST_EVENT_HANDLER type 377
 USB_HOST_EVENT_RESPONSE enumeration 357
 USB_HOST_EventHandlerSet function 355
 USB_HOST_HCD structure 378
 usb_host_hid_config_template.h 550
 USB_HOST_HID_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 542
 USB_HOST_HID_INTERRUPT_IN_ENDPOINTS_NUMBER macro 542
 usb_host_hid_mouse.h 549
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_BUTTONS_NUMBER macro 542
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_DATA structure 546
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT enumeration 546
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EVENT_HANDLER type 547
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_EventHandlerSet function 544
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE type 547
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_HANDLE_INVALID macro 548
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT enumeration 547
 USB_HOST_HID_MOUSE_RESULT_MIN macro 548
 USB_HOST_HID_USAGE_DRIVER_SUPPORT_NUMBER macro 543
 usb_host_hub.h 554
 usb_host_hub_config_template.h 506
 USB_HOST_HUB_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 416
 USB_HOST_HUB_INTERFACE macro 553
 USB_HOST_HUB_PORTS_NUMBER macro 417
 USB_HOST_HUB_SUPPORT_ENABLE macro 340
 USB_HOST_HUB_TIER_LEVEL macro 340
 USB_HOST_INIT structure 357
 USB_HOST_Initialize function 356
 usb_host_msd.h 567
 usb_host_msd_config_template.h 568
 USB_HOST_MSD_ERROR_CODE enumeration 565
 USB_HOST_MSD_INSTANCES_NUMBER macro 558
 USB_HOST_MSD_INTERFACE macro 564
 USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE type 564
 USB_HOST_MSD_LUN_HANDLE_INVALID macro 565
 USB_HOST_MSD_LUNS_NUMBER macro 558

USB_HOST_MSD_RESULT enumeration 562
USB_HOST_MSD_Transfer function 560
USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_CALLBACK type 562
USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_DIRECTION enumeration 563
USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE type 563
USB_HOST_MSD_TRANSFER_HANDLE_INVALID macro 564
USB_HOST_MSD_TransferErrorTasks function 561
USB_HOST_PIPES_NUMBER macro 340
USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE type 378
USB_HOST_REQUEST_HANDLE_INVALID macro 384
USB_HOST_RESULT enumeration 378
USB_HOST_RESULT_MIN macro 384
USB_HOST_Status function 345
USB_HOST_STRING_REQUEST_COMPLETE_CALLBACK type 379
USB_HOST_TARGET_PERIPHERAL_LIST_ENTRY enumeration 380
USB_HOST_Tasks function 345
USB_HOST_TPL_ENTRY enumeration 381
USB_HOST_TRANSFERS_NUMBER macro 341
usb_msd.h 618
usb_printer.h 327
USB_PRINTER_COMMAND enumeration 323
USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_CLASS_CODE macro 323
USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL macro 323
USB_PRINTER_INTERFACE_SUBCLASS_CODE macro 324
USB_PRINTER_REQUEST_CLASS_SPECIFIC macro 324
Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages 604
Using Older Drivers With Windows 8 602
Using the Help 606
Using the Library 47, 129, 167, 196, 246, 280, 287, 298, 330, 387, 508, 538, 550, 555
 Generic USB Device Library 280
 USB Audio 1.0 Device Library 129
 USB Audio 2.0 Device Library 167
 USB Audio v1.0 Host Client Driver Library 387
 USB CDC Device Library 196
 USB Device Layer Library 47
 USB HID Device Library 246
 USB HID Host Mouse Driver Library 538
 USB Hub Host Client Driver Library 550
 USB MSD Device Library 287
 USB MSD Host Library 555
 USB Printer Device Library 298

V

vendor 25
vid enumeration 382

W

What are "Signed" Drivers? 601